

点金训练

教师用书

► 英语

《点金训练》编写组 编

选择性必修 第一册

配外研版



四川教育出版社

CONTENTS

目录

Unit 1 Laugh out loud!

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	1
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	4
Section III	Using language	9
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	14
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	18
	读后续写技能养成	24
	第一单元质量评估	25

Unit 2 Onwards and upwards

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	32
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	36
Section III	Using language	40
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	46
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	50
	读后续写技能养成	55
	第二单元质量评估	57

Unit 3 Faster, higher, stronger

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	64
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	67
Section III	Using language	72
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	76
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	79
	读后续写技能养成	85
	第三单元质量评估	87



Unit 4 Meeting the muse

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	94
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	97
Section III	Using language	102
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	106
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	109
	读后续写技能养成	115
	第四单元质量评估	116

Unit 5 Revealing nature

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	123
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	126
Section III	Using language	132
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	137
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	141
	读后续写技能养成	148
	第五单元质量评估	149

Unit 6 Nurturing nature

Section I	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	156
Section II	Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	159
Section III	Using language	165
Section IV	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending	172
Section V	Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points	175
	读后续写技能养成	182
	第六单元质量评估	183

综合检测(一)	191
综合检测(二)	199

Unit 1

Laugh out loud!

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 学会通过上下文、查词典等方式掌握课文中的语言知识；
3. 了解记叙文的基本特征；
4. 了解喜剧，理解不同文化背景下喜剧的笑点；
5. 通过做问卷了解自己，能根据“与自己”和“与他人”的生活态度，针对主题发表个人观点，总结不同情境下的不同处理方式分别体现了什么样的个体特征。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

1. mood *n.* 心情
2. amusement *n.* 娱乐, 消遣
3. entertain *v.* 使快乐
4. examine *v.* 检查(身体)
5. advertisement *n.* 广告
6. employer *n.* 雇用者, 雇主
7. cheer up (使)高兴起来, (使)振作起来
8. do the trick 奏效, 达到预期效果
9. more often than not 通常; 多半
10. look through 浏览, 翻阅
11. in pain 痛苦地

12. concentrate on 集中精力于
13. take off 脱掉; 起飞; 迅速流行

(二)阅读词汇和表达

1. circus *n.* 马戏团
2. wig *n.* 假发
3. clown *n.* 小丑
4. badge *n.* 徽章
5. ankle *n.* 脚踝
6. curly *adj.* 卷曲的
7. work closely with 和……密切合作
8. fall off 从……跌落
9. amusement park 游乐场
10. health care 医疗保健
11. do a great job 干得很棒; 尽职尽责

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1—Para. 2	My first meeting with Lara in the hospital.	I put on my 1. curly rainbow wig and big red nose in the hospital and see 2. anxious parents do what they can to 3. comfort nervous and crying children. I spot a small girl whose 4. ankle is twice its normal size.
Para. 3—Para. 5	Clown doctors can be very helpful.	Scientific studies show that laughter produces 5. chemicals to make people feel better. Clown doctors do 6. magic tricks, sing songs, and tell stories and 7. silly jokes to cheer up 8. patients and their families. Smiling and laughing, Lara feels much 9. happier after I help her.
Para. 6	The author's hope for clown doctors.	I hope that clown doctors help make the hospital a 10. friendlier place to visit.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What's the atmosphere like without clown doctors in the hospital?
 - Friendly.
 - Boring.
 - Lively.
 - Frightening.
- What's the job of a clown doctor?
 - To cure patients.
 - To carry medicine.
 - To cheer patients up.
 - To do the cleaning.
- Which of the following is TRUE about Lara?
 - She had her ankle injured.
 - She felt optimistic all the time.
 - She didn't like Larry's magic trick.
 - Her parents didn't take her injury seriously.
- Why did Larry choose to be a clown doctor?
 - Because he was born with humour.
 - Because he had no other choice.
 - Because he could get good payment.
 - Because he had a bad experience in hospital as a kid.
- How does the clown doctor help the patient?
 - By telling stories and jokes.
 - By doing magic tricks.

C. By singing songs.

D. By doing all of the above.

答案:1~5 BCADD

II. 课文语法填空

My name is Larry, **1.** a clown doctor. I chose this career because of my experience of going to hospital when I was a kid. I felt frightened and quite **2.** bored (bore) in hospital. I think I can help people by **3.** entertaining (entertain) them. In the hospital I spend most of my time cheering patients and their families **4.** up by doing magic tricks, **5.** singing (sing) songs and telling stories or silly jokes. Once a small girl named Lara fell off her bicycle and had her ankle **6.** injured (injure). While in hospital, at first she feels **7.** scared (scare) and anxious. However, by doing a magic trick, I can make her much **8.** happier (happy). Even if I take **9.** off my wig and red nose, I'm still wearing a smile because I believe **10.** laughter (laugh) is the best medicine.

III. 阅读升华

- How does the author feel after a day's work?
He feels happy and satisfied.
- Would you like to work as a clown doctor? Why or why not?
I'd like to, for I want to do something for those who are in pain and use my brand of humour to lessen their pain. (回答合理即可)

课后素养评价(一)

I. 阅读理解

Culture shock or thinking differences can depress even the most experienced traveller. Remember that unlucky accidents with service providers may take place because of cultural or linguistic misunderstandings, and that getting angry will make communication more difficult and cause bad feelings. A taste of humour can make hard situations more meaningful and enjoyable to you, your fellow travellers and the local friends you've made.

Keep a journal or carry a small tape recorder and make regular entries or recordings. Taking a step back and telling an experience after some time will open the door for humour. Write a letter or

email to a friend when you find your humour reducing. Challenge yourself to tell at least one good story in this message and you'll be surprised how funny things can look when told to someone outside the situation.

Keep a list of funny things that you observe during your first few days in a new culture, and an explanation of what you think these things are all about. Look back on these lists later in the trip; what seemed strange before is probably familiar now, and your explanations may be funnier than the things themselves! Imagine writing an entry in a guidebook about a frustrating experience. How would you describe your experience to the later travellers? What travel advice would you offer?

Try to see yourself through the eyes of locals. What might they find strange, funny about what you are doing at this moment? When you find it difficult to overcome cultural differences, taking a new look at yourself can be very funny. Be careful not to sacrifice respect for local culture in order to lighten things up for yourself and fellow travellers.

【语篇解读】幽默可以使由于文化差异而给旅行者造成的不良情绪得以调节。本文给那些要旅游而且希望变得幽默的人提出了三条建议。

- Why will the travellers often get depressed?
 - Because of being short of money.
 - Because of the different attitudes to the same thing.
 - Because of not having enough clothes.
 - Because of the unlucky fellow travellers' trouble.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段第一句“Culture shock or thinking differences can depress even the most experienced traveller.”可知,文化冲击和思维差异经常会使旅行者沮丧。故选 B。
- What is the use of keeping a journal when travelling?
 - You can take a step to find the entry.
 - You can keep a list of things that should be taken with.
 - You can experience the same things later.
 - You can begin to have a chance of telling the humour.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Taking a step back and telling an experience after some time will open the door for humour.”可知,写旅行日记或携带一台小录音机能帮助开启幽默。故选 D。
- What should you do when you try to keep your sense of humour?
 - Tell anything that you find entertaining.
 - Learn to respect the local customs.
 - Know how to overcome cultural differences.
 - Try to tell anything particularly funny.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Be careful not to sacrifice respect for local culture in order to lighten things up for yourself and fellow travellers.”可知,要尊重当地的文化习俗。故选 B。
- What can we infer from the passage?
 - The funny things will be always interesting and never change.
 - The funny things would always make people happy.
 - If people didn't experience the things, they would find them funny.
 - The things that seemed strange before are surely becoming the familiar things.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“you'll be surprised how funny things can look when told to someone outside the situation”可知,没有经历过这些事情的人会发现它们很有趣。故选 C。

II. 七选五

Many people believe that there is some truth in the saying “Laughter is the best medicine”. 1 Laughter helps relieve pain, strengthen the immune system and reduce stress. Laughter stimulates (激发) hormones which make us feel happy. Laughter also increases the flow of blood throughout the body and has benefits which are similar to the ones you get by doing exercise.

2 Children exposed to funny films and cartoons before major medical procedures are able to cope better with pain and anxiety. 3 These are professional clowns who are sent to hospitals and wards to entertain and distract sick children.

Laughter therapy has become very popular in recent years and as a result, more and more laughter clubs are starting to open up in cities and towns all over the world. At a laughter session, a trained therapist instructs the group to perform a series of exercises which are designed to produce laughter.

4 And it takes them some time to get rid of their inhibitions (心理抑制). They might even start off with fake laughter, but this doesn't matter because our bodies can't tell the difference, and the results are the same. Moreover, laughter is contagious (传染的). 5

So next time you feel ill, stressed out or depressed, try watching a funny film or try remembering an amusing incident in your life. You will soon feel better.

- If one person starts giggling, it is unavoidable that everyone else will be drawn in.
- Laughter helps you focus.
- This finding has led to so-called clown doctors.
- In fact, research done by scientists has shown that laughter has a lot of health benefits.
- Laughter makes the world a better and more colourful place.
- Some people may find the idea embarrassing at first.
- Using laughter therapy in children's hospitals has proven to be invaluable.

答案:1~5 DGCFA

【微点写作】喜剧演员简介

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 出生于这座城市,他从小就对艺术感兴趣。
Born in the city, he has been interested in art since childhood.
- 他因演一个小丑角色而出名。
He became famous for the role of a clown.
- 对于如何让人发笑,我认为没有人能比得上他。
As to how to make people laugh, I think nobody can compare with him.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 基于文章内容,能运用与话题相关的语言知识讲述小丑医生的工作职责和工作方法;
3. 结合课文体会助人度己的生活态度的重要性,形成积极乐观、笑对人生的生活态度。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. She was in a good **mood** and she was looking forward to her new life. 心情
2. He performs riding horses in the **circus**. 马戏团
3. She has **curly** hair, black eyes and talks in a funny way. 卷曲的
4. She stepped on a loose stone and twisted her **ankle**. 脚踝
5. The boy pins a **badge** on his jacket. 徽章
6. If you say that someone is a **clown**, you mean that they say funny things or do silly things to amuse people. 小丑

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>amusement</u> <i>n.</i> 娱乐,消遣	amuse <i>v.</i> 使开心,逗笑
	amused <i>adj.</i> (人)感到好笑的
	amusing <i>adj.</i> 好笑的,有乐趣的
<u>entertain</u> <i>v.</i> 使快乐	entertainment <i>n.</i> 娱乐;招待
	entertaining <i>adj.</i> 娱乐的,有趣的
<u>examine</u> <i>v.</i> 检查(身体)	examination <i>n.</i> 检查,审查;考试
<u>advertisement</u> <i>n.</i> 广告	advertise <i>v.</i> 做广告,登广告
	advertiser <i>n.</i> 登广告者,广告商
<u>employer</u> <i>n.</i> 雇用者,雇主	employ <i>v.</i> 雇用,使用
	employee <i>n.</i> 雇员
	employment <i>n.</i> 受雇,就业

III. 补全短语

1. look through 浏览,翻阅
2. apologise for 因……而道歉
3. in pain 痛苦地
4. be designed for 为……设计/准备
5. feel like (doing) 想要(做)……
6. do the trick 奏效,达到预期效果
7. concentrate on 集中精力于;全神贯注于
8. as for 至于,关于
9. take off 脱掉;起飞;迅速流行
10. in need of 需要
11. on a weekly basis 每周;按每周一次的标准
12. more often than not 通常,多半
13. do a great job 干得很棒;尽职尽责

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句
Anxious parents do what they can to comfort nervous and crying children.
焦虑的父母竭尽所能地安抚紧张、哭闹的孩子。
2. 句型公式: 倍数表达法
... I spot a small girl whose ankle is twice its normal size.
……我注意到一个小女孩,她的脚踝肿成了正常的两倍。
3. 句型公式: 强调句型
Although it's the doctors and nurses who will treat her injury, it's my job to make her feel better.
尽管为她治疗伤痛的是医生和护士,但让她心情变好则是我的工作。
4. 句型公式: 强调谓语动词
And my magic medicine does indeed seem to do the trick.
而我的灵药似乎真的奏效了。
5. 句型公式: it 作形式主语
After all, it really is true that "laughter is the best medicine".
毕竟,“笑是最灵的药”,这一句话千真万确。

任务型课堂

1. amusement *n.* 娱乐, 消遣

(教材原文) an **amusement** park
一座游乐场

一感 读句子感悟用法

Much **to the students' amusement**, the teacher was **amused by** the **amusing** story told by Tom.

令学生们感到十分有趣的是, 老师被汤姆讲的一个有趣的故事逗笑了。

It **amused** me to think back to my life in London.
回想起在伦敦的生活, 我笑了起来。

The children **amused** themselves **with** playing hide-and-seek.

孩子们玩捉迷藏来取乐。

We **were** all **amused at/by** his funny stories.

我们都被他的有趣的故事逗乐了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) _____ one's amusement (= to the amusement of sb.) 让某人感到好笑/有趣的是 in/with amusement 愉快地; 好笑地; 感兴趣地</p> <p>(2) amuse <i>v.</i> 使开心, 逗笑; (提供) 消遣; (使) 娱乐 amuse sb./oneself by/with 以……来逗乐某人/自己</p> <p>(3) amused <i>adj.</i> 感到有趣的; 被逗乐的; 觉得好笑的 be amused at/by 以……为乐, 觉得……有趣 be amused to do sth. 做某事而感到好笑 keep sb. amused by/with 用……使某人开心</p> <p>(4) _____ <i>adj.</i> 有趣的, 引人发笑的</p>
探究结论	(1)to (4)amusing

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① There are interesting games to keep the children amused (amuse).

② My Chinese teacher is very amusing (amuse).
He always makes us laugh in class.

③ To the great amusement (amuse) of the other travellers, he told jokes all the way from Nanjing to Shanghai.

(2) 完成句子

To my amusement, he couldn't get the door open.
让我感到好笑的是, 他竟然打不开门。

2. entertain *v.* 使快乐

(教材原文) Being a clown doctor means I can help people by **entertaining** them.

当小丑医生意味着我可以用让人们开心的方式帮

助他们。

一感 读句子感悟用法

To my great entertainment, he promised to **entertain** us **to** ice cream, and **entertained** us **with** a lot of his **entertaining** experiences.

令我非常高兴的是, 他答应请我们吃冰激凌, 并讲了他的很多有趣的经历, 逗我们开心。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) entertain sb. _____ sth. 用某物招待某人 entertain sb. _____ sth. 用某物使某人快乐</p> <p>(2) entertainment <i>n.</i> 娱乐, 文娱节目; 招待, 款待 to one's entertainment 使某人高兴的是</p> <p>(3) entertaining <i>adj.</i> 有趣的; 令人愉快的</p>
探究结论	(1)to; with

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① There are lots of entertaining (entertain) programmes on TV.

② The guide entertained the visitors with many interesting historical stories.

③ I entertained my friends to dinner yesterday evening.

④ I suggest you should keep the balance between your study and entertainment (entertain), such as doing sports, listening to music and so on.

(2) 完成句子

He entertained us for hours with his stories and jokes yesterday.

昨天, 他用他的故事和笑话把我们逗得乐了好几个小时。

3. cheer up (使) 高兴起来, (使) 振作起来

(教材原文) On a typical day, we spend our time **cheering up** patients, their families, and more often than not, the hospital staff, too!

我们一天的工作内容一般是为病人、病人家属, 通常还有医院的工作人员带来快乐!

一感 读句子感悟用法

The crowd **cheered** the runners **on** as they started the last lap.

赛跑进入最后一圈时, 观众为运动员们加油鼓劲。

Let's drink a toast to our hostess. **Cheers!**

让我们为女主人举杯。干杯!

We left the city in a **cheerful** mood.

我们怀着愉悦的心情离开了这座城市。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) cheer <i>v.</i> 欢呼, 喝彩, 加油 <i>n.</i> 欢呼声, 喝彩声 cheer _____ 为……加油 (2) cheers <i>interj.</i> 干杯 (3) _____ <i>adj.</i> 令人愉快的; 快乐的 (4) cheerfully <i>adv.</i> 高兴地, 欢快地
探究结论	(1) on (3) cheerful

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① He tried to cheer them up with funny stories.
- ② At the beginning of class, I cheerfully (cheer) asked my students how their weekend had been.
- ③ I'm making a real effort to be cheerful (cheer) every day.
- ④ As the football match was in progress, we kept cheering him on.

4. employer *n.* 雇用者, 雇主

(教材原文) **Employer** The Healthy Humour Foundation

雇主 健康幽默基金会

一感 读句子感悟用法

The manager **employed** Mary **as** his secretary.
经理雇用玛丽作他的秘书。

Staff **are** currently **employed in** transferring patients' records to the new system.

工作人员目前正忙于将病人的医疗记录转移到新系统。

He had retired from regular **employment**.
他已从固定工作岗位上退休。

They have **employed** several specialists from overseas **to solve** the problem.

他们从海外聘请了几名专家来解决这个问题。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) employ <i>v.</i> 雇用; 采用; 使忙于, 使从事于 employ sb. _____ ... 雇用某人当…… employ sb. to do sth. 雇用某人做某事 be employed _____ (doing) sth. 从事/忙于(做)某事 (2) employee <i>n.</i> 雇员 employment <i>n.</i> 职业, 就业
探究结论	(1) as; in

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① Jean was employed by the company as a computer programmer.
- ② They employ casual labourers to pick (pick) the fruit.
- ③ We have been employed to look (look) for ways of reducing waste.
- ④ This employee (employ) was dismissed for laziness.

(2) 完成句子

① She has to employ two gardeners to look after the huge garden.

她不得不雇两位园丁来照料这座大花园。

② The children were employed in painting when I came in.

当我进来时, 孩子们正忙着画画。

5. It + be + adj. + that...

(教材原文) After all, **it really is true that** "laughter is the best medicine".

毕竟, “笑是最灵的药”, 这一句话千真万确。

一感 读句子感悟用法

It's obvious that the students should get well prepared for their future.

显而易见, 学生应该为他们的未来做好准备。

It is a pity that many people fail to realise the importance of time.

可惜的是, 许多人没有意识到时间的重要性。

It is thought that everyone should form good habits when they are still young.

人们认为, 每个人都应该在还小的时候养成良好的习惯。

It happened that he wasn't at home when I called him.

我打电话时碰巧他不在家。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	it 代替主语从句的常见句型: (1) It + be + _____ (strange, important, necessary, possible, clear, obvious...) that... (2) It + be + _____ (a pity, a shame, an honour, a wonder...) that... (3) It + be + 动词-ed 形式 (said, thought, believed, hoped, reported...) that... (4) It happens/seems/appears/occurs to sb. that...
探究结论	(1) <i>adj.</i> (2) <i>n.</i>

名师点拨

在 “It is/was strange/important/necessary/natural/essential/... that...” 及 “It is/was suggested/ordered/required/desired/... that...” 句型中, that 从句中的谓语动词要用 “should+动词原形”, 其中 should 可以省略。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 句型转换

① People believe that he will surely complete the task on time.

→ It is believed that he will surely complete the task on time.

② He seemed to have heard of the story.

→ It seemed that he had heard of the story.

(2) 完成句子

① It is necessary that those machines (should) be examined.

有必要检查一下那些机器。

② It is a wonder that the workers have finished the building in such a short time.

工人们在这么短的时间内建成这座大楼真是一个奇迹。

课后素养评价(二)

I. 单词拼写

- After a day of air and activity, you should be in the mood (心情) for a good meal.
- In the past, people had very few amusements (消遣) to choose from.
- He was handsome in a way with curly (卷曲的) hair and pink-and-white cheeks.
- I ignored the rising pain in my foot and ankle (脚踝).
- They were entertained (使快乐) by top singers, dancers and celebrities.
- Another doctor examined (检查) her and could still find nothing wrong.
- I saw your advertisement (广告) in this morning's newspaper for the air hostess.
- Employers (雇主) may become cautious about taking on new staff.

II. 短语填空

do the trick; in pain; fall over; more often than not; concentrate on; work closely with; be known as; cheer...up

- I wrote that song just to cheer myself up.
- I'm writing to call on parents to work closely with schools to ensure the best possible future for the children.
- Located in the northeast of Italy, Venice is known as the Floating City.
- It's high time that you concentrated on your work at hand!
- When the little girl fell over, I gave her a toy to keep her from crying.

- If your friends are too busy to meet for lunch, a short phone call can do the trick.
- During foggy weather trains run behind schedule more often than not.
- He was crying out in pain on the ground when the ambulance arrived.

III. 完成句子

- You need to spend some time thinking about this exercise and what it means.
你需要花些时间想想这个练习和它意味着什么。
- It was in this factory that my father used to work.
我的父亲过去就是在这家工厂工作的。
- There is five times as much coffee in this glass as in that one.
这个玻璃杯里的咖啡是那个玻璃杯里的五倍。
- Take a deep breath and relax yourself instead of focusing on what brings you stress, and you will fall asleep soon.
深呼吸, 放松自己, 而不是专注于给你带来压力的事情, 你很快就会睡着。
- It is important that you (should) arrive on time.
你准时到达很重要。

IV. 完形填空

The Secret of Happiness

An old man walked slowly into a restaurant with his cane (拐杖). His 1 overcoat and worn-out shoes made him stand out (突出) from the usual Saturday morning breakfast crowd.

A young waitress named Mary watched him move towards a 2 by the window. Mary ran over to him, and said, “Here, sir. Let me give you a hand with that 3.”

Without 4 a word, he smiled and nodded a thank-you. She pulled the chair away from the table and helped him get seated 5. In a soft, clear 6 he said, "Thank you, Miss. And thank you for your 7."

"You're welcome, sir," she responded. "I'll be 8 in a moment, and if you need anything in the meantime, just wave at me!"

After he had finished a(n) 9 meal, Mary helped him up from his chair, 10 him his cane, and walked with him to the front door. Holding the door open for him, she said, "Come back and see us, sir!" The old man 11 around and smiled.

When Mary went to clean his table, she was 12 to find a business card, a one-hundred-dollar bill and a 13 which read, "Dear Mary, I respect you very much, and you respect yourself too. It shows the way you treat others. You have found the secret of 14! Your kind gestures will shine through those who meet you."

Actually the man she had served was the 15 of the restaurant. That was the first time that she or any of his employees had seen him.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。年轻的女服务员玛丽帮助一位行动不便的老人就餐,并且多加照顾。待送走老人后,她惊讶地发现这位老人因为她善良的举动奖励了她一张100美元的钞票并留下一张名片和便条。在便条上老人告诉她,她找到了快乐的秘诀。原来这位老人就是店里的老板。

1. A. clean B. old
C. nice D. funny

B 根据第一段第二句中的“worn-out shoes made him stand out (突出)”可知,破旧的鞋让他看起来格外显眼,因此老人的衣服也应该是旧的。故选 B。

2. A. room B. waiter
C. table D. girl

C 根据常识可知,老人进入餐厅应该是走向桌子。故选 C。

3. A. chair B. dish
C. desk D. menu

A 老人行动不便,玛丽跑过去帮助老人入座,因此这里是指帮他放好椅子。故选 A。

4. A. saying B. speaking
C. reading D. telling

A 老人没说一句话,微笑着点了点头以表感谢。without saying a word 为固定搭配,意为“一句话也没说”。故选 A。

5. A. sadly B. quietly
C. gradually D. safely

D 句意:玛丽把椅子挪开,帮助老人安全地入座。故选 D。

6. A. language B. sound
C. attitude D. voice

D voice 一般指人的声音,说话、唱歌的嗓音。此处是指老人说话的声音很轻柔、清晰。故选 D。

7. A. attention B. kindness
C. invitation D. cooperation

B 上文提到玛丽帮助老人入座,此处应该是老人感谢她的善良。故选 B。

8. A. ready B. busy
C. back D. fine

C 玛丽说如有什么需要,老人可以向她招手,她便过来。故选 C。

9. A. cheap B. expensive
C. terrible D. delicious

D 结合上下文这顿饭是贵是便宜无从得知,但是老人享用后没有抱怨,因此判断这顿饭应该是美味的。故选 D。

10. A. showed B. handed
C. lent D. took

B 玛丽扶老人站起来,递给他拐杖。故选 B。

11. A. turned B. walked
C. looked D. moved

A 句意:老人转过身来并对玛丽笑了一下。故选 A。

12. A. excited B. worried
C. disappointed D. surprised

D 下文提到玛丽并不知道桌上会有卡片和钞票,因此感到惊讶。故选 D。

13. A. note B. tip
C. message D. title

A 根据下文内容可知,老人留了一张名片、一张钞票和一张便条。故选 A。

14. A. kindness B. unselfishness
C. happiness D. helpfulness

C 根据文章标题——《快乐的秘诀》可知选 C。

15. A. customer B. owner
C. partner D. host

B 根据下文内容可知,老人是这家餐厅的老板。故选 B。

【微点写作】喜剧演员简介

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 他是国际公认的电视和电影中的喜剧人物。

He is an internationally recognised comedy character on TV and in films.

2. 最令我印象深刻的是他独特的让人发笑的表演风格。

What impresses me most is his particular style of acting, which makes people laugh.

3. 他因出色的喜剧表演技巧而赢得了很多奖。

He has won many awards for his excellent skills of acting as a comedian.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 理解限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句的相同点和不同点,学会在写作中正确使用非限制性定语从句;
2. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 学习并运用英语习语表达各种“笑”,找到更多类似的英语习语,理解这些英语习语的意义;
4. 思考如何在困境中保持健康、乐观的心态,让自己始终拥有积极向上的心态;
5. 学会用英语讲幽默故事和进行评论,并能够在实际生活中运用所学表达。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体部分**的汉语意思

1. You **deserve** a rest after all that hard work. 应得
2. He put on a **long face** when he lost his money.
愁眉苦脸
3. If I wear this ugly cap to the party, I'll be a **laughing stock**.
笑料,笑柄
4. The man is willing to do anything to make his wife **crack a smile**.
笑了起来
5. A **practical joke** is a trick that is intended to embarrass someone or make them look ridiculous.
恶作剧
6. They **grinned** with pleasure when they heard our news.
露齿而笑;咧着嘴笑

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
essential <i>adj.</i> 极其重要的,必不可少的	essentially <i>adv.</i> 本质上,根本上
impress <i>v.</i> 使钦佩,使留下深刻印象	impression <i>n.</i> 印象;感觉 impressive <i>adj.</i> 令人印象深刻的,令人钦佩的
familiar <i>adj.</i> 熟悉的	familiarise <i>v.</i> 使熟悉 familiarity <i>n.</i> 熟悉,通晓
summarise <i>v.</i> 总结	summary <i>n.</i> 总结,摘要
chemical <i>n.</i> 化学品; 化学制品 <i>adj.</i> 化学的	chemist <i>n.</i> 化学家 chemistry <i>n.</i> 化学

III. 补全短语

1. take away 带走; 拿走
2. make sense 有意义; 讲得通
3. put up 建造, 搭建
4. be pleased with 对……满意
5. look up at 向上看
6. play tricks/jokes on 开……的玩笑; 捉弄
7. get it 明白; 理解

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: “make + 宾语 + 宾语补足语”结构
This will activate chemicals in your brain to make you feel happier.
这会激活你大脑中的化学物质,让你感觉更快乐。
2. 句型公式: the way to do sth.
But there are ways to maintain a healthy mind even during times of difficulty.
但是,即使在困难时期,也有办法保持健康的心态。
3. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句
Not quite sure what he means, Watson thinks Holmes is joking, which he finds annoying at this time of night.
华生不太明白福尔摩斯在说什么,他觉得福尔摩斯在开玩笑,这让他在晚上的这个时候觉得很烦。

任务型课堂

1. deserve v. 应得, 应受到

(教材原文) We all **deserve** a second chance, I guess.

我认为, 我们都应该再有一次机会。

一感 / 读句子感悟用法

We thought that our customers **deserved to know** it.

我们认为我们的顾客应该知道此事。

What he did **deserves praise**.

= What he did **deserves praising**.

= What he did **deserves to be praised**.

他所做的事值得表扬。

If you do something wrong, you **deserve punishment**.

如果你做错了事, 你就应当受到惩罚。

二探 / 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) deserve _____ sth. 应该/值得做某事(主语通常为人, 指所发生的事与主语相称) ... deserve _____ = ... deserve to be done 值得被做, 应该做..... deserve + n. (attention/consideration/admiration/praise/blame/punishment) 值得(关注/考虑/钦佩/表扬/责备/惩罚) (2) deserved <i>adj.</i> 应得的, 理所当然的; 该受的
探究结论	(1) to do; doing

名师点拨 ■■■■

deserve 后接 doing, 用主动形式表示被动意义, 等于后接不定式的被动式。有相同用法的动词还有 need, want, require 等。

三评 / 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① He has studied very hard and deserves to pass (pass) the exams.

② She is a responsible writer, and she deserves respecting/to be respected (respect).

(2) 一句多译

保持开放的心态, 因为每个人的想法都值得考虑。

① Keep an open mind, because everyone's ideas deserve consideration.

② Keep an open mind, because everyone's ideas deserve considering.

③ Keep an open mind, because everyone's ideas deserve to be considered.

2. “make+宾语+宾语补足语”结构

(教材原文) This will activate chemicals in your brain to **make you feel happier**.

这会激活你大脑中的化学物质, 让你感觉更快乐。

一感 / 读句子感悟用法

Our teacher always **makes us speak up** in class.

我们的老师总是让我们在课堂上大声点说。

He **was made to measure** the surrounding land.

他被要求测量周围的土地。

He is very popular among his students as he always tries to **make them interested in** his lectures.

他很受他学生的欢迎, 因为他总是努力使他们对自己的讲座感兴趣。

The cooling wind swept through our bedroom windows, **making air conditioning unnecessary**.

凉爽的风穿过我们卧室的窗户, 使得空调都没必要了。

二探 / 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) make + n./pron. + _____ sth. (该结构用于被动语态时, 被省略的不定式符号 to 要还原) (2) make + n./pron. + done (过去分词作宾语补足语, 表示被动关系) (3) make + n./pron. + <i>adj.</i> (形容词作宾语补足语, 表示宾语的状态)
探究结论	(1) do

三评 / 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Children should be made to grasp (grasp) the importance of saving water.

② He couldn't make himself heard (hear) with the noise of the traffic.

③ She put on earphones to make her attention devoted (devote) to reading.

(2) 一句多译

我们的英语老师经常让我们复述课文。

① Our English teacher often makes us retell the texts.

② We are often made to retell the texts by our English teacher.

语法探究

非限制性定语从句

「语法感知」

① I walk through the doors into the waiting area, **where** there's a familiar atmosphere of boredom and tension.

② People sit uncomfortably on plastic chairs, looking through old magazines, **all of which** have been read hundreds of times previously.

③ In the middle of this particular scene I spot a small girl **whose** ankle is twice its normal size.

④ I speak with the on-duty nurse, **who** tells me that Lara's parents rushed her to the hospital...

⑤ Scientific studies show that laughter produces chemicals to make people feel better, **which** means clown doctors can be helpful.

1. 句子③和其他句子之间的区别是没有逗号,是限制性定语从句。

2. 句子①②④⑤的从句和先行词被逗号隔开了,是非限制性定语从句,是对先行词的补充说明。它与主句的关系不太密切,没有它,主句也能独立存在。

「语法精讲」

一、非限制性定语从句的作用

非限制性定语从句只是对主句内容或先行词的补充、解释或附加说明。即使没有它,主句也能独立存在。非限制性定语从句和主句的关系不密切,它与先行词之间常用逗号隔开。需要注意的是,that 和 why 不能引导非限制性定语从句。

二、关系代词引导的非限制性定语从句

1. **which** 指物,在非限制性定语从句中作主语或宾语。

China Daily attracts a worldwide readership, **which** shows that more and more people all over the world want to learn about China.

《中国日报》有着全球的读者群,这说明全球越来越多的人想要了解中国。

2. **who** 指人,在非限制性定语从句中作主语或宾语。

Li Hua, **who** is our monitor, was praised by our teacher yesterday.

李华是我们的班长,他昨天被我们的老师表扬了。

3. **whom** 指人,在非限制性定语从句中作宾语,一般不能省略。

Peter, **whom** you met in London, is going to Paris next week.

你在伦敦见过的那个彼得,下周将要去巴黎。

4. **whose** 既可以指人,又可以指物,在非限制性定语从句中作定语。先行词指人时,“**whose + n.**”相当于“**the + n. + of whom**”;先行词指物时,“**whose + n.**”相当于“**the + n. + of which**”。

The books on the desk, **whose** covers are shiny, are prizes for us.

桌上那些封面闪亮的书是为我们准备的奖品。

5. **as** 既可以指人,又可以指物,在非限制性定语从句中可以作主语或宾语。

As we all know, smoking is harmful to people's health.

众所周知,吸烟对人的健康有害。

名师点拨 ■■■■

as 与 which 在引导非限制性定语从句时的区别:

项目	as	which
指代	引导的从句只能指代整个主句的内容	引导的从句既可以指代整个主句的内容,又可以指代主句的一部分
位置	可位于主句之前、之中或之后	引导的从句不能位于主句之前
意义	正如	这;那

She is always working hard, **as** everyone can see.

正如大家所看到的那样,她一直努力工作。

As everyone can see, she is honest.

她的诚实是大家有目共睹的。

The air quality in the city, **as** is shown in the report, has improved over the past two months.

正如报告所显示的那样,在过去的两个月里,这座城市的空气质量已有所改善。

The book, **which** I bought yesterday, is very instructive.

这本书是我昨天买的,它富有教益。

Tom was always late for school, **which** made his teacher very angry.

汤姆上学总是迟到,这让他的老师很生气。

三、关系副词引导的非限制性定语从句

当先行词指时间或地点,且在定语从句中作状语时,用 **when**, **where** 引导非限制性定语从句。**why** 不能引导非限制性定语从句,但可以使用 **for which** 代替。

We will put off the picnic in the park until next week, **when** the weather may be better.

我们将把在公园的野餐推迟到下周,届时天气可能会更好。

Opposite is St Paul's Cathedral, **where** you can hear some lovely music.

对面是圣保罗大教堂,在那里你可以听到一些美妙的音乐。

四、“介词+关系代词”引导的非限制性定语从句

在“介词+关系代词”中,关系代词用 **whom** 指人,用 **which** 指物。

Scientists have advanced many theories about why human beings cry tears, **none of which** has been proved.

就人类为什么哭出眼泪这一问题,科学家提出了许多理论,但是没有一项理论得到过证实。

Many young people, **most of whom** were well-educated, headed for remote regions to chase their dreams.

很多年轻人去了偏远地区追求自己的梦想,他们中的大部分都受过良好的教育。

五、限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句的区别

1. 引导词不同:关系代词 **that** 和关系副词 **why** 均不可以引导非限制性定语从句。

2. 非限制性定语从句与主句关系并不密切,且中间用逗号隔开;在译成汉语时,通常译成两句话。而限制性定语从句常与主句一起译成一句话。

I have two foreign teachers, both of **whom** are from America.

我有两个外教,他们都来自美国。

The foreign teacher **who** comes from America teaches us literature.

美国来的那位外教教我们文学。

3. 非限制性定语从句的引导词无论在从句中作什么成分,均不可以省略;而在限制性定语从句中,作宾语的关系代词可以省略。

This is the man (**that/who/whom**) we are talking about.

这就是我们正谈论的那个人。

This is the man, **whom** we talked about just now.

这就是那个人,我们刚才谈论过的。

4. 在限制性定语从句中,指人时,作宾语的 **whom** 可以用 **who** 或 **that** 代替,但是在非限制性定语从句中不可以被代替。

He is the very person **whom/who/that** we referred to.

他正是我们提到的那个人。

Do you know Tom, **whom** we just referred to?

你认识汤姆吗?就是我们刚刚提到过的那个人。

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

- The number of smokers, as is reported, has dropped by 17 percent in just one year.
- The meeting, which was held in the park, was attended by 1,000 people.
- They came to China in the 1970s, when China was not open to the outside world.
- As is known to everybody, the moon travels around the earth once every month.
- English is a language shared by several diverse cultures, each of which uses it differently.
- She gave another piece of advice, which I think is of great help to the research work.
- She showed the visitors around the museum, whose construction had taken more than three years.
- Julie enjoyed reading when young. She grew up in a key middle school in her city, where her parents both taught Chinese.
- My aunt, whom you met in the supermarket, has gone to London on business.
- John invited about 40 people to his wedding, most of whom are family members.

II. 完成句子

- The boy, whose father is an engineer, studies very hard.
那个小男孩学习很努力,他的父亲是一位工程师。
- These apple trees, which I planted three years ago, have not borne any fruit.
这些苹果树是我三年前栽的,还没有结过果实。
- The textile mill has over 8,000 workers and staff, eighty percent of whom are women.
这家纺织厂有八千多名职工,女职工占百分之八十。
- We will put off the outing until next week, when we won't be so busy.
我们将把郊游推迟到下个星期,那时我们就不会这么忙了。
- Many children go to a day care centre, where they can learn and play games.
很多孩子上日间托儿所,在那里他们可以学习和做游戏。

课后素养评价(三)

I. 选词(或短语)填空

put up; essential; take away; make sense;
look up at; come true

1. He dreams of becoming a pilot and I believe his dream will come true next year.
2. They're putting up new hotels in order to boost (促进) tourism in the area.
3. It makes sense to keep such information on file for reference.
4. It's essential that our pilots are given the best possible training.
5. I was given some pills to take away the pain.
6. The rich man gets up on the lifeguard tower and all his friends look up at him.

II. 单句语法填空

1. He is working hard, which will make him pass the final exam.
2. When walking down the street, I came across David, whom I hadn't seen for years.
3. Charles Smith, who is my former teacher, retired last year.
4. As is known to everybody, China is a beautiful country with a long history.
5. Mr King, whose legs were badly hurt, was quickly taken to hospital.
6. He will put off the outing until next week, when he will be free.
7. He went to America in 1945, where and when he was noticed by a famous film director.
8. When I first came to England, I can't make myself understood (understand).
9. It is those who are willing to give rather than receive that deserve respecting/to be respected (respect).
10. His trip to India made a strong impression (impress) on him.

III. 阅读理解

Have you heard of Robert Bateman? He worked late the evening of March 31, 1992. He studied his painting of three lions. Bateman decided to add some finishing touches. As he turned away from the canvas, he smiled, imagining the reaction of his

staff the next morning. What an April Fools' joke! The next day, when his assistants came to the studio, they were shocked. What had the famous artist done to his masterpiece? The lions had bat ears!

World-famous wildlife artist Robert Bateman lives in British Columbia, Canada. On working days, he might be found hiking on the mountain, sketching birds and animals. Bateman spends his days observing, studying and painting wildlife.

As a boy, Bateman explored the woods and fields around his home in Toronto, Ontario. By the 1970s, he was well-known for his realistic paintings of the natural world.

When he's not in the woods or mountains, Bateman can be found at home in front of his easel (画架). He still gets a thrill out of seeing an eagle. Sometimes, Bateman does not even have to leave home to find an eagle. They come to him. Eagles rest on a dead tree that Bateman "planted" on the rock in front of his house.

Bateman's most exciting place to find subjects to paint is in Africa. "Every day in Africa is thrilling," he says. "There are places in Africa that look like the Garden of Eden (伊甸园)."

As for the bat ears on the lions, Bateman painted them on with watercolour paints. After everyone had a good laugh, he simply washed the ears away.

【语篇解读】文章简要介绍了世界著名野生动物艺术家罗伯特·贝特曼。文章既对他专注于绘画的人生做了记录,又特地介绍了他给狮子画上蝙蝠耳朵的轶事,向读者展现了一位上进又不失幽默的画家形象。

1. Why did Bateman add bat ears to the lion?
 - A. Because he was dissatisfied with his painting.
 - B. Because he wanted to joke with his staff members.
 - C. Because he would like to make his painting more attractive.
 - D. Because he was eager to have a better study on his painting.
- B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "... he smiled,

imagining the reaction of his staff the next morning. What an April Fools' joke!"可知,他给狮子画上蝙蝠耳朵,是想要跟画室里的工作人员开玩笑。故选 B。

2. Why does Bateman hike on the mountain?

- A. To look for fun.
- B. To research and paint wildlife.
- C. To take care of wildlife.
- D. To search for new species of wildlife.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“he might be found hiking on the mountain, sketching birds and animals. Bateman spends his days observing, studying and painting wildlife”可知,他去山上徒步的目的是研究野生动物,并为其作画。故选 B。

3. What can we learn about Bateman?

- A. He lived in the UK many years ago.
- B. He spends quite a lot of time in hunting eagles.
- C. His paintings do not look like real things in life.
- D. He is particularly fond of living in Africa.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“Bateman's most exciting place to find subjects to paint is in Africa.”可知,他尤其喜欢待在非洲。故选 D。

4. Which words can describe Bateman?

- A. Crazy and cruel.
- B. Naughty and unkind.
- C. Humorous and hard-working.
- D. Imaginative and impractical.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“... he smiled, imagining the reaction of his staff the next morning. What an April Fools' joke!”可知,他给狮子画上蝙蝠耳朵,准备给画室工作人员送上“愚人节玩笑”,由此可看出他是一位有点幽默的画家;根据第二段中的“Bateman spends his days observing, studying and painting wildlife.”可知,他是一个努力上进的画家。故选 C。

【微点写作】喜剧演员简介

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 在他所有的作品中,我最喜欢的是他的一部喜剧。

Among all his works, my favourite is one of his comedies.

2. 我被他的表演深深吸引。

I'm deeply attracted by his performance.

3. 我认为,他是他那个时代最好的喜剧演员之一。

In my opinion, he was one of the best comedians of his time.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 通过概括课文大意,梳理课文结构,更好地了解幽默的重要性;
3. 能够理解和欣赏单口喜剧这种艺术形式;
4. 领悟并学会一种幽默、风趣的处事方式。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

1. interaction *n.* 交流
2. shave *n.* 刮脸,刮胡子
3. fellow *n.* 男人;家伙

4. concept *n.* 概念,观念
5. spot *n.* 地点,处所
6. cruel *adj.* 残忍的
7. whisper *v.* 悄声说,低语
8. gently *adv.* 温和地;轻柔地
9. conclude *v.* 结束,终止
10. composer *n.* 作曲家

11. remark *n.* 言论; 意见, 评论
12. complicated *adj.* 难处理的; 难懂的
13. fall behind 不能按时完成(工作)
14. tell off 斥责, 责骂
15. throw light on 使……显得清楚; 阐明……; 照亮
16. brand of 某种类型的

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. linguist *n.* 语言学家
2. fame *n.* 名声, 名誉
3. emotive *adj.* 使情绪激动的
4. barber *n.* 男理发师

5. illuminate *v.* 照亮, 照明
6. equation *n.* 等式, 方程式
7. witty *adj.* 说话风趣的; 妙趣横生的
8. medieval *adj.* 中世纪的, 中古时期的
9. roar *v.* 哄笑, 大笑
10. mischievous *adj.* 调皮的, 淘气的
11. put sb. on the spot (故意提出难以回答或尴尬的问题)使某人难堪
12. think on one's feet 头脑反应很快; 才思敏捷
13. roar with laughter 哄堂大笑
14. hurry away 匆忙离开

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1	The introduction to humour.	Humour has been an 1. essential part of human behaviour for 2. thousands of years.
Para. 2	A great humour master: Mark Twain.	Twain 3. combines humour with more serious messages and his particular style of writing is 4. funny and often mischievous.
Para. 3—Para. 4	Another humour master: Lin Yutang.	Lin was famous for his 5. unique brand of humour, who brought the concept of 6. humour to modern Chinese literature. His quick wit helped make him famous as a 7. master of humour.
Para. 5	The importance of humour.	Sharing jokes and 8. laughing together can bring individuals and even communities together.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. What can we know about Mark Twain from the passage?
 - A. He thinks highly of humour.
 - B. He thinks everyone can become a writer.
 - C. He is the most humorous writer in the world.
 - D. He created an equation: Reality + Dreams + Humour = Wisdom.
2. Who combined the Chinese word “youmo” with the English word “humour”?
 - A. Mark Twain.
 - B. The president of the university.
 - C. The emperor.
 - D. Lin Yutang.
3. What kind of person was Lin Yutang from the story?
 - A. Clever and kind.
 - B. Witty and brave.
 - C. Humorous and wise.

- D. Considerate and generous.
4. Which of the following is TRUE according to the passage?
 - A. Humour is just about laughter.
 - B. Humour plays an important role in our life.
 - C. There wasn't any humour until modern times.
 - D. Humour is the most important part of human behaviour.
5. What's the passage mainly about?
 - A. The life of Mark Twain.
 - B. The importance of humour.
 - C. Why humour makes sense in our life.
 - D. Lin Yutang's contributions to Chinese literature.

答案: 1~5 ADCBB

II. 课文语法填空

Humour is an essential part of human **1. behaviour** (behave). Authors have used it to entertain and throw new light on sensitive or emotive issues.

Mark Twain is a master of humour **2. who/that** is remembered for his ability **3. to combine** (combine) humour with more serious messages. His writing style is **4. funny** (fun) and often mischievous. Besides, he is also well known for his witty **5. remarks** (remark). Lin Yutang is another master of humour, who is famous for his unique brand of humour. He brought the concept of humour to modern Chinese literature. What's more, Lin's quick wit helped make him famous **6. as** a master of humour. Once, **7. having been invited** (invite) to dinner at a university, he was put on the spot **8. when** the president suddenly asked him to give a speech. He used a little joke to make people laugh, while

gently telling **9. off** the president.

In a word, humour is a way of life and a tool that can **10. be used to** (use) illuminate the world.

III. 阅读升华

1. What's Lin Yutang's aim of telling the story of a cruel Roman emperor?

To teach the president a lesson.

2. How can a sense of humour help you in your daily life? Give an example.

It can deal with our problems in a simple and easy way. For example, when my parents quarrel, I can deal with their problem by entertaining them with a funny story.

课后素养评价(四)

I. 单词拼写

- This can provide clues about the true meaning of their non-verbal interactions (交流).
- He was in low spirits, so he hadn't shaved (刮脸) for a few days.
- Her father advised her to keep her distance from that fellow (家伙).
- Basic Math introduces students to the basic concepts (概念) of mathematics, as well as the fundamentals of more tricky areas.
- I ran downstairs, and spotted (发现) a red steel can.
- He was such a cruel (残酷的) man that he showed no mercy to others.
- Suddenly the boy came over and whispered (悄声说) something in Helen's ear.
- I knew very well that the problem was more complicated (复杂的) than he supposed.
- When the group discussion is nearing its end, make sure you conclude (结束) it with important points.
- He deserves his status as one of the most popular composers (作曲家) in Western music history.

II. 短语填空

tell off; put sb. ... on the spot; hurry away; throw light on; roar with laughter; fall behind; think on one's feet

- To be promoted or to fall behind is not a matter of salary but even more a matter of self-respect.
- Professor Wang can think on his feet; he always has an answer ready when we ask him questions.
- Dating back centuries, the traditional crosstalk shows have made people all over China roar with laughter.
- I'm always being told off for being so awkward.
- He hurried away to catch the train and even forgot to lock the door.
- The interviewer's questions really put him on the spot.
- I believe the teacher's explanation will throw light on this puzzling problem.

III. 补全句子

- 使她高兴的是她赢了一场如此重要的比赛。(主语从句)
What made her happy was that she won such an important match.
- 很多已享有几百年盛誉的中国品牌,正面临着来自

现代市场的新挑战。(分词短语作状语)

Many Chinese brands, having developed their reputations over centuries, are facing new challenges from the modern market.

3. 通过我多年的学校生活,我明白了如果我们想要改变生活,从小事做起是至关重要的。(be to do)

Through my years of school life, I've learned that if we are to make a difference in life, it's vital that we should begin with small things.

4. 当轮到 he 发表演讲时,他走到了麦克风前,紧张而尴尬。(形容词作状语)

When it was his turn to deliver his speech, he walked towards the microphone, nervous and embarrassed.

5. 虽然这些图标的形状不同,但是它们的大小和颜色很相似。(while)

While these icons have different shapes, they are of similar size and colour.

IV. 七选五

The English language has many ways to talk about something that is funny. 1 It is a basic human need. Physical humour, especially, can cross limits like nationality and language and bring people together from all different walks of life.

Humour comes in many forms. The most obvious and traditional way we use humour is in jokes. 2 This is when a person changes a word or uses it in a different context for comic effect.

Another way people can use humour is through telling a funny story. Perhaps something bad happened to the person but they can laugh about it now. People also invent funny stories in order to make people laugh. The advantage of this is that the characters aren't real. 3

Physical comedy usually divides opinions. For some, seeing someone fall down, whether it is planned or not, is one of the funniest things they can see. 4 Some types of humour can also be harmful if someone is not in the mood for being made fun of! People's senses of humour vary across the world, so what may be funny in your country

might be incredibly harmful in another!

5 The British, for instance, are famous for their humour in English. However, people learning a foreign language face much difficulty when it comes to being funny in a second language.

- A. Humour is just one of the ways.
B. Everyone needs to laugh once in a while.
C. Other forms of humour are word play and puns (双关语).
D. Therefore, you don't have to feel bad for laughing at them!
E. People of all ages and cultures have a strong sense of humour.
F. Most people know how to use some form of humour in their native languages.
G. For others, finding physical humour and non-serious accidents funny seems cruel.

答案:1~5 ACDGF

【微点写作】喜剧演员简介

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 查理·卓别林是他那个时代最好的喜剧演员之一,因为他知道如何利用他的肢体动作和面部特征让人们发笑。

Charlie Chaplin was one of the best comedians of his time because he knew how to use his body movements and facial features to make people laugh.

2. 在我看来,查理·卓别林最有趣的事情是他扮演流浪汉时的走路方式,流浪汉是他最著名的角色。

In my opinion, the funniest thing about Charlie Chaplin was the way he walked when he was acting as the Tramp, who is his most famous character.

3. 流浪汉是一个穷人,但有一颗善良的心,他有意想不到的冒险经历。

The Tramp is a poor man with a kind heart who has unexpected adventures.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 掌握人物介绍的基本内容、文体特征和写作手法,并能运用所学知识介绍一位熟悉和喜爱的喜剧人;
3. 通过分析、概括、对比马克·吐温和林语堂在作品和生活中的幽默方式,领悟他们的生活智慧,学习他们豁达的人生观,树立积极、健康的世界观、人生观和价值观。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you achieve **fame**, you become very well-known. 名声
2. His father used to be a **barber**. 男理发师
3. A **concept** is an idea or abstract principle. 概念
4. The circus chose the **spot** in the downtown to put up the tent. 地点,处所
5. She sat on Rossi's knee as he **whispered** in her ear. 悄声说
6. If someone **roars** with laughter, they laugh in a very noisy way. 哄笑
7. A **brand** of a product is the version of it that is made by one particular manufacturer. 品牌
8. Every morning the man **shaves** himself with this electric razor (剃须刀). 刮脸,刮胡子
9. Most of us believe that Jack is a clever **fellow** indeed. 男人;家伙
10. In addition to English, the **linguist** knows other seven languages. 语言学家

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>remark</u> <i>n.</i> 言论; 意见, 评论	remarkable <i>adj.</i> 非凡的, 卓越的
	remarkably <i>adv.</i> 不寻常地, 惊人地
<u>interaction</u> <i>n.</i> 交流	interact <i>v.</i> 互动, 相互影响
<u>emotive</u> <i>adj.</i> 使情绪激动的	emotion <i>n.</i> 情绪, 感情
	emotional <i>adj.</i> 感情上的, 情绪激动的
<u>cruel</u> <i>adj.</i> 残忍的	cruelty <i>n.</i> 凶残, 残忍
<u>conclude</u> <i>v.</i> 结束, 终止	conclusion <i>n.</i> 结论, 结束

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>gently</u> <i>adv.</i> 温和地; 轻柔地	gentle <i>adj.</i> 温和的; 轻柔的
<u>composer</u> <i>n.</i> 作曲家	compose <i>v.</i> 作曲
	composition <i>n.</i> 作曲; 作品; 作文; 成分
<u>complicated</u> <i>adj.</i> 难处理的; 难懂的	complicate <i>v.</i> 使更复杂
	complication <i>n.</i> 使复杂化的问题(情况)

III. 补全短语

1. in particular 尤其, 特别
2. tell off 斥责, 责骂
3. throw light on 使……显得清楚; 阐明……; 照亮
4. brand of 某种类型的
5. put sb. on the spot (故意提出难以回答或尴尬的问题)使某人难堪
6. cross out 删去; 注销
7. think on one's feet 头脑反应很快; 才思敏捷
8. roar with laughter 哄堂大笑
9. hurry away 匆忙离开
10. fall behind 不能按时完成(工作); 落后

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: “be to do”结构

Like Twain, but on the other side of the world, Lin Yutang was soon to become famous for his unique brand of humour.

但在世界的另一边, 和马克·吐温一样, 林语堂很快因为他独特的幽默风格而出名。

2. 句型公式: not only... but also...

While these same jokes might not be as funny to

us now as they were then, their authors understood that humour could not only entertain but also throw new light on sensitive or emotive issues.

虽然这些相同的笑话现在对我们而言可能不如当时那么有趣,但是它们的作者明白,幽默不仅是一

种娱乐的方式,而且能使人对敏感问题或有争议的问题产生新的认识。

3. 句型公式:形容词作状语

“What did you say to my animals?” said the emperor, astonished.

“你对我的动物们说了什么?”皇帝惊讶地说。

任务型课堂

1. whisper v. 悄声说, 低语 n. 低语; 耳语; 传闻

(教材原文) The man **whispered** something in the lion's ear, after which the lion shook its head and walked away unhappily.

那人在狮子耳边低声说了些什么, 然后狮子摇摇头, 不高兴地走开了。

一感 读句子感悟用法

She leaned forward and **whispered** the news to him.

她探过身去, 低声把消息告诉了他。

Peter leaned over and **whispered** something in Tom's ear.

彼得弯下身去, 在汤姆的耳边低声说了些什么。

She **whispered to me** so no one else would hear.

她低声跟我说话以免别人听见。

It is whispered that he is heavily in debt.

有人私下说他负债很多。

They sat in the back of the room, talking in **whispers**.

他们坐在房间后面, 小声地说话。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) whisper sth. _____ sb. 对某人低声说某事 whisper sth. in one's ear 在某人的耳边低语某事 whisper (to sb.) that... (对某人)耳语…… It is/was whispered that... 有人私下说……, 据传…… (2) _____ a whisper/ _____ whispers (= in a low voice) 低声地
探究结论	(1) to (2) in; in

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I told them what I had seen in a whisper.

② He whispered to me that there was an eavesdropper (偷听者) outside the window.

(2) 完成句子

① The boy whispered the news in her ear yesterday.
昨天, 那个男孩悄悄对她说了这个消息。

② It was whispered that he intended to resign.
有人私下说他打算辞职。

2. conclude v. 结束, 终止

(教材原文) A punch line **concludes** a joke and is intended to make people laugh.

以妙语结束笑话, 目的是让人们笑。

一感 读句子感悟用法

We will **conclude** the concert **with** a firework display.

我们将以一场烟花表演结束这场音乐会。

I've **come to/arrived at/drawn/reached a conclusion** that he's not the right person for the job.
我断定他不适合做这项工作。

In conclusion, the interview was very successful.

总之, 这次访谈十分成功。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) conclude... _____ ... 以……结束…… (2) conclusion n. 结论, 结束 come to/arrive at/draw/reach a conclusion 得出结论 _____ conclusion (= to conclude) 最后, 总之 bring... to a conclusion 结束……
探究结论	(1) with (2) in

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① (2023·新高考I卷) Each chapter concludes with a collection of practices.

② But I can understand why one might come to that conclusion (conclude).

(2) 完成句子

① In conclusion/To conclude, I would like to say how much I have enjoyed myself today.

总之, 我想说我今天过得很开心。

② Finally, they came to/arrived at/reached/drew a conclusion after hours of bargaining.

经过几个小时的讨价还价,他们最终得出了结论。

3. not only... but also... 不但……而且……

(教材原文) While these same jokes might not be as funny to us now as they were then, their authors understood that humour could **not only** entertain **but also** throw new light on sensitive or emotive issues.

虽然这些相同的笑话现在对我们而言可能不如当时那么有趣,但是它们的作者明白,幽默不仅是一种娱乐的方式,而且能使人对敏感问题或有争议的问题产生新的认识。

[句式分析]本句是主从复合句,句中 While 引导让步状语从句,意为“虽然,尽管”;主句中并列连词 not only... but also... 连接两个并列谓语。

一感 读句子感悟用法

My mother is **not only** a good teacher **but also** a good cook.

我的妈妈不但是一位好老师而且是一个好厨师。

Not only did he refuse the gift, **but also** he severely criticized the sender.

他不但拒收了礼物,还严厉批评了送礼物的人。

Not only the students **but also** the teacher **was** deeply moved by the story.

不但学生们而且老师也被这个故事深深地打动了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) not only... but also... 中的 also 可与 but 分开或省略。 (2) 若连接两个句子,且 not only 置于句首时,not only 后面的句子要用 _____ 倒装,但 but also 后的句子仍用正常语序。 (3) 若连接两个主语,谓语动词的单复数形式遵循“就近一致”原则。
探究结论	(2) 部分

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I like not only apples but also bananas.

② Not only you but also she has (have) to attend the ceremony today.

③ Not only does the new teaching method improve the teaching quality but also it arouses the students' interest in study.

(2) 句型转换

By doing so, I can not only share good ideas with others but also learn to express myself clearly.

→ By doing so, not only can I share good ideas with others but also I can learn to express myself clearly. (改为倒装句)

写作探究

喜剧演员简介

一、写作指导

本单元的写作话题是写一位喜剧演员,属于写人的记叙文。写作时同学们可以从人物简介、代表作品、人物形象、表演风格和人物评价几个方面来写,特别要交代清楚该喜剧演员受人们欢迎的原因,即他/她的表演风格和方式。

二、典题示例

请根据提供的信息,写一篇 80 词左右的英语短文,介绍罗温·艾金森(憨豆先生)。

人物	罗温·艾金森(Rowan Atkinson),英国著名的喜剧演员,1955年1月6日出生于英格兰,毕业于牛津大学。
荧幕形象	他所扮演的憨豆先生风靡世界;他的荧幕形象有点憨,但是他通过这个角色告诉人们对生活要乐观。

续表

表演方式	通过给观众呈现丰富的肢体动作和变化多端的表情,英国式的幽默被表现得淋漓尽致。
评价	出色的演技为他赢得了许多奖项,他被誉为继查理·卓别林(Charlie Chaplin)之后的又一位喜剧大师。

三、审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	一般过去时和一般现在时
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 人物简介和表演风格 2. 人物评价

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇和表达

① a distinguished British comedian 一位著名的英国喜剧演员

② graduate from 毕业于……

③ make use of/take advantage of 利用

④ be optimistic about 对……乐观

⑤ a variety of/varieties of 各种各样的

⑥ present... to... 把……呈现给……

⑦ be honoured as 被誉为……

(二)完成句子

① Rowan Atkinson is a distinguished British comedian (一位著名的英国喜剧演员)。

② He is also known as (也作为……而出名) Mr Bean.

③ His on-screen persona is a bit silly, but he makes use of (利用) it to tell people to be optimistic about life (对生活乐观)。

④ Through a variety of rich body movements (各种各样的丰富的肢体动作) and varied expressions presented to the audience, the English humour can be expressed incisively and vividly (被表现得淋漓尽致)。

⑤ His excellent acting has won him many awards (为他赢得了很多奖项)。

⑥ He was honoured as (被誉为) another master of comedy after Charlie Chaplin.

(三)句式升级

①用非谓语动词合并(二)中的①②句

Rowan Atkinson, also known as Mr Bean, is a distinguished British comedian.

②用 and 合并(二)中的⑤⑥句

His excellent acting has won him many awards and he was honoured as another master of comedy after Charlie Chaplin.

(四)连句成篇

Rowan Atkinson, also known as Mr Bean, is a distinguished British comedian. He was born in England on January 6, 1955 and graduated from Oxford University. His on-screen persona is a bit silly, but he makes use of it to tell people to be optimistic about life. Through a variety of rich body movements and varied expressions presented to the audience, the English humour can be expressed incisively and vividly.

His excellent acting has won him many awards and he was honoured as another master of comedy after Charlie Chaplin.

五、学以致用

假定你是李华,你的英国笔友 Eric 正在学习中国相声,他想请你为他介绍一位相声演员。请根据提示信息给他回信,向他介绍著名相声演员马三立。

生卒日期	1914. 9. 25—2003. 2. 11
经历及贡献	1. 小时候因家境贫困,辍学学习相声; 2. 1930 年开始登台演出; 3. 一生创作了很多优秀的相声作品。
社会评价	独特的艺术风格推动了相声艺术的发展,是当代的幽默大师。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:相声 crosstalk

【参考范文】

Dear Eric,

I'm glad to hear that you're interested in Chinese crosstalk and I'm writing to introduce Ma Sanli, one of the most famous Chinese performing artists of crosstalk.

Ma Sanli was born on September 25, 1914 and died on February 11, 2003. At an early age, he dropped out of school to learn crosstalk because of the poverty of his family. It was in 1930 that he started to perform on stage. During his whole life, he created a large number of excellent works, many of which are still popular among people now. His unique style has a positive effect on the development of Chinese crosstalk and he is considered as a master of humour. You can appreciate his works on the Chinese artist website.

Wish you great progress in your learning of Chinese crosstalk.

Yours,
Li Hua

课后素养评价(五)

I. 单句语法填空

1. While crossing (cross) the road, you must be careful.
2. If you feel too out of shape, begin your exercise programme gently (gentle) and gradually.
3. Larry had concluded (conclusion) that he had no choice but to accept Paul's words as the truth.
4. There is an interaction (interact) between the lecturer and listeners after the lecture.
5. From the video, we can know the dog had been cruelly (cruel) treated.

II. 补全句子

1. 这个年轻人工作总是落后,所以我们老板当着我们的面批评了他,这让他陷入了尴尬。(fall behind, tell off, put... on the spot)

The young man always falls behind with his work, so our boss tells him off in front of us, which puts him on the spot.

2. 不仅学生们而且他们的老师都在欣赏这部影片。(not only... but also...)

Not only the students but also their teacher is enjoying the film.

3. 在路上,我们发现一个人拿着一张纸,上面写着“失去了工作。家人需要养活”。(spot)

On the way, we spotted a man holding a piece of paper that said, "Lost my job. Family to Feed."

4. 他低声对我说,这个作曲家将完成一首复杂的音乐。(whisper, composer, complicated, "be + to do"结构)

He whispered to me that the composer was to finish a complicated piece of music.

III. 语法填空

Who is smarter? A human being or artificial intelligence (AI)? The question **1. swept** (sweep) across the world a few years ago when a Google-developed programme called AlphaGo defeated the best player in the world. So, what comes next?

Some people are worried, saying that the rapid development of artificial intelligence could mean the end **2. of** the human race. So are we really about to live in the world **3. shown** (show) in the movies?

"Not quite," answered John Markoff of *The New York Times*, **4. who** is optimistic about the future. "We think that, for the human being, things like sight and balance, are natural **5. and** ordinary in our life. Also, we humans are better at making **6. adjustments** (adjust) to the surroundings. We have a long way to go before AI can **7. truly** (true) begin to be similar to the human brain, even though the technology can be great."

"Our fate (命运) is in our own **8. hands** (hand)," he added. "Since technology depends on the value of **9. its** (it) creators, we can use technology **10. to improve** (improve) the world."

IV. 写作

第一节 书面表达

“深入实施人才强国战略”是二十大报告的重要内容,而卓有成就的科技创新人才应该是我们崇拜的对象。假如你是李华,你的笔友 Nick 非常敬仰袁隆平院士,写信想请你介绍袁隆平。请你根据所给信息给 Nick 回信。

姓名:袁隆平

职业:中国农业科学家,“杂交水稻之父”

出生地:北京 出生日期:1930年9月7日

学历:1953年毕业于西南农学院(今西南大学 Southwest University)

外貌:有着像千百万中国农民一样瘦小但强壮的身体

兴趣:喜欢拉小提琴、游泳和阅读

成就:1974年,克服困难栽培出第一株杂交水稻

影响:他坚持实现目标的精神深深地影响着人们

注意:1. 80词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;

3. 信的开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:农业的 agricultural; 杂交水稻 hybrid rice
Dear Nick,

I am writing to introduce _____

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

My parents and I had been planning my brother's birthday party since the beginning of March. Johnny would be six years old in two days. My mum was going to bake her special chocolate cake with white icing. As I watched her, I wondered what I could do to make my brother's birthday special.

I knew my parents had already bought a present for me to give to Johnny, but I wanted to buy him something I had chosen myself and with the money I had saved. After giving it some thought, I wanted to buy him the paint-by-number kit (数字涂色小套装) I had seen at the store around the corner.

I decided to empty my coin jar and see how much money I had saved. However, I was disappointed to find there was much less than I had imagined. "Oh, no, I only have about three dollars," I muttered to myself. The set cost more than I had saved.

Suddenly a "great" idea occurred to me. I slid into my parents' bedroom where my dad kept loose change on top of the dresser. I stood on my tiptoes and saw some dimes, nickels and a few quarters. I carefully counted out what I needed to make up the difference. I was sure Dad wouldn't mind just this once, I thought.

However, I was soon overcome by guilt. Even though there was no one else in the bedroom, I felt like I was being watched. Mum was always telling us about the importance of honesty. Maybe my plan wasn't such a great idea after all, I thought. I jingled the change around in my pocket while wondering what to do.

I grabbed my jacket from the closet and headed towards the door. "Where are you going, honey?" Mum asked. "Oh, just up to the corner store," I replied. "Well, don't stay out too long, and Daddy will be home soon." "Okay, Mum." I ran out of our house.

Once I got to the store, I took the paint-by-number kit from the shelf.

"Can I help you, young lady?" the salesclerk asked.

"No. I'm just looking, thank you," I said.

"That's a really nice paint kit. We sell a lot of them and, as you can see, that's the last one," she said.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

I nodded my head in agreement with my mind racing. _____

I would just have to wait until I saved the extra money I needed. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear Nick,

I am writing to introduce Yuan Longping, a famous Chinese agricultural scientist, to you.

Acknowledged as the Father of Hybrid Rice, Yuan Longping, who was born in Beijing on September 7, 1930, had a slim but strong body like millions of Chinese farmers. He graduated from Southwest University in 1953. In 1974, he overcame a number of difficulties and developed the first hybrid rice. In his spare time, he was fond of playing the violin, swimming and reading.

Although he had passed away, his spirit of insisting on achieving objectives has a deep effect on people.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

I nodded my head in agreement with my mind racing. But finally, I decided to place the paint-by-number kit back on the shelf and headed home. Luckily, once I got home, Mum was busy talking on the phone and Dad wasn't back home yet, so I was able to slip past the kitchen without being noticed. I went to my parents' room to return the coins I had taken. I arranged them into a neat stack—just like they were before—and sighed with relief, knowing I had done the right thing.

I would just have to wait until I saved the extra money I needed. The salesclerk had even agreed that she would hold the paint set behind the counter for me until I had enough money to pay for it. I figured I could earn it by doing odd jobs around the house. Then I wasn't able to buy the paint kit until two weeks later, but it seemed extra special when I was finally able to lay my money on the counter. I smiled as I raced home knowing the paint kit would be the perfect present for Johnny.

读后续写技能养成 || 心理描写——喜悦与兴奋

「技能概述」

1. 心理描写——喜悦与兴奋

是指对人的喜悦、兴奋等心理的描写,如开心、高兴、激动、愉快、狂喜、雀跃、幸福、兴高采烈……

2. 续写技巧

在描写时,同学们可以根据事件发生的具体场景,抓住眉、眼、脸、四肢等表现出的神态特点进行描写,也可以使用一些表示动作的词汇辅助描写喜悦与兴奋的心理。

「范例体悟」

Grandpa smiled and continued with greater enthusiasm. "Join in, Roger!" Grandpa shouted to Roger excitedly and his cheerful voice was even louder than the drumrolls. Roger grinned from ear to ear as he picked up his drum sticks. With the drums beating merrily, their joyful music shook the whole house like before, not only the whole house, but also the hearts of the grandfather and the grandson.

找出文中有关喜悦与兴奋的心理描写。

with greater enthusiasm

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. joy *n.* 高兴,愉快
2. joyful *adj.* 高兴的;令人愉快的
3. overjoyed *adj.* 欣喜若狂
4. merry *adj.* 愉快的
5. delight *n.* 高兴 *v.* 使高兴
6. excitement *n.* 兴奋
7. pleased *adj.* 高兴的,满意的
8. amused *adj.* 逗乐的
9. thrilled *adj.* 非常兴奋
10. light up 露出喜色
11. jump for joy 高兴得跳起来
12. give a jump in the air 高兴地蹦跳
13. brighten sb.'s heart 使某人心情愉快
14. be wild with joy/delight/happiness 欣喜若狂
15. in a good mood 心情好
16. in high/cheerful spirits 兴高采烈
17. to one's delight/joy 让某人开心的是
18. on top of the world 高兴坏了
19. be over the moon 欣喜若狂

II. 佳句背诵

1. I could hardly contain my joy/happiness/delight and dance into the house.

我抑制不住内心的喜悦,蹦蹦跳跳地进了家门。

2. At the sight of such a lovely rabbit, I was wild with delight/joy and followed its track.
一看到如此可爱的兔子,我欣喜若狂,跟着追了过去。
3. Full of happiness/Overjoyed, he jumped up and ran happily around the yard.
他高兴极了,跳起来绕着院子快乐地跑。
4. Delighted and thrilled, I gave a jump in the air and then skipped into the supermarket along with my smiling mother.
又高兴又激动,我开心地跳了一下,然后蹦蹦跳跳地和满是笑意的妈妈进了超市。
5. Her hands were trembling with excitement as she opened the box.
当她打开盒子时,她的手激动得发抖。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. A smile lit up his face and his eyes were shining with great joy.
他的脸上露出笑容,双眸闪烁着喜悦的光芒。
2. I nodded cheerfully, with a big/broad/bright smile appearing on/spreading across/crossing my face.
我开心地地点头,脸上露出灿烂的笑容。
3. Hearing her daughter's success, she could not hold back tears of joy.
听到女儿成功了,她禁不住流下了喜悦的泪水。
4. She was in cheerful spirits and grinned from ear to ear.
她兴高采烈,笑得合不拢嘴。

II. 用心理描写——喜悦与兴奋的方法完成语段

She stood by the window, **1. joyfully and patiently** (高兴又耐心地) watching. Golden sunlight danced in her long hair and the **2. children's laughter floated in the air** (孩子们的笑声在空中飘荡). She stared at the end of the road, hoping her close friend would come earlier. It seemed as if she had been standing there for a century. Suddenly **3. a wave of happiness and excitement seized/took hold of/swept over/came over her** (一阵幸福和兴奋向她袭来) when she caught sight of a familiar figure. Her heart **4. leaped with joy** (高兴地跳着), and **5. a shining smile lit up her face** (灿烂的笑容照亮了她的脸庞). She ran to her friend and threw herself into her friend's arms. **6. Tears of joy welled up in their eyes** (他们喜极而泣) as they hugged tightly together.

第一单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Fantastic Fall Festivals You Won't Want to Miss

Seymour Apple Festival

Admission to the Seymour Apple Festival is free and so is the entertainment! More than 15,000 people from all over the region come out to take part in the activities, ranging from drawings, vendor booths, food, apple contests, bike-decorating contests and more.

Marionville Apple Festival

The popular Marionville Apple Festival is home to countless activities and events. The carnival, pony rides and games will keep the kids busy, while adults will enjoy watching the pie-eating contest and browsing dozens of craft vendor booths.

Humansville Fall Festival

The Humansville Fall Festival may be hosted by a small town, but that doesn't mean it's lacking big fun. Perfect for all ages, this fall festival is celebrating its 70th year and will provide three full days of fun. This year's festival will feature live music from fantastic local musicians, which will definitely make it different from the ones in other years. You'll also find fun carnival rides, talented artisans selling their goods and an amazing parade to wrap up the event on Saturday.

Southside Fall Festival

The Southside Fall Festival is perfect for family celebrations, with an alcohol-free environment and free admission. Enjoy a colourful parade and float contest, delicious food vendors, live music, karaoke and more.

Fall into Arts Festival

Make sure you bring the kids along for this festival that celebrates all things creative. The Fall

into Arts Festival features a host of kid-friendly activities like a Lego build, sand art, bubble stations, chalk the sidewalk, a jump house and more. Parents will have plenty to do as well, with an excellent variety of artists, festival food, a mini film festival and much more.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了五个秋季的节日。

1. Which festivals are free of charge?

- A. Southside Fall Festival and Fall into Arts Festival.
- B. Seymour Apple Festival and Southside Fall Festival.
- C. Humansville Fall Festival and Fall into Arts Festival.
- D. Seymour Apple Festival and Marionville Apple Festival.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Seymour Apple Festival** 部分中的第一句“Admission to the Seymour Apple Festival is free and so is the entertainment!”可知,西摩苹果节的门票是免费的,娱乐也是免费的!另外,根据 **Southside Fall Festival** 部分中的第一句“The Southside Fall Festival is perfect for family celebrations, with an alcohol-free environment and free admission.”可知,该节日也是免费入场。故选 B。

2. What makes Humansville Fall Festival special this year?

- A. Fun activities on Saturday.
- B. The duration of the festival.
- C. The area of the hosting town.
- D. Musicians' live performance.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Humansville Fall Festival** 部分中的第三句“This year's festival will feature live music from fantastic local musicians, which will definitely make it different from the ones in other years.”可知,今年的音乐节将以当地优秀音

乐家的现场表演为特色,使它有别于往年。故选D。

3. Fall into Arts Festival is specially welcomed by _____.

- A. movie lovers
- B. modern artists
- C. visitors of all ages
- D. families with kids

D 细节理解题。根据 **Fall into Arts Festival** 部分中的内容可知,本节日既有许多孩子喜爱的活动,也有为父母准备的活动,故特别受有孩子的家庭的欢迎。故选D。

B

What's the difference between shame and guilt? These are emotions that we often mix up, but it turns out they're quite different. When people feel shame, they feel bad about themselves; "I'm a bad person for having done this." When people feel guilty, they feel bad not about themselves, but about a specific behaviour: "I did a bad thing." And it's a subtle distinction, but it turns out that it leads to very different motivations.

When people feel shame about "Who I am because I did a bad thing, I'm a horrible person", there's a sense of shrinking and being small, a sense of worthlessness and powerlessness. And when people feel shame, they want to hide. They want to sink into the floor and disappear. They minimise. They often blame other people. But what they don't do, typically, is try to make things better.

When people feel guilty about a specific behaviour—"I feel bad that I did that"—they're focused on the behaviour and the effects on other people, and that seems to push people in a much more constructive direction. People who feel guilty about a behaviour without feeling shame about themselves are more likely to apologise, in some way, and try to repair the harm that was done.

I think that just knowing the difference between the two is not enough, if you can identify when you feel shame and sort of do some double-checking, you know, "Is it really fair for me to feel like a bad person because I lost my temper with my kids

today? Does that mean I'm a horrible parent? Or am I generally a good parent, but this was a bad day, and I did a bad thing and let me address that, reconnect with my child and think about ways to avoid that going forward," instead of falling into shame, shame, shame. I think shame is such a selfish emotion. It's all about me. It's not about the person that I hurt. It's, "Me, me, me, me, I'm a horrible person," which takes the focus off of the person you've harmed.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。作者结合自己的经历讨论了羞愧和内疚这两种情绪的区别。

4. What are shame and guilt thought of?

- A. They are easy to figure out.
- B. They lead to different behaviour.
- C. They are called bad emotions.
- D. They are seen confusing things.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "And it's a subtle distinction, but it turns out that it leads to very different motivations.", 并结合第二、三段对感到羞愧和内疚的人的行为对比可知,羞愧和内疚导致了不同的行为。故选B。

5. What will people do when they feel shame?

- A. They dare to face anything.
- B. They refuse to make things better.
- C. They feel bad about specific behaviour.
- D. They tend to blame themselves.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 "And when people feel shame, they want to hide. They want to sink into the floor and disappear. They minimise. They often blame other people. But what they don't do, typically, is try to make things better." 可知,当人们感到羞愧时,他们拒绝让事情变得更好。故选B。

6. What does the third paragraph mainly talk about?

- A. Results of feeling guilty.
- B. Ways of feeling guilty.
- C. Causes of feeling guilty.
- D. Reflections of feeling guilty.

A 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容,特别是 "When people feel guilty about a specific behaviour—"I feel bad that I did that"—they're focused on the behaviour and the effects on other

people, and that seems to push people in a much more constructive direction.”可知,该段主要讲的是感到内疚的结果。故选 A。

7. What is the author's attitude to shame?

- A. Favourable. B. Tolerant.
C. Against. D. Unclear.

C 观点态度题。根据最后一段中的“I think shame is such a selfish emotion. It's all about me. It's not about the person that I hurt.”可知,作者对羞愧持反对态度。故选 C。

C

Wax (蜡) paper can't be recycled with other paper items because the wax coating interferes with the recycling process. However, there are still plenty of different options to dispose of your wax paper in an environmentally friendly way.

Wax paper is parchment paper that's been coated with a thin layer of wax on each side. This makes it resistant to wetness and provides a non-stick surface. The majority of wax paper is coated in a food-safe wax, which is made using vegetable oil. Some brands of wax paper also use soybean oil.

The coating in wax paper is water-resistant, and paper needs to be torn with water as one of the first steps in recycling. This makes it unsuitable to be processed alongside most other paper waste. It's also often covered with additional oils from foods, which are not accepted by recycling facilities.

While it can't be recycled, the good news is that some wax paper can be composted at home. If you use wax paper made with vegetable or soybean oil, it can be added in small quantities to your compost. The wax is quite hard for the microbes (微生物) in compost to break down, so rip your wax paper into small pieces and add it to your compost a little at a time. Wax paper should biodegrade at around the same rate as leaf mulch. If you do use wax paper, the best sort to buy is one with unbleached, natural paper and a wax coating made using vegetable or soybean oil.

Reusing an item as many times as possible is always a good, environmentally friendly option, especially if it can't be recycled afterward. Rather

than throw away your wax paper after one use, you can sometimes use it multiple times to extend its useful life.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了什么是蜡纸,蜡纸不能和其他纸质物品一起回收的原因以及如何重复使用蜡纸。

8. What does the author intend to show in Paragraph 2?

- A. What exactly wax paper is.
B. How functional wax paper is.
C. Why wax paper can't be recycled.
D. How we can dispose of wax paper.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“Wax paper is parchment paper that's been coated with a thin layer of wax on each side. This makes it resistant to wetness and provides a non-stick surface.”可知,作者在第二段主要解释了什么是蜡纸。故选 A。

9. What does the underlined word “rip” probably mean in the fourth paragraph?

- A. Make. B. Press.
C. Shake. D. Tear.

D 词义猜测题。根据画线词前的“The wax is quite hard for the microbes (微生物) in compost to break down”可知,蜡很硬,使得堆肥中的微生物不容易分解它,因此把蜡纸撕成碎片,每次少放一点。由此推知,画线词 rip 意为“撕碎”。故选 D。

10. What may be talked about in the following paragraph?

- A. Alternatives to wax paper.
B. Ideas for reusing wax paper.
C. Items wrapped with wax paper.
D. Ways to choose wax paper.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Rather than throw away your wax paper after one use, you can sometimes use it multiple times to extend its useful life.”可知,文章接下来的段落可能会讲一些重复使用蜡纸的想法。故选 B。

11. What is probably the best title for the text?

- A. Deal with Wax Paper in Environmentally Friendly Ways
B. The Importance of Wax Paper's Being Recycled
C. Is Wax Paper Environmentally Friendly?
D. What Can Be Used Instead of Wax Paper?

A 标题归纳题。通读全文可知,文章的主要内容是用环保的方式来处理蜡纸。故选 A。

D

Think back to when you were in a classroom, and the teacher set a difficult problem. Which of the two following answers is closer to the way you reacted?

A: Oh no, this is too hard for me. I'm not even going to seriously try.

B: Ah, this is quite difficult but I like to push myself. Even if I don't get the answer right, maybe I'll learn something in the attempt.

The psychologist Carol Dweck of Stanford University gave a group of children problems that were slightly too hard. One group reacted positively, said they loved challenge and understood that their abilities could be developed. She says they had a "growth mindset". But another group felt that their intelligence was being judged and they had failed. They had a "fixed mindset" and were unable to imagine improving.

Professor Dweck believes that, for years, children have been praised for their intelligence or talent, but this makes them sensitive to failure. They want to please by getting high grades, without interest in learning. The solution is to praise the process that children are engaged in: making an effort, using learning methods and improving. This way they will become better and achieve more.

Psychologists have been testing these theories. Students were taught that if they left their comfort zone and learned something new and difficult, they will be more intelligent. These students made faster progress than a control group. In another study, unsuccessful school children were using growth mindset techniques for a year. The results were astonishing. They came top in a regional test, beating children from much more advanced background. These children had previously felt that making an effort was a sign of being stupid, but they came to see it as the key to learning.

So, back to our original question. If you answered B, well done—you already have a growth mindset. If A, don't worry; everyone is capable of becoming better with a little effort and self-awareness.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了成长型思维模式与固定型思维模式在学习过程中的表现、背后的心理因素以及如何培养学生养成成长型思维模式。心理学家通过实验的方法也确定通过成长型思维模式训练,学生的进步会很明显。

12. What is the purpose of the author mentioning the two answers at the beginning?

- A. To give an example.
- B. To teach how to react.
- C. To draw a conclusion.
- D. To introduce the topic.

D 推理判断题。根据文章结构可知,文章开头提到两种回答方式是让读者能够直观地感受什么是成长型思维模式,什么是固定型思维模式。因此其目的是介绍本文话题。故选 D。

13. Which aspect should be praised according to Professor Dweck?

- A. Talent.
- B. High grades.
- C. Being hard-working.
- D. Achievement.

C 细节理解题。根据倒数第三段第三句可知,解决同学们害怕失败的问题的方法是表扬孩子参与的过程,例如很努力、使用了学习到的方法和有进步等。也就是说应该表扬孩子努力的过程。故选 C。

14. What makes the students with fixed mindset fail?

- A. Lacking imagination.
- B. Negative attitudes.
- C. Being poor judgement.
- D. Low intelligence.

B 推理判断题。根据倒数第四段最后两句可知,固定型思维的人认为他们的智力正在被考验并且他们已经失败了,他们无法想象进步。并且根据倒数第二段中的研究可知,当学业不好的学生经过一年成长型思维的培训,结果是惊人的,也就是说不是学生的能力不行,而是他们的消极的思维方式使得他们的学习成绩不好。故选 B。

15. What does the underlined word "it" in the last but one paragraph refer to?

- A. Making an effort.
- B. The regional test.
- C. The background.
- D. The comfort zone.

A 代词指代题。but 前后是两个并列的分句,前一分句意为“这些小孩之前认为努力是傻的标志”,后一分句中的“they came to see”说明的是后来的情况,后来他们把努力看作是学习的关

键。所以前后两个分句中宾语一致, it 指代 making an effort。故选 A。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

How would you feel if a colleague suggested you take a comedy class to improve your sense of humour? I felt stressed. 16

Yet according to Jennifer Aaker and Naomi Bagdonas, humour is not something you are born with or without. 17 What's more, finding our funny sides makes us appear more competent and confident, strengthens relationships, unlocks creativity and makes us more likable. It helps in any life situation. 18

I turned to Aaker and Bagdonas and they agreed to teach me how to find my funny bones. In our first call, we discuss the common misconceptions that stop many of us in our comedy tracks. The first, Aaker says, is the belief that humour has no place in certain situations, especially at work. 19 But 98% of the top executives say they prefer employees with a sense of humour and 84% of bosses believe those employees do better work.

They are so convinced of the power of humour that they also advocate its ability to help people avoid difficult situations. 20 Research shows that people who watch a funny video before trying to solve a puzzle are twice as likely to be successful and when we do make mistakes, learning to laugh at them can have a positive impact on our psychology. It takes off the pressure and if you show colleagues that you aren't afraid to laugh at your own mistakes, they'll feel safer owning up to theirs.

- A. Rather, it can be developed gradually.
B. We worry about not being taken seriously.
C. Humour has been proved to increase creativity.
D. Some people just aren't funny and I'm one of them.
E. This explains why people eagerly sign up for the humour course.
F. Every joke follows the fundamental structure of setup and punch line.
G. If you feel uncomfortable making the jokes, leave them to someone else.

答案:16~20 DAEB C

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

89-year-old Gloria Porter was lying in hospital. She couldn't leave her ward. So to 21 boredom, she

would often stare outside her window to watch construction workers building the new front entrance to the hospital. She wasn't expecting one of the 22 to wave to her. She couldn't help but wave back at the kind 23. This was only the start of a special 24 between the two.

Jeff Reick knew Porter was 25, so he decided to send a kind 26 to her by finding some chalk and writing "Get Well" on one of the beams (梁) facing her 27. "I just thought that was 28," Porter said. "So I should do something to 29 that."

When Porter saw construction workers working high above the ground one cold, windy day, she grew 30. She wrote "Stay Safe" on a piece of paper, which she then 31 on the window for the workers to see. "When I saw 'Stay Safe' on a piece of paper, I 32 and said to my coworkers, 'Did you see that?'" Reick said.

The hospital staff took photos of that and 33 them on social media. The simple acts of kindness 34 and many people were employed in similar acts, including one woman who delivered 35 pizza to the construction workers.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了一位老人和一位建筑工人通过简单的文字互相关怀的温暖故事,而两人互相关爱的故事最终也感染了其他人。作者借此告诉我们,人与人之间的温情可以传递下去,最终会影响我们的社会。

21. A. make for B. put off
C. figure out D. escape from
D 她常常盯着窗外,看建筑工人在修建医院的新前门的目的就是要打发无聊的时间。
22. A. workers B. nurses
C. doctors D. patients
A 根据上文中的"construction workers"可知,向她挥手的是其中的一个工人(workers)。
23. A. job B. inspiration
C. gesture D. favour
C 根据前文中的"wave to her"可知,这是一种手势(gesture)。
24. A. business B. connection
C. difference D. trouble
B 根据下文中的"writing 'Get Well'" "wrote 'Stay Safe'"可知,之后他们又通过文字进行了联系(connection)。

25. A. lonely B. upset
C. ill D. poor
C 根据上文中的“89-year-old Gloria Porter was lying in hospital.”可知,89岁的Gloria Porter躺在医院里,所以Jeff Reick知道Porter生病了(ill)。
26. A. letter B. message
C. note D. warning
B Jeff Reick在面向窗户的一根横梁上写了“(早日)康复”以此想向她传达慰问的信息(message)。
27. A. window B. entrance
C. wall D. door
A 根据下文中的“on the window”可知,Jeff Reick是在Porter病房窗户(window)的对面的一根横梁上写了“康复”这两个词的。
28. A. impolite B. necessary
C. familiar D. precious
D Jeff Reick能够主动向Porter表达善意,在Porter看来就是非常宝贵的(precious)。
29. A. record B. return
C. recover D. remember
B 根据下文内容可知,她在一张纸上写下“注意安全”,并把这张纸贴在窗户上给工人们看。这就是一种回报(return)。
30. A. puzzled B. worried
C. thrilled D. annoyed
B 高空作业是很危险的,所以Porter很担忧(worried)工人们的安全。
31. A. knocked B. installed
C. placed D. drew
C 把纸贴(placed)在窗户上工人们才能看得见,看得清楚。
32. A. came down B. broke down
C. showed up D. turned around
D 根据后文中的“said to my coworkers”可知,Jeff Reick是转身(turned around)对工友说的。
33. A. shared B. found
C. mentioned D. deleted
A 根据后文中的“on social media”可知,照片被分享(shared)到了社交媒体上。
34. A. happened B. succeeded
C. spread D. formed
C 简单的善举流传开来(spread),才会有更多的人知道,于是很多人也做了相似的善举。
35. A. expensive B. free
C. ordinary D. cheap

B 既然是善举,那么这位女士送的一定是免费的(free)比萨饼。

IV. 语法填空(共10小题;每小题1.5分,满分15分)

Whoever has ever been to a Chinese restaurant may have experienced **36. a** unique set of utensils (餐具). Instead of a fork, you may have been handed two long **37. sticks** (stick). What are we talking about? Chopsticks, of course! Experts believe they originated in China. Chopsticks **38. have been** (be) around for over 5,000 years. For example, a pair of bronze chopsticks from 1200 BC has been found in China. Experts believe the earliest chopsticks were likely used to stir a fire or serve food during **39. cooking** (cook).

Chopsticks you get in a Chinese restaurant are **40. usually** (usual) made of wood. However, they are also commonly made of bamboo. You can also find chopsticks **41. made** (make) out of metal and bone. In China, chopsticks are called *kuaizi*, **42. which** is a word made up of characters meaning bamboo and quick. The English word “chopsticks” may come **43. from** a common phrase that means “quickly chop”.

Chopsticks **44. are meant** (mean) to be useful but difficult to handle. They are held by the main hand and used to pick up food. It takes a bit of practice **45. to feel** (feel) comfortable when you use chopsticks to eat. With a little work, you'll be eating with chopsticks in no time.

V. 写作(共两节,满分40分)

第一节 书面表达(满分15分)

假如你是李华,你的英国朋友Jack正在参与策划校园“中国文化节”,故来信请你推荐一些活动项目。现请你给他回复一封邮件,内容包括:

1. 活动项目名称;
2. 推荐理由;
3. 预祝活动成功。

注意:1. 80词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:中国文化节 Chinese Culture Festival; 非物质文化遗产 intangible cultural heritage

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jack, a clerk at the local bank, was wandering alone in the street. It was a cold, silent winter night. His mind was on his wife Linda, who had been in a car accident two months ago and was now lying in hospital, waiting for more money for her operation. Jack had sold everything he had, and he had tried his best to borrow money from all the people and banks he could. But the real world is cruel.

A lot of money was still needed. To Jack, it would mean a great deal of suffering to see his wife die without any help. "I have only one choice left," Jack said to himself. Then he went to the bank, his workplace, again. For several days, he observed the bank and planned a theft.

The next day, he went to work as usual. Everything seemed normal; he joked with his workmates and helped his clients as he always did. But no one noticed that he had brought a bigger suitcase to work, instead of the small one he always carried. At 5:00 p. m., the bank closed, and the clerks and the guards had all gone home. However, at that moment, Jack was in the bathroom, and the guards didn't notice him, of course. When the noises coming from the street were replaced by silence and everything turned dark, Jack came out from the bathroom. He first cut the lines of the alarms and monitors with tools from his new suitcase.

He was all too familiar with the equipment since he had been working there for 8 years and had been studying the security system for the past 30 days. Using a special key and some other tools, he then easily opened the doors of the safes. The bank's security system wasn't very good, which allowed Jack to take a lot of money. Several minutes later, Jack left the bank with a heavy bag filled with money.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

After Jack had been gone from the bank for a while, the alarms began to ring. _____

But the most unlucky man was the manager of the bank, an old man. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear Jack,

Knowing that you are a member of designers of your school's Chinese Culture Festival, I am more than glad to give you some tips on the activities.

First, it will be very attractive to prepare some special dishes of China, so your friends will know better about the culture of Chinese food. Besides, students and teachers dressed in their traditional costumes may also be a wonderful sight. What's the most important is that you'd better spare some areas for our intangible cultural heritage, such as paper-cutting, flying kites, which must be amazing to all people present.

Hope everything goes well!

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

After Jack had been gone from the bank for a while, the alarms began to ring. The police arrived at the bank very quickly, only to find no one there. The next day was a really special day for the town, which was filled with newspaper and TV reporters covering the strange theft. The clerks at the bank were busy discussing the case, of course, including Jack. The police could only promise to catch the thieves as soon as possible, even though no clues had been found yet.

But the most unlucky man was the manager of the bank, an old man. He seemed to be the only person to blame and was removed from his position. At last, with enough money for her operation, Jack's wife was saved. However, Jack felt guilty about the manager of the bank. He could not forget what he had done to the old man. His guilt deepened as time went by. Finally, he turned himself in to the police and accepted his punishment.

Unit 2

Onwards and upwards

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 发现并归纳促使优秀人物走向成功的共同原因，感悟他们在挫折面前永不言弃的精神；
3. 了解诗歌的大意和主题，并就诗歌的主题和内容谈谈自己的看法，初步赏析诗歌；
4. 略读课文，获取文章的主要信息，总结并叙述三位作家的代表作以及他们在投稿过程中遭遇的挫折。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇和表达

1. debt *n.* 债务；欠款
2. pace *n.* 速度；进度
3. inform *v.* 通知；告知
4. rarely *adv.* 很少；难得
5. rejection *n.* 拒绝；否决
6. guarantee *v.* 保证；确保
7. delighted *adj.* 愉快的，高兴的
8. nevertheless *adv.* 然而，不过
9. criticism *n.* 批评；指责
10. classic *n.* 名著；经典作品
11. outcome *n.* 结果，后果
12. a total of 总共，一共
13. play a part 扮演角色，在……中起作用
14. regret to do 遗憾地做……
15. take for example 以……为例

16. have... in common 有……共同之处

17. turn... down 减少；关小，调低；拒绝

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. persevere *v.* 锲而不舍，坚持不懈
2. endurance *n.* (忍)耐力
3. dread *v.* 畏惧，惧怕
4. overnight *adv.* 突然，一下子
5. manuscript *n.* 手稿，底稿
6. rye *n.* 黑麦
7. best-seller *n.* 畅销书；畅销产品
8. Victorian *adj.* 英国维多利亚(女王)时代的
9. laureate *n.* 重要奖项获得者
10. along the lines of 类似这样；在……方向上
11. within the pages of 在……页内
12. stick... on 把……贴在……上
13. turn... inside out 把……翻过来
14. stick out 伸出
15. all too often 时常；经常

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1	Many successful writers have been 1. <u>rejected</u> .	Everyone knows that success 2. <u>rarely</u> happens overnight, but perhaps not many know that a lot of highly successful writers have previously faced 3. <u>rejection</u> .

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 2—Para. 4	Examples of 4. successful writers who once received rejections.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • J. K. Rowling is famous for <i>Harry Potter</i>, which is a great success. When received her first rejection letter, she 5. stuck it on her kitchen wall. • J. D. Salinger once received many rejections and 6. criticism, but he refused to give up. • Three sisters from Victorian England dreamt of seeing their words in 7. print. Even when the book sold only 8. two copies, the sisters still didn't give up.
Para. 5	The key to success.	While a lot of hard work and a touch of 9. luck play a part in success, 10. perseverance is the key.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Why does the author begin the passage with the sentence “We regret to inform you...”?
A. To introduce a politician's speech.
B. To tell us how to respond to a writer.
C. To introduce the topic for discussion.
D. To attract readers.
- Why does every writer feel cold when he or she reads the publisher's last sentence?
A. They put a lot of effort into their work.
B. They have no time to play.
C. Their letter was returned.
D. They want to succeed overnight.
- Why did J. K. Rowling think she had something in common with her favourite writers?
A. Because they were poor.
B. Because they had been rejected.
C. Because they received a total of twelve rejections.
D. Because they received comments from publishers.
- What's the dream of three sisters from Victorian England?
A. Becoming men.
B. Becoming publishers.
C. Seeing their books published.
D. Writing a book of poems.
- Which word can be used to describe J. K. Rowling and J. D. Salinger?
A. Generous. B. Determined.
C. Cautious. D. Serious.

答案: 1~5 CABCB

II. 课文语法填空

“We regret to inform you...” These are the words that every writer dreads receiving. Everyone knows that success rarely **1. happens** (happen) overnight, but perhaps not many know that a lot of

highly successful writers have **2. previously** (previous) faced rejection.

J. K. Rowling had spent years **3. surviving** (survive) on little money, spending all her time writing. Nevertheless, she persevered. **4. As** we know, *Harry Potter* became a global success.

J. D. Salinger struggled to get his works **5. published** (publish). He faced **6. criticism** (criticise) along with rejection. Despite rejections from several publishers, J. D. Salinger refused to give up. Even when serving in **7. the** US Army during the Second World War, he carried six chapters of *The Catcher in the Rye* with him and worked **8. on** the novel throughout his war service.

Three sisters from Victorian England dreamt of seeing their words in print. This, however, was a time when women were not encouraged **9. to become** (become) writers. Even when the book sold only two copies, the sisters still didn't give up. Today Charlotte Brontë's *Jane Eyre*, Emily Brontë's *Wuthering Heights* and Anne Brontë's *Agnes Grey* **10. are regarded** (regard) as classics of world literature.

While a lot of hard work and a touch of luck play a part in success, perseverance is the key.

III. 阅读升华

1. What is the key to success according to the passage?

Perseverance is the key to success.

2. Can you write a suitable title for the passage? And give your reasons.

Never Give Up Your Dreams; Having a dream is the possibility of success. Never give up and keep up, and we will succeed some day. (回答合理即可)

课后素养评价(六)

I. 阅读理解

When Mexican scientist of the evolution of animal behaviour, Laura Cuaya, moved to Hungary for her postdoctoral studies in Budapest, she brought her pet dog, Kun-kun, along for the ride. Cuaya couldn't help noticing how locals warmed to dogs. This prompted her naturally curious scientific mind to start asking questions. "Here people are talking all the time to Kun-kun, but I always wonder if Kun-kun can recognise that people in Budapest speak Hungarian, not Spanish?" So she set out to find an answer through a scientific study.

Cuaya and her colleagues decided to use brain images from MRI scanning to shed light on her hunch. They worked with dogs of various ages that had, until the experiment, only heard their owners speak just one of the two languages, Spanish or Hungarian. Not surprisingly, getting the dogs to happily take part in the experiment took some creative coaxing and animal training! The researchers first needed to teach Kun-kun and her 17 fellow participating dogs including a labradoodle, a golden retriever and Australian shepherds, to lie still in a brain scanner. Their pet parents were always present, and they could leave the scanner at any point.

The research team played children's book classic *The Little Prince* in both Spanish and Hungarian while scanning the dogs' brains with an MRI machine. They were looking for evidence that their brains reacted differently to a familiar and unfamiliar language. The researchers also played scrambled versions of the story to find out if dogs could distinguish between speech and non-speech.

The images reveal that dogs' brains show different patterns of activity for an unfamiliar language than for a familiar one—the first time anyone has proved, researchers say, that a non-human brain can distinguish between two languages. This means that

the sounds and rhythms of a familiar language are accessible to non-humans.

Interestingly, the team also found that the brains of older dogs were more skilled at detecting speech "suggesting a role for the amount of language exposure". They suggest that dogs have refined their ability to distinguish between human languages over the long process of domestication.

【语篇解读】墨西哥科学家 Laura Cuaya 经过研究发现,狗可以区分不同的语言。文章介绍了该研究的开展过程以及研究的发现。

1. What is Paragraph 1 mainly about?

- A. The background of the study.
- B. The significance of the study.
- C. The concern of the researcher.
- D. The introduction to the researcher.

A 段落大意题。根据第一段的内容可知,第一段主要讲的是研究开展的背景。故选 A。

2. What did Cuaya consider when choosing dogs for study?

- A. Age limits.
- B. Brain patterns.
- C. Language exposure.
- D. Owners' commands.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 "They worked with dogs of various ages that had, until the experiment, only heard their owners speak just one of the two languages, Spanish or Hungarian." 可知,Cuaya 在选择研究的狗时考虑了语言接触情况。故选 C。

3. The results of the study are _____.

- A. practical B. contradictory
- C. compromising D. groundbreaking

D 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的 "The images reveal that dogs' brains show different patterns of activity for an unfamiliar language than for a familiar one—the first time anyone has proved, researchers say, that a non-human brain can distinguish between two languages." 可推知,

研究结果具有突破性。故选 D。

4. Which of the following can be the best title?

- A. Dogs Can Tell Foreign Languages
- B. Dogs' Brains Have Different Patterns
- C. Old Dogs Know More about Human Speech
- D. Dogs Can Differ Speech from Non-Speech

A 标题归纳题。根据倒数第二段的内容,并结合文章主要说明了墨西哥科学家 Laura Cuaya 经过研究发现狗可以区分不同的语言,介绍了研究开展的过程以及研究的发现可知,A 选项最适合作为文章标题。故选 A。

II. 七选五

You don't need to be a world-class mountaineer to stand out in a job interview. Here's my advice on how to nail the most common interview question.

Most people are so eager to show off what they've been involved in. Don't worry, and there will be time for that. The interviewer has reviewed your resume and will ask you plenty about your expertise. "Tell me about yourself" is a question you're certain to be asked at any job interview.

1 However, sharing something that shows who you really are beyond a piece of paper is a good idea. It will allow the interviewer to know something about your life outside of work.

Everyone has something interesting to share about themselves. I've heard people talk about everything from being a world-class sushi chef to an ice carver. 2 For example, you participate in competitive sports, you're an accomplished (技艺高超的) pianist and you're writing your first detective novel. If the information showcases a unique aspect of yourself, and especially if you can link it to what you can bring to your next job, then go for it.

Another way to think about the question is: "What makes you get up every morning?" The person also wants to know what your sense of passion and purpose is. That volunteer work on a farm cooperative in South America, for example, shows you have a global perspective. 3 It doesn't matter how big or small the accomplishment is, as long as it shows you're struggling to improve

yourself. When people are motivated by contributing to something bigger than themselves, they get more satisfaction.

4 Relax, be yourself and tell the truth. Don't approach the interview like you're trying out for Broadway. It's more than obvious when someone is trying to memorise their lines and "play the part". Also, if you overstate what you've done or fully invent a story about yourself, you'll be exposed. 5

- A. Take a risk to get personal.
- B. Showing honesty is one of the most important things.
- C. Running your first 10 kilometres shows you like a challenge.
- D. And then everything you say about yourself will be questioned.
- E. It's also important to tell it in a way that makes you memorable.
- F. Too many people respond to it by giving a recital of their resume.
- G. "Tell me about yourself" is an invitation for you to share brief information.

答案:1~5 FECBD

【微点写作】个人经历

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 如果每个人在刚成年的某些时候都有几天失明、失聪,那将是一件幸事,这听起来很荒谬,但却是事实。

It would be a blessing if each human being were stricken blind and deaf for a few days at some time during his early adult life, which sounds ridiculous but is true in fact.

2. 首先,我们可以珍惜过去认为理所当然的一切。

For one thing, we could value everything (that) we used to take for granted.

3. 其次,我们可以体验残疾人每天都不得不经历的困境。

Second, we could experience the difficult situations (that/which) the disabled persons have to experience every day.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 细读课文,总结文章的语篇结构及语言特点,学习和掌握语篇中与话题相关的表达,并运用所学表达进行交流;
3. 基于文章内容,从三位作家的成长故事中感悟积极的人生态度。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. Many people experience difficulty in paying off their **debts**. 债务
2. The **pace** of something is the speed at which it happens or is done. 速度
3. We are waiting to hear the final **outcome** of the negotiations. 结果
4. He holds an important position in the company; **nevertheless**, I don't quite trust him. 然而
5. I **dread** to think what would happen if there really was a fire here. 畏惧, 惧怕
6. The **manuscript** had already been sent off to the printer. 手稿, 底稿
7. We cannot **guarantee** the punctual arrival of trains in foggy weather. 保证

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>inform</u> <i>v.</i> 通知,告知	information <i>n.</i> 信息
<u>dread</u> <i>v.</i> 畏惧, 惧怕	dreadful <i>adj.</i> 可怕的, 令人畏惧的
<u>rarely</u> <i>adv.</i> 很少, 难得	rare <i>adj.</i> 稀有的, 罕见的
<u>rejection</u> <i>n.</i> 拒绝, 否决	reject <i>v.</i> 反对, 拒绝
<u>persevere</u> <i>v.</i> 锲而不舍, 坚持不懈	perseverance <i>n.</i> 毅力; 韧性; 不屈不挠的精神
<u>delighted</u> <i>adj.</i> 愉快的, 高兴的	delight <i>n.</i> 愉快, 高兴
<u>endurance</u> <i>n.</i> (忍)耐力	endure <i>v.</i> 容忍, 忍耐; 持续
<u>criticism</u> <i>n.</i> 批评; 指责	critic <i>n.</i> 批评家; 评论家
	critical <i>adj.</i> 批判的; 挑剔的
	criticise <i>v.</i> 批评; 批判
<u>classic</u> <i>n.</i> 名著; 经典作品	classical <i>adj.</i> 古典的

III. 补全短语

1. regret to do 遗憾地做……
2. a total of 总共, 总计
3. take for example 以……为例
4. have... in common 有……共同之处
5. turn... down 减少; 关小, 调低; 拒绝
6. stick to 坚持
7. stick... on 把……贴上
8. play a part 扮演……角色; 起作用
9. turn... inside out 把……翻过来
10. all too often 时常; 经常

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: not... until...
“I wasn't going to give up until every single publisher turned me down, but I often feared that would happen,” she later posted.
她后来写道:“我是不会放弃的,除非所有出版商都拒绝我,但我常常担心这真的会发生。”
2. 句型公式: a time when (定语从句)
This, however, was a time when women were not encouraged to become writers.
然而,这是一个不鼓励女性成为作家的时代。
3. 句型公式: 强调句型
In fact, it is within the pages of *Jane Eyre* that we can find these words...
事实上,这正印证了我们在《简·爱》中读到的这些话……
4. 句型公式: it seems that...
So, it seems that talent alone isn't enough to guarantee success.
因此,仅靠天赋似乎并不能保证成功。

任务型课堂

1. have... in common with 和……有共同之处

(教材原文) When she received her first rejection letter, she decided that it meant she now **had** something **in common with** her favourite writers, and stuck it on her kitchen wall.

当她收到第一封退稿信时,她决定把这看作是自己与最喜欢的作家之间有了共同点,并把信贴在了厨房的墙上。

一感 读句子感悟用法

To my surprise, although they are brothers, they **have nothing in common with** each other.

令我惊讶的是,虽然他们是兄弟,但他们没有共同之处。

In common with many young people, he prefers pop music to classical music.

和许多年轻人一样,与古典音乐相比,他更喜欢流行音乐。

The manager of the company is a person of **common sense**.

该公司的经理是一个有常识的人。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) have little/nothing/something/a lot in common (with...) (与……) 几乎无/无/有/有很多共同之处 _____ common with... 和……一样 (2) common sense 常识
探究结论	(1) in

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① If I have something in common with my aunt, that's our smiles.

② In common with other middle-aged people, I like jogging in the morning.

(2) 完成句子

① I have found that she has a lot in common with her mother.

我发现她和她的母亲有许多相似之处。

② Anyone with common sense is able to make the right decision when facing the situation.

当面对这种情况时,任何有常识的人都会作出正确的决定。

2. delighted adj. 愉快的,高兴的

(教材原文) Keep trying and eventually you will read the words "We are **delighted** to inform you..."

坚持下去,最终你会收到这样的回复:“我们很高兴地通知您……”

一感 读句子感悟用法

I **am delighted that** you succeeded.

= I **am delighted at/by/with** your success.

= I **am delighted to hear that** you succeeded.

我因你的成功而感到高兴。

To our delight, he won a gold medal again at the Olympic Games.

令我们高兴的是,他在奥运会上又获得了一枚金牌。

We were **wild with delight** when we heard the news.

当我们听到这个消息时,我们欣喜若狂。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be delighted _____ sth. 乐意/很高兴做某事 be delighted that... 乐意/高兴…… be delighted at/by/with 对……感到高兴 (2) delight <i>n.</i> [U] 快乐; 高兴 [C] 令人高兴的事; 乐事 <i>v.</i> 使高兴; 使愉快 _____ one's delight (= to the delight of sb.) 令某人高兴的是 wild with delight 欣喜若狂
探究结论	(1) to do (2) to

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① We're delighted (delight) that you're coming to work with us.

② I am delighted to receive (receive) an email from you. As for the party on July 1st, I shall be pleased to attend.

(2) 完成句子

① They were delighted at/by/with the news that their team had won.

听到他们队赢了的消息,他们感到高兴。

② To my delight, I was chosen from hundreds of applicants to attend the opening ceremony.

令我高兴的是,我从数百名申请者中被选中参加开幕式。

3. not... until... 直到……才……

(教材原文)“I **wasn't** going to give up **until** every single publisher turned me down, but I often feared that would happen,” she later posted.

她后来写道:“我是不会放弃的,除非所有出版商都拒绝我,但我常常担心这真的会发生。”

[句式分析]引号内句子为 but 连接的并列句, but 前的分句为主从复合句,主句为 I wasn't going to give up,从句为 until every single publisher turned me down。该主从复合句为“not... until...”结构,意为“直到……才……”。在 but 后的分句中,feared 后为宾语从句。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I **didn't** go to bed **until** my mother came back.

直到我妈妈回来我才去睡觉。

Not until he got seriously ill **did he know** the importance of health.

直到他生了重病,他才知道健康的重要性。

It was not until she took off her dark glasses **that** I realised she was a famous film star.

直到她摘下墨镜,我才意识到她是一位著名的影星。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)not... until... 意为“直到……才……”,即表示主句的动作到 until 所表示的时间才开始,主句的谓语动词用非延续性动词。 (2)当 not until 位于句首时,主句要用_____倒装。 (3)not until 可用于_____句型,其构成为“It is/was not until... that...”。
探究结论	(2)部分 (3)强调

三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① We didn't realise the love we have for our families is important until we went through real hardship.

我们直到经历了真正的困难才意识到对家人的爱的重要性。

② Not until my father returned did we have supper.

直到我爸爸回来我们才吃晚饭。

③ It was not until then that I suddenly realised nobody was happier than I was.

直到那时我才突然意识到没有人比我更幸福了。

课后素养评价(七)

I. 单词拼写

1. He had enough money to pay off his debts (欠款).
2. As I grow older, I like to reread the classics (名著) regularly.
3. Their criticism (批评) did not discourage me. Instead, I worked even harder.
4. The law guarantees (确保) equal rights for men and women.
5. We rarely (很少) think of how it affects the environment and humankind.
6. He's been informed (通知) that he doesn't qualify for the scholarship because of his academic background.
7. All who participated have gained a positive outcome (结果) from getting involved.
8. To tell the truth, I was annoyed at her rejection (拒绝) of my offer.

II. 短语填空

take... for example; turn down; play a part in; go wrong; have... in common with; a total of

1. Don't worry. If anything goes wrong, I'll take responsibility for it.
2. As is known to all, geography also plays a part in making dialects.
3. You got 47 points on the written examination and 18 on the oral, making a total of 65.
4. They have much in common with each other, so they become friends.
5. I thanked him for the offer but turned it down.
6. Take myself for example, I wanted to read English novels to improve my English and thus I made a plan to read ten pages of a novel every day.

III. 完成句子

1. As you know, if you do the same thing over and over again, you begin to do it automatically.

正如你所知道的,如果你一遍又一遍地做同样的事情,你就会开始自动地去做。

2. It was his son's winning first prize in the competition that made him feel so delighted.

是他的儿子在这次比赛中获得了一等奖让他感到这么高兴。

3. Nevertheless, I did not realise how much time I had wasted until I failed in the exam.

然而,直到考试不及格我才意识到已经浪费了许多时间。

4. There was a time when each teacher spent an hour, one day a week, testing pupils in every subject.

曾经有段时间,每个老师每周都有一天花上一小时的时间对学生的每门功课进行测试。

5. It seemed that he didn't regret to refuse to help them.

似乎,他对拒绝帮助他们不感到抱歉。

IV. 完形填空

I work as a waiter at a hotel. Last night an elderly white, seemingly 1 couple came into the restaurant and my co-worker 2 them. We usually do our own 3, but we were so busy last night that we helped each other out. At one point the elderly couple 4 to me that they were ready to order. I usually find it 5 when people make their order in such a high-sounding manner, but once I 6 their order I understood why.

The husband began ordering and started stuttering (口吃). It was 7 that he had a speech disorder. I could tell the wife had told her husband very 8 what she wanted as a way for him to practise speaking. It took some time for him to order and 9 she was sitting there and she looked so 10 despite her husband's frequent stuttering.

The whole thing brought me to tears, making me realise that a huge part of love is acceptance, tolerance and support. She 11 have made the order and made things much easier for her husband to avoid the stares from other tables, but she didn't. 12, she supported him and was 13 to see him complete the order. I assumed these wealthy people had everything going well for them. But it

just 14 me that all of us have our problems. I 15 took their gesture of wanting to order as bad manners, but they did it because he really wanted to get the order right. What a true love!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲了作为服务员的作者一次在餐厅接待一对看起来很有钱的老夫妻的故事。最初作者觉得他们招呼作者点餐的方式很粗鲁,最后发现这是妻子为了锻炼口吃的丈夫而采取的训练方式。这件事让作者明白,爱很大一部分是接纳、包容和扶持,也让作者意识到他原以为有钱人一切都很顺利,但其实每个人都有不顺心的事。

1. A. confident B. wealthy
C. ordinary D. energetic

B 根据最后一段中的“these wealthy people had everything going well”可知,这对夫妻看起来很有钱。故选 B。

2. A. hugged B. supported
C. seated D. waved

C 老夫妻来吃饭,同事为他们安排了座位。此处 seated 表示“领……就座”。故选 C。

3. A. tables B. cleaning
C. favour D. dishes

A 根据上文“I work as a waiter at a hotel.”可知,作者是服务员,因此此处是指他们负责自己的那几桌(tables)客人。故选 A。

4. A. signalled B. whistled
C. explained D. applied

A 根据后文“that they were ready to order”可知,那对老夫妇向作者示意,他们准备点餐了。此处 signalled 表示“打手势,示意”。故选 A。

5. A. risky B. absurd
C. rude D. difficult

C 根据最后一段中的“took... as bad manners”可知,作者认为人们以如此高调的方式点餐是不礼貌的。故选 C。

6. A. delivered B. glanced
C. changed D. took

D 根据下文“their order I understood why”可知,作者帮他们点完餐才明白他们为什么要这么高调。故选 D。

7. A. important B. well-known
C. unlikely D. evident

D 根据上文丈夫点餐结巴可知,很明显他说话有障碍。故选 D。

8. A. particularly B. frankly
C. casually D. regularly

A 根据下文“what she wanted as a way for him to practise speaking”可知,妻子之前就特意告诉了丈夫自己想吃什么,只是想让丈夫点餐,以此作为一种练习说话的方式。故选 A。

9. A. at times B. of course
C. by accident D. in the meantime

D 丈夫在一边结结巴巴地点餐期间,妻子一直在旁边看着丈夫。in the meantime 相当于 meanwhile,表示“在此期间,同时”。故选 D。

10. A. content B. nervous
C. aggressive D. awkward

A 根据上文内容可知,妻子是特意让丈夫点餐来锻炼他的说话能力,因此,虽然丈夫说话结巴,但是她却很满意。故选 A。

11. A. must B. needn't
C. could D. should

C 此处为 could have done 结构,表示“本来可以做某事(却没有)”。故选 C。

12. A. Rather B. Otherwise
C. Instead D. Therefore

C 妻子本来可以更省事,自己点餐,还可以避免他人用异样的眼光看着他们,但是相反(Instead)她支持丈夫点餐,并且很自豪地看着他点完餐。故选 C。

13. A. determined B. bound
C. proud D. encouraged

C 根据上文“she supported him”可知,妻子支持丈夫,因此,看他完成了点餐,妻子感到自豪。故

选 C。

14. A. warned B. hurt
C. inspired D. reminded

D 根据后文“all of us have our problems”可知,老夫妻点餐的事情提醒了(reminded)作者每个人都有自己不顺心的事情。故选 D。

15. A. initially B. secretly
C. naturally D. generally

A 根据后文“took their gesture of wanting to order as bad manners”可知,作者最初(initially)觉得他们那样招呼自己点餐的方式是很粗鲁的。故选 A。

【微点写作】个人经历

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 反过来,你也要乐于帮助有困难的人。

In turn, you should be ready to help people in difficulty.

2. 例如,如果你是盲人,有一天能看见东西了,你能想象你是多么激动吗?

For example, if you were blind and had sight one day, can you imagine how wildly you were excited?

3. 你帮助盲人是很自然的,因为你有同样的心理感受。

It's natural for you to help blind people because you have the empathy.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 找出动名词和不定式作宾语的用法及区别,并能够在真实语境中运用;
2. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 学习并运用英语习语表达积极或消极的态度,找到更多类似的习语,理解这些英语习语的意义;
4. 学会表达对他人的关心和安慰,并能够在实际生活中运用所学的相关表达。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. I wrapped the baby (up) in a **blanket**. 毯子,毛毯
2. She was **upset** to know that her application for the

position was refused. 心烦意乱的,烦恼的

3. A **contest** is a competition or game that people try to win. 比赛,竞赛

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>worthwhile</u> <i>adj.</i> 重要的; 值得做的	<u>worth</u> <i>n.</i> 价值; 意义
	<u>worthy</u> <i>adj.</i> 值得尊敬的; 值得赞赏的
<u>enthusiastic</u> <i>adj.</i> 热心的, 热衷的	<u>enthusiasm</u> <i>n.</i> 热情, 热心
<u>elect</u> <i>v.</i> 选举, 推选	<u>election</u> <i>n.</i> 选择; 选举

III. 补全短语

- be made up of 由……组成
- ups and downs 起起伏伏
- have an effect on 对……有影响
- cheer up (使)高兴起来, (使)振作起来
- contribute to 对……作出贡献
- aim at 旨在
- at first 起初
- run for 竞选

IV. 重点句式补全

- 句型公式: so... that...

On the fourth day, I was so tired that I even didn't want to get out of bed.

到了第四天,我累得连床都不想下。

- 句型公式: with 复合结构

With life being made up of ups and downs, it is not always easy to maintain a good and enthusiastic attitude.

生活总是起起落落,要保持一种良好而热情的态度并不总是容易的。

- 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语

Nevertheless, looking on the bright side is the best thing that we can do for ourselves as well as for others.

然而,看到光明的一面是我们为自己和他人能做的最好的事情。

- 句型公式: if 条件句中的虚拟语气

If she had, the school would have been well-known.

如果她这么做了,学校就会出名了。

任务型课堂

1. worthwhile *adj.* 重要的; 值得做的

(教材原文) Even though being a camper has its challenges, I feel it is **worthwhile**.

虽然作为一个野营者自有挑战,但是我觉得这是值得的。

一感 读句子感悟用法

It's worthwhile buying/to buy the reference book, because it is a great help for your study.

= The reference book **is worth buying**, because it is a great help for your study.

= The reference book **is worthy to be bought/of being bought**, because it is a great help for your study.

这本参考书值得买,因为它对你的学习很有帮助。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) It's worthwhile $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{to do...} \\ \text{doing...} \end{array} \right.$ 做……是值得的。 (2) be worth + <i>n.</i> 值得……, 值…… be (well) worth _____ ... (非常)值得做…… (主动形式可以表示被动意义) (3) _____ <i>adj.</i> 值得尊敬的; 值得赞赏的 be worthy $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{of being done} \\ \text{to be done} \\ \text{of + n.} \end{array} \right.$ 值得做……
探究结论	(2) doing (3) worthy

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It is worthwhile to spend/spending (spend) two hours reading the book.

② In my opinion, the film is well worth seeing (see).

(2) 一句多译

他在会议上提出的建议值得考虑。

① His suggestion put forward at the conference is worth considering. (worth)

② His suggestion put forward at the conference is worthy of being considered/is worthy to be considered. (worthy)

③ It is worthwhile to consider/considering his suggestion put forward at the conference. (worthwhile)

2. enthusiastic *adj.* 热心的, 热衷的

(教材原文) someone who is extremely **enthusiastic** and enjoys working extremely hard

一个极度热情并喜欢努力工作的人

一感 读句子感悟用法

I'm sure it will appeal to you, for you've **been enthusiastic about** sports.

我确信它会吸引你,因为你一直热衷于体育运动。

She is very **enthusiastic to read** novels.

她非常喜欢读小说。

Although she's a beginner, she played with great **enthusiasm**.

虽然她是一个新手,但她在演奏时充满了激情。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be enthusiastic _____ 非常喜欢……
	be enthusiastic _____ sth. 非常喜欢做某事
	(2) enthusiasm <i>n.</i> 热情, 热心
探究结论	(3) enthusiastically <i>adv.</i> 热情地, 热心地
	(1) about; to do

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① We explained our plans and he was very enthusiastic (enthusiasm) about them.

② His friends were enthusiastic to help (help) him out, but he refused.

③ She worked enthusiastically (enthusiastic) to interest the young in music.

(2) 完成句子

He was enthusiastic about sports, for he was an extraordinary athlete.

他对运动很热心,因为他是一位出色的运动员。

3. elect *v.* 选举, 推选

(教材原文) You ran for Head of the Student Committee but weren't **elected**.

你竞选学生会主席但没有被选上。

一感 读句子感悟用法

It is said that only two students will be **elected to take part in** the coming English Contest.

据说,只有两个学生将被选中参加即将到来的英语竞赛。

In addition, I have such a good command of English that I **am elected as** assistant to my English teacher.

另外,我英语掌握得很好,因此被选为英语老师的助手。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) elect _____ ... 选择/决定做……
	elect sb. (to be/ _____) ... 选举某人为……
探究结论	(2) election <i>n.</i> 选举; 当选
	(1) to do; as

名师点拨

在“elect sb. + 职务”结构中,总统、市长等独一无二的职位前不用加任何冠词。

We **elected him monitor** of our class.

我们选他当我们班的班长。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① You can elect to delete (delete) the message or save it.

② Who do you think will win the election (elect)?

(2) 完成句子
She was elected as/to be the new Prime Minister last year.

去年她被选为新一届首相。

语法探究

动名词和不定式作宾语

「语法感知」

① You may have spent years **giving up** your weekends and free time to write your life's work...

② Rowling had spent years **surviving on** little money, spending all her time writing.

③ J. D. Salinger started writing short stories in high school, but later struggled **to get** his works published.

④ J. D. Salinger refused **to give up**.

1. 在句子①②中动词 spent 后面的动名词作宾语。

2. 在句子③④中 struggled 和 refused 后面的不定式作宾语。

「语法精讲」

一、动名词作宾语

1. 常见的只能用动名词作宾语的动词有: admit (承认), appreciate (欣赏), consider (考虑), mention (提及), delay (耽误), enjoy (喜欢), finish (完成), imagine (想象), miss (错过),

practise (练习), resist (抵抗), risk (冒险), advise/suggest (建议), mind (介意), avoid (避免), allow (允许)。

I'm **considering going** abroad for further study.

我在考虑出国深造。

We should **avoid making** the same mistake.

我们应该避免犯同样的错误。

He got well-prepared for the job interview, for he couldn't **risk losing** the good opportunity.

他为这次工作面试做了充分准备,因为他不能冒失去这次好机会的风险。

2. 在英语中有些动词短语也常跟动名词作宾语,常见的有: be good at (擅长), be fond of (喜欢), be worth (值), devote to (致力于), feel like (想要), give up (放弃), have trouble/difficulty (in) (做某事有困难), look forward to (期望), pay attention to (注意), put off (推迟), be/get used to (习惯于), insist on (坚持)等。

I'm **looking forward to hearing** from you.

我盼望着收到你的来信。

二、不定式作宾语

1. 常见的不定式作宾语的动词有: agree (同意), offer (提出), intend/plan (打算, 计划), demand (要求), promise (答应), help (帮忙), prepare (准备), decide (决定), refuse (拒绝), choose (选择), wish/hope/want/expect (希望, 想要), fail (不能), pretend (假装), manage (设法做到), determine (决心), beg (恳求, 祈求), arrange (安排, 准备), threaten (威胁), claim (声称), aim (以……为目标), hesitate (犹豫不决)等。

We **agreed to meet** here but so far she hasn't turned up yet.

我们约好在此地见面,但是她到现在还没有露面。

They **managed to finish** the work on time.

他们设法按时完成了工作。

2. “疑问词+不定式”结构作宾语。

“疑问词(who, which, when, where, how, what 等)+不定式”结构在句中起名词作用,可充当主语、表语、宾语。

可以接“疑问词+不定式”结构作宾语的动词有: teach, remember, forget, decide, wonder,

show, learn, consider, know 等。

He **taught me how to cook**.

他教我如何做饭。

Have you **decided where to spend** your holiday?

你决定去哪儿度假了吗?

3. it 可以充当形式宾语,真正的宾语是不定式,可以用于该句型的动词有 consider, make, feel, find, think 等。

He **feels it his duty to help** others.

他觉得帮助别人是他的职责。

He **found it hard to learn** maths well.

他发现学好数学很难。

三、动名词作宾语与不定式作宾语的用法区别

1. 可接动名词和不定式作宾语但意义不同的动词(短语):

{ remember doing sth. 记得曾经做过某事
{ remember to do sth. 记住去做某事

{ forget doing sth. 忘记已经做过某事
{ forget to do sth. 忘记去做某事

{ stop doing sth. 停止正做的事
{ stop to do sth. 停下来做另外一件事

{ mean doing sth. 意味着做某事
{ mean to do sth. 打算做某事

{ regret doing sth. 后悔做过某事
{ regret to do sth. 遗憾去做某事

{ try doing sth. 试着做某事
{ try to do sth. 努力做某事

{ go on doing sth. 继续做同一件事
{ go on to do sth. 完成一件事,接着做另一件事

{ can't help doing sth. 禁不住做某事
{ can't help (to) do sth. 不能帮忙做某事

At the amusing performance, the audience **couldn't help laughing**.

看到这滑稽的表演,观众们不禁笑了起来。

I'm busy studying, so I **can't help (to) do** the housework.

我忙着学习,所以我不能帮忙做家务。

— **Remember to return** the bat to me.

— But I **remember having returned** it to you.

——记得把球拍还给我。

——可是我记得已经还给你了。

—That would **mean wasting** a lot of labour.

—Really? I don't **mean to waste** any labour.

——那将意味着浪费许多劳动力。

——是吗? 我没打算浪费劳动力。

2. 可接动名词和不定式作宾语且意义差别不大的动词:

(1) hate, love, like, prefer 等动词后接不定式或动名词作宾语时, 意义虽相同, 内涵却有些区别——接不定式作宾语时, 多表示一次性的、具体的动作; 接动名词作宾语时, 多表示习惯性的、一般性的动作。

I like swimming, but I don't **like to swim** here.

我喜欢游泳, 但是我不喜欢在这里游泳。

(2) begin, start, continue 等少数几个动词后接动名词或不定式作宾语时意义基本相同。但如果 begin, start 等用于进行时态, 或其主语是物而非人时, 须用不定式。

Tom **began to learn/learning** how to use a computer last year.

汤姆去年开始学习如何使用电脑。

She **was starting to do** her homework.

她正开始做家庭作业。

(3) need, want, require 作“需要”讲, 句子的主语为物, 且句子的主语和谓语动词后的非谓语动词之间是被动关系时, 这些动词后面可以接动名词的主动式, 也可以接不定式的被动式。

The windows **need cleaning**.

= The windows **need to be cleaned**.

窗户需要擦了。

「语法闯关」

I. 用所给动词的适当形式填空

- Missing the train means waiting (wait) for another hour.
- After finishing her homework, my sister went on to do (do) some housework.
- Try knocking (knock) at the back door and see whether he is in or not.
- We've had a good start, but more work needs doing/to be done (do) to achieve the final success.
- He finished reading (read) the book yesterday.
- I promise to do (do) everything I can to help you.
- As a senior high school student, I'm used to getting (get) up early.
- She works very hard and hopes to go (go) to college.
- We must keep practising (practise) speaking English.
- My sister is fond of drawing (draw) while I'm interested in collecting (collect) stamps.

II. 完成句子

- He has got used to living in the countryside.
他已习惯住在乡下了。
- The teacher showed us how to read a book.
老师指点我们怎样读书。
- Remember to tell him the news.
记得告诉他这个消息。
- I decided to go to the countryside on vacation.
我决定去农村度假。
- He tried to avoid answering my questions.
他试图避免回答我的问题。

课后素养评价(八)

I. 选词(或短语)填空

worthwhile; enthusiastic; elect; have a good effect on; contribute to

- Simple pleasures, such as a walk on a sunny day, can have a good effect on our mood.
- The headmaster was more than glad to know that many young teachers were enthusiastic about the project.
- His three sons also contribute to the family business.

- He thinks it worthwhile to devote all his life to teaching since he has won great respect from his students.
- Mr Black had been elected president of the company.

II. 单句语法填空

- It's no good learning English without speaking (speak) English.
- I found it difficult for me to express (express) myself in English.
- I forgot to bring (bring) a pen. Could you lend me one?

4. As a result of the serious flood, two thirds of the buildings in the area need repairing/to be repaired (repair).
5. With the help of the teacher, we succeeded in finishing (finish) the work.
6. With a contest to take (take) part in, I have to train really hard this month.
7. Do you think it is worthwhile to spend (spend) so much money carrying out this project?
8. I find it no use advising (advise) him to go with us.
9. It upset me thinking of her all alone in that big house.
10. According to the survey, most of the students are enthusiastic to participate (participate) in various social activities.

III. 阅读理解

In a recent series of experiments at the University of California, researchers studied toddlers' thinking about winners and losers, bullies (欺凌者) and victims.

In the first experiment, toddlers watched a scene in which two puppets (木偶) had conflicting goals: One was crossing a stage from right to left, and the other from left to right. The puppets met in the middle and stopped. Eventually one puppet bowed down and moved aside, letting the other one pass by. Then researchers asked the toddlers which puppet they liked. The result: 20 out of 23 toddlers picked the higher-status puppet—the one that did not bow or move aside. It seems that individuals can gain status for being dominant (占优势的) and toddlers like winners better than losers.

But then researchers had another question: Do toddlers like winners no matter how they win? So, researchers did another experiment very similar to the one described above. But this time, the conflict ended because one puppet knocked the other down and out of the way. Now when the toddlers were asked who they liked, the results were different: Only 4 out of 23 children liked the winner.

These data suggest that children already love a winner by the age of 21—31 months. This does not necessarily mean that the preference is inborn: 21 months is enough time to learn a lot of things. But if a preference for winners is something we learn, we appear to learn it quite early.

Even more interesting, the preference for winners is not absolute. Children in our study did not like a winner who knocked a competitor down. This suggests that already by the age of 21—31 months, children's liking for winners is balanced with other social concerns, including perhaps a general preference for nice or helpful people over aggressive ones.

In a time when the news is full of stories of public figures who celebrate winning at all costs, these results give us much confidence. Humans understand dominance, but we also expect strong individuals to guide, protect and help others. This feels like good news.

【语篇解读】文章介绍了研究人员进行了一系列的试验,研究蹒跚学步的幼儿对赢家和输家、欺凌者和受害者的态度。

1. Which of the following is the purpose of the experiments?
 - A. To teach toddlers how to gain higher status.
 - B. To offer toddlers a chance to watch a scene.
 - C. To observe the process of toddlers' solving a conflict.
 - D. To find out toddlers' attitude towards winners and losers.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“researchers studied toddlers' thinking about winners and losers, bullies (欺凌者) and victims”可知,试验的其中一个目的是查明幼儿对赢家和输家的态度。故选 D。
2. The toddlers regarded bowing and moving aside as _____.
 - A. a sign of obeying rules
 - B. a sign of gaining status
 - C. a sign of giving in to the other
 - D. a sign of showing good manners

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“The result: 20 out of 23 toddlers picked the higher-status puppet—the one that did not bow or move aside. It seems that individuals can gain status for being dominant (占优势的) and toddlers like winners better than losers.”可知,幼儿把鞠躬和让开看作是向对方屈服的标志。故选 C。
3. What does the second experiment tell us about toddlers?
 - A. They are excellent learners.

- B. They are always changeable.
 C. They show mercy to the loser.
 D. They value kindness over winning.

D 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“Children in our study did not like a winner who knocked a competitor down. This suggests that already by the age of 21—31 months, children’s liking for winners is balanced with other social concerns, including perhaps a general preference for nice or helpful people over aggressive ones.”可知,第二个试验表明 21—23 个月大的儿童看重友善胜过胜利。故选 D。

4. What does the author think of the results of the series of experiments?

- A. Disappointing. B. Encouraging.
 C. Unexpected. D. Controversial.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“these results

give us much confidence”及“This feels like good news.”可知,作者认为试验结果是鼓舞人心的。故选 B。

【微点写作】个人经历

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 最后,我们可以加强我们保持健康的意识。

Finally, we could raise our awareness of keeping healthy.

2. 一些饮食和睡眠习惯往往会导致眼病或听力问题,这些我们每天都可能忽略。

Some dieting and sleeping habits tend to lead to eye diseases or hearing problems, which we could overlook every day.

3. 人们相信熟能生巧,但事实并非如此。

People believe practice makes perfect, but actually it doesn’t.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点;
- 理解课文内容并能准确地叙述海伦·凯勒三天的愿望;
- 理解并能准确地运用虚拟语气、倒装以及排比等用法;
- 理解坚忍不拔的毅力、不屈不挠的精神对于成功的重要性,能够辩证地看待问题,另辟蹊径,思考解决问题的办法;
- 熟悉辩论的流程,能运用本单元所学的表达方式恰当地表达自己的观点,有理有据地进行辩论。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

1. blessing *n.* 幸事,幸运
2. appreciative *adj.* 感激的
3. worthy *adj.* 值得尊敬的;值得赞赏的
4. mere *adj.* 仅仅,只不过
5. delight *n.* 使人高兴的事
6. literary *adj.* 文学的
7. delightful *adj.* 令人愉快的,讨人喜欢的
8. gentleness *n.* 和蔼,温和

9. outline *n.* 外形,轮廓

10. embarrassed *adj.* 难堪的,尴尬的

11. as if/as though 好像

12. pick up 拾起,捡起

13. be aware of 知道,了解

14. worthy of 值得……的

15. appreciative of 对……珍惜的/感激的/感谢的

16. go about 着手;从事;干

(二)阅读词汇和表达

1. permanent *adj.* 长久的;永久的

2. dawn *n.* 黎明,破晓

3. descend *v.* 降临;来临

4. mighty *adj.* 强有力的; 雄伟的
5. probe *v.* 调查; 探究
6. revelation *n.* 展现, 显示
7. companionship *n.* 友谊; 友好交往
8. perfume *n.* 香味
9. fingertip *n.* 指尖
10. intoxicate *v.* 使兴奋, 使陶醉
11. pageant *n.* 盛大的(露天)演出
12. workaday *adj.* 平凡的; 平淡的
13. amid *prep.* 在……之中
14. haunt *n.* (某人)常去的地方
15. orchestra *n.* (大型的)管弦乐队
16. tactile *adj.* 触觉的

17. relish *n.* 享受, 乐趣
18. morsel *n.* (尤指食物的)一小片, 一小块
19. the pageant of (历史事件的)缤纷场景
20. strains of 音乐的曲调或旋律
21. be stricken blind and deaf 遭受失明和失聪
22. close in on 围住, 接近
23. descend upon 突然降临在……; 突然袭击……
24. give one hint to 给……一个忠告
25. see into 调查
26. probe into 探究, 探索
27. knock over 撞翻

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1—Para. 3	The author thinks we should treasure our abilities.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Darkness would make people more 1. appreciative of sight; silence would teach people the joys of sound. • My friends observed nothing in 2. particular in the woods, which made me imagine what I should most like to see if I were given the use of my eyes for three days.
Para. 4—Para. 7	The imagination of the author.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • On the first day, I want to see the people whose 3. kindness and 4. gentleness and companionship have made my life worth living. • On the second day, I want to go to the 5. museums to see the pageant of man's 6. progress. • On the third day, I shall spend in the workaday world, amid the haunts of men going about the 7. business of life.
Para. 8	The suggestions given to those who see.	Use your eyes as if tomorrow you would be stricken blind. And I am sure that sight must be the most 8. delightful .

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. What's the author's reaction after hearing her friend's words: nothing in particular?
 - A. Frightened.
 - B. Unbelievable.
 - C. Excited.
 - D. Indifferent.
2. How would darkness make one feel?
 - A. Proud of himself.
 - B. Grateful for scenery.
 - C. Worthy of hard work.
 - D. Pleased with health.

3. Why would the author not be able to sleep on the first night?
 - A. Because she would be disappointed.
 - B. Because she would be tired.
 - C. Because she would be excited.
 - D. Because she would be alone.
4. Which word cannot be used to describe the author?
 - A. Determined.
 - B. Pessimistic.
 - C. Optimistic.
 - D. Positive.

答案: 1~4 BBCB

II. 课文语法填空

I have often thought it would be a **1. blessing** (bless) if each human being were **2. stricken** (strike) blind and deaf for a few days during his early adult life. I have imagined **3. what** I should most like to see if I were given the use of my eyes for just three days. On the first day, I should want to see the people **4. whose** kindness and **5. gentleness** (gentle) and companionship have made my life worth **6. living** (live). I should like to see **7. the** pageant of man's progress, and I should go to the **8. museums** (museum) and a theater the next day. The following morning, I should greet the dawn, **9. anxious** (anxiety) to discover new

delights, new revelations of beauty. I who am blind can give one hint to those who see: Use your eyes as if tomorrow you would be stricken blind. And the same method can **10. be applied** (apply) to the other senses.

III. 阅读升华

1. What's the author's purpose in writing the passage?

To make readers without disabilities value what they have.

2. What should we do when we come across people with disabilities?

We should respect them and try to offer help to them.

课后素养评价(九)

I. 单词拼写

- Our seven student guides also received many appreciative (感激的) comments from our guests.
- Rivers are a blessing (幸事) for an agricultural country.
- The money we raise will be going to a very worthy (值得赞赏的) cause.
- Heavy drinking can cause permanent (永久的) damage to the brain.
- There, he began to write essays and literary (文学的) criticism.
- There is more to good health than the mere (仅仅) absence of disease.
- She is drawing an outline (轮廓) of her hand in her room.
- He began to comfort me with such unaccustomed gentleness (温柔).

II. 短语填空

end up; care about; give one hint to; pick up; in particular; now and then; make use of; go about; be applied to

- The man picked up the newspaper and read the passage again.

2. While going about the business our manager gives one hint to us.

3. There is a lot of free time we can make use of to do something more meaningful.

4. After graduation, he went back to the school to visit his English teacher now and then.

5. Joining the firm as a clerk, he got rapid promotion, and ended up as a manager.

6. Little did he care about his own safety, though he was in danger himself.

7. Peter was lying on the sofa doing nothing in particular.

8. It's said that the new technology will be applied to farming soon.

III. 补全句子

1. 所有人都把目光盯着我,这使我很尴尬。(make+宾语+宾语补足语)

All the people fixed their eyes on me, which made me feel very embarrassed.

2. 直到他发现这个工作值得做,他才开始感激我们为这些孩子所做的一切。(only 引导的状语从句引起的倒装)

Only when he found the work worthy of doing did he become appreciative of what we had done for the children.

3. 这篇论文探讨了这位被称为“哲学之父”的哲学家的思想发展过程。(who 引导的定语从句)

This paper probes into the developing process of the ideas of this philosopher who is known as Father of Philosophy.

4. 人们对待他们就好像他们是著名的演员一样。(as if)

People treated them as if they were well-known actors.

5. 黑暗笼罩着他, 这让他充分意识到保护眼睛的重要性。(aware of)

Darkness closed in on him, which made him fully aware of the importance of protecting eyes.

IV. 七选五

Self-esteem is the ruling view you have of yourself. This includes your beliefs about your inner qualities and how you think others see you. 1 Someone can develop low self-esteem even when they are highly functional and greatly skilled. Understanding this mysterious emotional currency might be the key to unlocking your own self-worth.

People with healthy self-esteem don't need to boast about themselves to others. People with low self-esteem may tell you how much everyone loves them, what a great job they do at work, and how amazing they are at pretty everything under the sun even though they really wonder if it's true. People may see them as obnoxious or "full of themselves".

2 They are not shy about sharing ideas, including constructive criticisms of others. They also take care of themselves without second-guessing or apologising. They are the people who we say seem "sure of themselves".

If you're starting to think you may have low self-esteem, you can work on the way you talk to yourself. When you turn off negative self-talk, you can open the floor to positive reinforcements and access the courage to show different sides of yourself. It isn't going to feel good at first, though. Keep going until it becomes less and less and maybe even a few awkward laughs in the mirror may help.

3

However, in serious cases of low or even non-existent self-esteem, you may want to call in a

professional or a specialist. Good mental health is important, and professionals doing psychotherapy do not pass judgement or give corrections. 4 It is the best way to get at the roots of your real self-esteem problems.

5 It will take some work but your entire life—from your relationships to your body image to your work habits—will be touched with the kind of power that only comes from someone believing in themselves. This is the hardest part, and the greatest leap. With some changes and support, you can improve your self-esteem and see how everything else changes as a result.

- A. Self-esteem is not always rooted in reality, though.
 B. You have the power to shape a new self-perception.
 C. This encourages you to speak openly without worry.
 D. The real test of character is whether they can learn from their mistakes.
 E. Self-esteem refers to a person's overall sense of his or her value or worth.
 F. People with a healthy level of self-esteem present themselves with a casual confidence.
 G. With some practice and persistence, you will win this internal struggle to see your self-worth.

答案: 1~5 AFGCB

【微点写作】个人经历

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 如果你在犯很多错误, 你正在做的只是让同样的错误在你的脑海中扎根。

If you're making a tremendous number of mistakes, all you're doing is to make the same mistakes take root in your mind.

2. 不要再重复你的错误了; 试试一个更合理的目标。

Stop repeating your mistakes; try a more reasonable goal.

3. 当你失败的时候, 停下来弄明白你失败的原因。

When you fail, stop to figure out the reason for your failure.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 掌握个人经历叙述类记叙文的基本内容、文体特征和写作手法,并能运用所学知识描述相关经历;
3. 在理解课文内容的基础上,感悟文章主题,拥有面对困境不妥协、面对失败不放弃的积极人态度;
4. 深刻感受残障人士在生活中遇到困难的过程和感受,从而学会感恩,更加珍惜自己拥有的美好生活,树立正确的人生观。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. Parents should encourage kids to have interactions with their fellows in order to develop their awareness of **companionship**. 友谊
2. The **outline** of something is its general shape, especially when it cannot be clearly seen. 轮廓
3. **Dawn** is the time of day when light first appears in the sky, just before the sun rises. 黎明,破晓
4. The **revelation** of something is the act of making it known. 展现,显示
5. The campaign we took part in last year has a **permanent** effect on my two little kids. 长久的,永久的
6. Bad emotion **descended** when he got the rejection from the company again. 降临,来临
7. The word “**mighty**” is used to describe something that is very large or powerful. 强有力的,雄伟的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
blessing <i>n.</i> 幸事;幸运	bless <i>v.</i> 保佑;祈福
appreciative <i>adj.</i> 感激的	appreciate <i>v.</i> 鉴赏;感激;意识到
	appreciation <i>n.</i> 感激;欣赏;赞美
worthy <i>adj.</i> 值得尊敬的;值得赞赏的	worth <i>n.</i> 价值
	worthwhile <i>adj.</i> 重要的;值得做的
mere <i>adj.</i> 仅仅,只不过	merely <i>adv.</i> 仅仅,只不过

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
delight <i>n.</i> 使人高兴的事;快乐,高兴,喜悦 <i>v.</i> 使高兴,使欣喜	delighted <i>adj.</i> 感到高兴的
	delightful <i>adj.</i> 令人愉快的;讨人喜欢的
literary <i>adj.</i> 文学的	literature <i>n.</i> 文学
embarrassed <i>adj.</i> 难堪的,尴尬的;陷入困境的	embarrassing <i>adj.</i> 令人尴尬的
	embarrassment <i>n.</i> 窘迫;尴尬
gentleness <i>n.</i> 和蔼,温和	gentle <i>adj.</i> 和蔼的;温和的
	gently <i>adv.</i> 和蔼地;温和地

III. 补全短语

1. now and then 时而,不时
2. be applied to 应用于
3. care about 关心,在乎;介意
4. be aware of 知道,了解
5. end up 结束;终结
6. be appreciative of 感激……
7. worthy of 值得……的
8. probe into 探究,探索
9. close in on 围住;接近
10. descend upon 突然到达;袭击(突然降临)
11. give one hint to 给……一个忠告
12. go about 着手;从事;干

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: make sb./sth. + *adj.*

Darkness would make him more appreciative of sight; silence would teach him the joys of sound. 黑暗会使人更加珍惜视力;寂静能教会人享受声音的美妙。

2. 句型公式:“only+状语”置于句首引起的倒装

Only when darkness had again descended upon me should I realize how much I had left unseen.

只有当黑暗再次降临时,我才意识到,我还有那么多没有看到。

3. 句型公式:as if 从句(虚拟语气)

Use your eyes as if tomorrow you would be stricken blind.

要像明天即将失明一样去使用你的眼睛。

任务型课堂

1. appreciative adj. 感激的

(教材原文) Darkness would make him more **appreciative** of sight; silence would teach him the joys of sound.

黑暗会使人更加珍惜视力;寂静能教会人享受声音的美妙。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The company **was** very **appreciative of** my efforts.
公司对我的努力十分赞赏。

Anyone can **appreciate** our music.
任何人都能欣赏我们的音乐。

I hope that you've enjoyed this interview as much as I have. I really **appreciate your doing it**.

我希望你也和我一样享受这次采访。我很感谢您所做的一切。

I would appreciate it if you paid in cash.
假如你支付现金的话,我会不胜感激。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be appreciative of 赞赏……;感激……
	(2) appreciate v. 鉴赏;感激;意识到 appreciate + n./pron./_____ 重视/感激…… I would appreciate it if... 假如……,我将不胜感激。
探究结论	(3) _____ n. 欣赏;感激 (2) doing (3) appreciation

名师点拨 ■■■■

当 appreciate, hate, dislike, love, like, depend/rely on 等词或短语后接宾语从句时,一般先加 it,再接宾语从句。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① There is a murmur of appreciative (appreciate) laughter.

② I'd appreciate your writing (write) me back as soon as possible.

③ Here I sincerely express my appreciation (appreciate) for helping me find the lost suitcase.

(2) 完成句子

I'd appreciate it if you could let me know in advance whether or not you will come.

如果你能提前告诉我你是否会来,我会很感激的。

2. embarrassed adj. 难堪的, 尴尬的

(教材原文) I felt **embarrassed**, even though no one could see me.

尽管没人能看见我,我还是觉得很尴尬。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I **was embarrassed about/at** his unexpected question.
他突然的发问使我不知所措。

His voice went off key and he **was too embarrassed to look at** the audience.

他唱走了调,窘得不敢看观众。

Now he is in an **embarrassing** situation.
现在他处境尴尬。

My face turned red with **embarrassment**.
我尴尬得脸都红了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be/feel embarrassed about/_____ ... 对……感到难为情/不知所措
	be/feel embarrassed _____ sth. 对做某事感到尴尬
	(2) embarrassing adj. 令人尴尬的,使人难堪的
	(3) embarrass v. 使尴尬
探究结论	(4) embarrassment n. 窘迫;尴尬
	(1) at; to do

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① He was embarrassed to admit (admit) making a mistake.

② I was in the embarrassing (embarrass) position of having completely forgotten her name.

③He could not hide his embarrassment (embarrass) at his children's rudeness.

(2)完成句子

I was embarrassed at/about being unable to answer the teacher's question just now.
我刚才因回答不上老师的提问而感到难为情。

3. as if 引导方式状语从句

(教材原文) Hear the music of voices, the song of a bird, the mighty strains of an orchestra, **as if** you would be stricken deaf tomorrow.

要像明天即将失聪一样,去仔细聆听音乐的旋律、鸟儿的歌唱、交响乐的震撼音符。

[句式分析]本句中 as if 引导方式状语从句,从句使用了对将来时的虚拟。

一感 读句子感悟用法

She looks **as if** she's **going to** cry.

她看起来似乎要哭了。

I can remember it **as if** it **were** yesterday.

我对此事记忆犹新,恍如昨日。

Even if they meet for the first time, they talk **as if** they **were** good friends.

尽管他们是第一次见面,但是他们交谈起来就像好朋友一样。

She worked as calmly as usual **as if** she **had heard** nothing.

她像往常一样平静地工作,好像什么也没听见一样。

He opened his mouth **as if he would say** something.
他张了张嘴好像要说些什么。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) as if/as though 意为“好像;似乎;仿佛”,可以引导方式状语从句或_____从句				
	(2) as if/though 所引导的从句中的语气及谓语动词形式:				
探究结论	<table border="0"> <tr> <td rowspan="2">as if/as though</td> <td rowspan="2">(不真实或不可能发生的情况)</td> <td>陈述语气(真实或极有可能发生的情况)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>虚拟语气</td> </tr> </table>	as if/as though	(不真实或不可能发生的情况)	陈述语气(真实或极有可能发生的情况)	虚拟语气
	as if/as though			(不真实或不可能发生的情况)	陈述语气(真实或极有可能发生的情况)
虚拟语气					
	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>虚拟现在:动词的过去式</td> </tr> <tr> <td>虚拟过去:_____</td> </tr> <tr> <td>虚拟将来:would/might/could+动词原形</td> </tr> </table>	虚拟现在:动词的过去式	虚拟过去:_____	虚拟将来:would/might/could+动词原形	
虚拟现在:动词的过去式					
虚拟过去:_____					
虚拟将来:would/might/could+动词原形					
探究结论	(1)表语 (2)had+过去分词				

三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

①The old lady treats me as if I were her own son.
那位老太太待我就像我是她自己的儿子。

②It looks as if they are looking for something.
他们看起来好像在找什么东西。

③Mary's description of the party was so vivid that I felt as if I had been there.

玛丽对晚会的描述很生动,以至于我感觉好像我在那里一样。

写作探究

个人经历

一、写作指导

本单元的写作任务是写一篇叙事类记叙文。这类作文以叙述事件为主,通过完整的故事情节和生动、形象的语言,使读者在享受故事的同时有所感悟。在写作时同学们要注意把记叙文的六要素:时间、地点、人物、事件的起因、经过和结果交代清楚。

二、典题示例

假如你是李华,请你就自己克服恐高症(acrophobia)的过程,写一篇英语短文。要点如下:

1. 自己有恐高症;
2. 一次经历;
3. 自己的感悟。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

三、审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	第一人称
要点	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. 自己有恐高症 2. 记叙一次经历 3. 自己的感悟

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇和表达

- ① in danger 处于危险之中
 ② fear of heights 恐高
 ③ before sb. know(s) it 不知不觉中
 ④ reach the top of the mountain 到达山顶
 ⑤ shift one's attention 转移注意力
 ⑥ overcome some difficulties 克服一些困难
 ⑦ unexpected results 出乎意料的结果

(二)完成句子

- ① I had acrophobia for many years (多年来).
 ② I was afraid to climb to the high place (爬上高的地方).
 ③ A few days ago, I went to climb a mountain (去爬山) with some kids.
 ④ I was afraid that the kids would be in danger (处于危险中).
 ⑤ Slowly, I forgot my fear of heights (恐高).
 ⑥ I got to the top of (……的顶部) the mountain.
 ⑦ I suddenly realised that (突然意识到) I had overcome my fear of heights.
 ⑧ I think we can shift our attention (转移我们的注意力).

(三)句式升级

- ① 用 so that 连接(二)中的①②句
I had acrophobia for many years so that I was afraid to climb to the high place.
 ② 用 when 连接(二)中的⑥⑦句
When I got to the top of the mountain, I suddenly realised that I had overcome my fear of heights.

(四)连句成篇

I had acrophobia for many years so that I was afraid to climb to the high place.

A few days ago, I went to climb a mountain with some kids. I was afraid that the kids would be in danger. Slowly, I forgot my fear of heights while

I was looking after the kids. Before we knew it, we reached the top of the mountain. When I got to the top of the mountain, I suddenly realised that I had overcome my fear of heights.

From this matter, I think we can shift our attention when we want to overcome some difficulties. Maybe things will have unexpected results.

五、学以致用

假设你叫李华,你刚结束在加拿大的短期学习回到北京,发现自己从学校图书馆借的书忘记还了。请你根据所给要点写一篇有关此经历的英语短文。

- 要点:
 1. 你很着急;
 2. 写信道歉,并且把书寄回;
 3. 自己的感悟。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

Last Sunday, I came back to Beijing after a short-term study in Canada. While I was taking out my stuff, a book caught my eye. It occurred to me that the book was borrowed from the school library. A wave of anxiety flooded me.

Without delay, I wrote a letter, sincerely expressing my apology. With the letter enclosed, I mailed the book back, hoping it would reach the school library soon.

After everything had been done, I breathed a sigh of relief. Only then did I realise that responsibility is a good quality we should value.

课后素养评价(十)

I. 单句语法填空

1. Most people think that the film is well worthy of being seen (see).
 2. We have been very appreciative (appreciate) of their support.
 3. After the baby fell asleep, she laid the baby down gently (gentleness) on the bed.

4. Despite the threat of war, people went about their business as usual.
 5. This can make them nervous and embarrassed (embarrass) about speaking English in public.
 6. Do you like any pop music in particular?
 7. The brain accounts for merely (mere) three percent of body weight.

8. Playing computer games is delightful (delight), but spending too much time on it may do harm.

II. 完成句子

1. He tried to make his view on literary works understood.

他尽量让人理解自己对文学作品的观点。

2. Only in this way can you make progress in your English study.

只有这样,你才能在英语学习中取得进步。

3. She speaks English so fluently as if she had studied English in America.

她讲英语如此流利,好像她在美国学过英语似的。

4. Many professors are having a meeting there, probing into the cause of the failure.

许多教授都正在那里开会,探究失败的原因。

III. 语法填空

Armenian musician Astrid Poghosyan, a 28-year-old violinist, **1. currently** (current) works as a leading assistant to the president of the Shanghai Symphony Orchestra, a celebrated orchestra in China's largest city. She takes great pride in the Chinese name she picks for **2. herself** (her), Ma Xingxing. The given name "Xingxing", literally meaning stars, **3. is inspired** (inspire) by her Armenian first name, while the surname "Ma" is taken from Ma Chao, a famous warrior from China's Three Kingdoms Period.

This summer, she has been busy making **4. preparations** (preparation) for a series of in-person and online music events and cultural exchange programmes, **5. including** (include) a music festival in Shanghai and a live-streamed international violin contest. She always puts all her energy into the programmes in **6. which** she is involved, whether they are offline **7. or** online events, as she believes that every little effort will help her realise her music-related dreams. "I believe music knows no borders, and cultural exchanges via music **8. are** (be) especially important," she said,

"Poghosyan plays a very special role **9. in** our orchestra," said Zhou Ping, president of the Shanghai Symphony Orchestra. "She has lived in China for a long time and is in love with Chinese culture, and she knows how **10. to use** (use) the advantage of a multicultural background in her work."

IV. 写作

第一节 书面表达

假定你是李华,你的交换生朋友 John 原本打算参加学校组织的“古诗词比赛(the Classical Poetry Competition)",但是现在因为害怕失败而打算放弃。请你写一封信劝他参加这次活动,内容包括:

1. 写信的目的;
2. 参加比赛的理由;
3. 提供可能的帮助。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;

3. 信的开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear John,

I am surprised to learn _____

I hope you can consider my advice. Looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

White puffs of bread were lined up in front of me, with the sea of mayonnaise (蛋黄酱) spread over them. How many times had I done this? How many more times would I be forced to do it? My dad would soon be leaving to feed the homeless.

My father and several volunteers gathered every day in the park to feed the hungry.

Luckily, I didn't have to go there. It was enough trouble just to get everything ready. I really didn't understand why my father bothered with it. I couldn't wait for him to leave. I looked forward to a whole Saturday by myself. I planned to watch some television, talk with my friends on the phone, and maybe do some shopping during the afternoon.

It didn't take long for my plans to change and my happiness to disappear. Dad came in while I was doing the packing and stood behind me.

"I'm going to need your help today. Some of the volunteers that usually help me won't be able to make it."

"Dad, I can't help today," I said. "I have plans." He just gave me the you-should-be-ashamed-of-yourself look.

“Fine,” I said angrily.

I finished packing the sandwiches and followed Dad out to the van (货车). I wanted to cry. This was going to be the worst day ever. My dad always drove the van, which also contained clothes, shoes and small bags filled with personal items.

When we arrived at the park, people were already gathered under a tree waiting for us. We opened the back of the van and pulled out a long cafeteria table and some chairs. I put the table on one side of the van with the food on it, while my dad lined up chairs on the other side for them to sit in.

I couldn't believe so many people were there and all of them were homeless. I was surprised to learn my dad knew most of them by name. He also seemed to know what each one needed, what they had suffered and what landed them in the street.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

Then, a girl about my age caught my attention.

When everyone was gone, we loaded things back into the van.

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear John,

I am surprised to learn you want to give up participating in the Classical Poetry Competition to be held by our school.

After all, taking part in the competition is very significant. First, it gives you a chance to recite more poems and learn the charm of Chinese poetry. Second, whatever the result is, you will make more

friends who have the same interest as you. Third, I know you are interested in and have learned a lot about Chinese poetry and traditional Chinese culture. I believe you can get a good result. Besides, I will provide help for you if you need.

I hope you can consider my advice. Looking forward to your reply.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

Then, a girl about my age caught my attention. There was dirt on her face and hair. Much to my surprise, she didn't wear shoes. She walked to me and asked in a low voice whether I had some shoes that fitted her. Staring into her blue eyes, I was unable to believe someone in the world could live such a poor life. “Let me have a check,” I replied gently. Looking back into the van, to my excitement, I found a pair of shoes that are the right size for her. Then I handed her the shoes. “Thank you!” she cried happily, with a big smile spreading across her face. After thanking me, she put them on and ran back to the street. I felt warm inside as I watched her leave.

When everyone was gone, we loaded things back into the van. Now I understood why my father did everything he could to help the homeless. I could tell that he loved seeing their smiles of happiness. So did I. I realised I should have been thankful for everything that I have. That day, my dad taught me that there will always be someone less fortunate. A difference can be made by an individual who is willing to take the opportunity to help others, even if it means sacrificing something of their own.

读后续写技能养成 || 心理描写——感激与欣慰

「技能概述」

1. 心理描写——感激与欣慰

是指对人的感激、欣慰等心理的描写,如感动、感谢、宽慰、轻松、放松、放心、自豪、满意、满足、如释重负……

2. 续写技巧

在描写时,同学们可以根据事件发生的具体场景,抓住眼、脸、心等表现出的神态特点进行描写,也可以使用一些表示动作的词汇辅助描写感激与欣慰的心理。

「范例体悟」

Hearing these words, a glint of excitement

filled my eyes. I looked at him with a bright smile, like a deer jumping with joy. Touched deeply, I offered my heartfelt gratitude to him. Hearing the news, he was overwhelmed with happiness.

找出文中有关感激与欣慰的心理描写。

touched deeply; my heartfelt gratitude

「 词句储备 」

I. 好词积累

1. thankful *adj.* 感谢的
2. grateful *adj.* 感激的
3. gratitude *n.* 感激
4. touched/moved *adj.* 受感动的
5. moving *adj.* 令人感动的
6. relieved *adj.* 感到宽慰的
7. warmth *n.* 温暖; 热情
8. pride *n.* 自豪
9. proud *adj.* 自豪的
10. satisfaction/contentment *n.* 满意
11. satisfied/content *adj.* 满意的
12. shed tears of gratitude 流下感激的泪水
13. be moved to tears 感动得落泪
14. have a deep gratitude towards 对……深怀感激
15. breathe a sigh of relief 宽慰地舒一口气
16. sigh/gasp with relief 松了一口气
17. to one's relief 使人欣慰的/放心的是
18. a sense of satisfaction 满足感
19. with gratitude 感激地

II. 佳句背诵

1. "I owe my parents a lot," he admitted.
“我非常感激我的父母。”他承认说。
2. He smiled, well satisfied with me.
他微笑着,对我非常满意。
3. Relieved, she went home with a weight lifted off her heart.
她松了口气,如释重负地回家了。
4. Touched deeply and feeling a lump in my throat, I clapped my hands even more loudly.
我非常感动,喉咙哽咽,更大声地鼓起掌来。
5. With tears of gratitude rolling/streaming down his cheeks, Peter hugged Green tightly, saying,

"You've saved me today. I couldn't thank you enough."

感激的泪水顺着他的脸颊流下,彼得紧紧地拥抱着格林,说:“今天你救了我。我对你感激不尽。”

6. With grateful tears hanging in his eyes, he kept expressing his gratitude, "Thank you so much!"
他眼中满是感激的泪水,不停地说:“非常感谢!”
7. As he walked happily along the road, he felt very pleased with himself.
他高兴地走在路上,对自己很满意。

「 技能达标 」

I. 完成句子

1. I was full of pride, ran over to my sister, and put my arms around her.
我骄傲极了,跑过去用双臂搂住我的妹妹。
2. Alice stepped into the tall building where she worked and sighed/gasped with relief.
爱丽丝走进她上班的高楼,松了口气。
3. He nodded slowly and smiled with a look of gratitude.
他慢慢点了点头,露出感激的微笑。
4. Tears filling her eyes, she offered her heartfelt gratitude.
她热泪盈眶,表示衷心的感谢。

II. 用心理描写——感激与欣慰的方法完成语段

On a cold morning, Peter was nearly knocked down by a passing car when a passer-by pushed him to safety. 1. With grateful tears/tears of gratitude hanging in his eyes (他眼里含着感激的泪水), he thanked the passer-by with a lump in his throat, "Thank you so much!" But the passer-by just smiled warmly. Peter 2. felt warm (感到温暖) in the cold weather, believing there was kindness in every corner. It was 3. very moving (十分令人感动) to see how much strangers could care for each other. 4. Touched/Moved deeply (深受感动), the crowd clapped their hands loudly. Later, knowing what had happened, Peter's mother 5. gasped with relief, and shed tears of gratitude (如释重负,流下感激的泪水).

第二单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Lynda La Plante is the writer of *Prime Suspect* and the best-selling author of more than 40 books. Her new novel *Hidden Killers* is out now. She is talking about three books that deeply affected her.

Wuthering Heights

By Emily Brontë

One night as a child, I walked quietly into the bathroom when I heard a voice calling, “Let me in; let me in!” along with a terrible knock on a window coming from my grandma’s room. Quite afraid, I cried, “Help me! Where’s the ghost?” Grandma looked up and said, “Don’t be silly; I’m listening to a story on the radio called *Wuthering Heights*.” I joined my grandma and realised then how you could take a story from a book and change it to a different medium (媒介).

The Water-Babies

By Charles Kingsley

This classic Victorian story caught my imagination as a child. It made me consider the unfairness of life—why is one child sleeping in comfort and another forced to climb through a chimney (烟囱)? I especially loved all the questions Tom asks on his adventures, many of which are about social unfairness. All my life I’ve asked questions too.

The Faerie Queene

By Edmund Spenser

I used to have problems reading—I was told I had “word blindness”. My mother gave me a copy of Spenser’s poem and said, “If you can learn some of this then you’ll be able to read anything.” I rose to the challenge. I learned it off by heart and was so proud of myself for keeping something that difficult in mind. Then I learned that I could learn words just as well as anyone.

【语篇解读】作家 Lynda La Plante 分享了三本对她有深刻影响的书。

- How did Lynda first know about the story of *Wuthering Heights*?
 - By reading a book borrowed from her grandma.
 - By listening to her grandma’s story.
 - By listening to it on the radio.
 - By reading a ghost story.

C 细节理解题。根据 *Wuthering Heights* 部分中的 “I’m listening to a story on the radio called *Wuthering Heights*” 可知, Lynda 通过听广播第一次了解了《呼啸山庄》所讲述的故事。故选 C。
- Which book made Lynda form the habit of asking questions?
 - Hidden Killers*.
 - Wuthering Heights*.
 - The Water-Babies*.
 - The Faerie Queene*.

C 细节理解题。根据 *The Water-Babies* 部分中的 “All my life I’ve asked questions too.” 可知答案选 C。
- What change did Lynda show after reading *The Faerie Queene*?
 - She found pleasure in writing poems.
 - She began to believe in herself.
 - She fell in love with poems.
 - She became word-smart.

B 细节理解题。根据 *The Faerie Queene* 部分中的 “I learned it off by heart and was so proud of myself for keeping something that difficult in mind. Then I learned that I could learn words just as well as anyone.” 可知, 作者开始变得自信。故选 B。

B

Accompanied by her father, using a combination of aid and free climbing and taking advantage of some special equipment and ropes for protection, 10-year-old Selah made it to the top of

El Capitan on June 12 after five days of big wall climbing.

Climbing the challenging and adventurous Nose route of El Capitan was a labour of love for Selah in more than one way. Her parents, Mike and Joy Schneiter, fell in love with this 3,000-plus-foot huge rock and she has always wanted to feel the way that her parents felt when they were up there together. Selah showed great interest in rock climbing at an early age. She wore her first rock-climbing equipment shortly after she learned to walk. She first dreamed of climbing El Capitan when she was 6 or 7.

El Capitan is a famous mountain-sized rock in Yosemite National Park. Getting to its top is no easy task. It's taller, as reported, than the tallest building in the world—Dubai's Burj Khalifa. El Capitan and its difficult Nose route, which runs more than 3,000 feet high up the centre of the rock's face, is considered one of the world's hardest big wall climbs and has attracted the best climbers over time. But never before had a youngster accomplished it.

Selah's achievement caught national attention. *Outside Magazine* called her the youngest documented person to climb the Nose. Ken Yager, president of the Yosemite Climbing Association, said he also couldn't think of anyone younger who has done it.

Selah is humble about her El Capitan accomplishment. "I'm not necessarily a special kid or anything like that," she said. "There were a few times when I would be so worn that it would kind of discourage me from holding on. But overall, it was just great to keep plugging away."

Selah shared this advice for other young climbers dreaming of big walls, "It doesn't take necessarily a super special person to do something like that. You just have to put your mind to it."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了十岁的塞拉在父亲的陪同下,借助一些特殊设备和绳索的保护,在爬了五天的高墙后,于6月12日登上了埃尔卡皮坦山顶的故事。

4. What do we learn about Selah climbing El Capitan?

- A. She began her climbing on June 5.
- B. She got inspired by her family history.

C. She managed without any external help.
D. She was the first female to reach the top.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段第二句“Her parents, Mike and Joy Schneiter, fell in love with this 3,000-plus-foot huge rock and she has always wanted to feel the way that her parents felt when they were up there together.”可知,Selah从她的家族史中受到启发。故选B。

5. What is the purpose of Paragraph 3?

- A. To state El Capitan's height.
- B. To prove El Capitan's popularity.
- C. To introduce El Capitan's location.
- D. To stress the challenge of climbing El Capitan.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段最后两句“El Capitan and its difficult Nose route, which runs more than 3,000 feet high up the centre of the rock's face, is considered one of the world's hardest big wall climbs and has attracted the best climbers over time. But never before had a youngster accomplished it.”可知,攀登埃尔卡皮坦是十分艰难的。故选D。

6. Which of the following best describes Selah?

- A. Determined. B. Generous.
- C. Warm-hearted. D. Fortunate.

A 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“‘There were a few times when I would be so worn that it would kind of discourage me from holding on. But overall, it was just great to keep plugging away.’”可知,Selah是一个有决心的人。故选A。

7. What may be Selah's advice for other young climbers?

- A. Dream big and aim high.
- B. Be committed to your ambition.
- C. Chance favours the prepared mind.
- D. Nothing is impossible for a genius.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘It doesn't take necessarily a super special person to do something like that. You just have to put your mind to it.’”可知,Selah对年轻人的建议是忠诚于自己的雄心抱负。故选B。

C

Hard work really does pay off. Scientists find that perseverance (坚持不懈) leads to better grades and higher achievements in school.

“Being passionate (热情的) is not enough to ensure academic success,” says researchers, who

thought of “courage” as a key to success. This is also regarded as effort in reaching long-term goals, and determination to continue one’s efforts in spite of hardships.

Researchers think that the finding could help create new training to help children develop the skill and help ensure their future success.

Researchers from the Academy of Finland studied more than 2,000 students from Helsinki. They were followed through their academic career from 12 to 16, the sixth grade until the ninth grade in local school years. Researchers found that the factor that best predicts courage was related to goals, with previous academic achievements playing no role in developing the skill.

Professor Katariina Salmela-Aro, who led the study, said, “Courage means a young person is really interested in his or her studies and does not give up easily. A key element of courage is high perseverance when facing difficulties and hardships. The important finding is that these factors are the key to success and well-being. Our study shows the power of courage.”

Professor Salmela-Aro also thinks it is important to develop new practices and qualities to improve courage in teenagers. She added, “Young people should see everyday school work as part of their life in a broader context and establish achievable goals for themselves. Schools must also serve as a place where it is safe to fail and learn to deal with setbacks. One must not be discouraged by setbacks, but draw strength and new energy from them!”

【语篇解读】科学家们发现,坚持不懈会使学生在学校取得更好的成绩和更高的成就。

8. What can we learn about the research?

- A. It takes at least three years.
- B. It helps students make progress.
- C. It meets many difficulties.
- D. It follows 2,000 students abroad.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“*They were followed through their academic career from 12 to 16, the sixth grade until the ninth grade in local school years.*”可知,这项研究至少需要花费三年时间。故选 A。

9. What should students do according to the

researchers?

- A. Focus on former grades.
- B. Achieve their dreams.
- C. Try all their best.
- D. Forget sadness.

C 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“*Courage means a young person is really interested in his or her studies and does not give up easily. A key element of courage is high perseverance when facing difficulties and hardships.*”可知,根据这项研究,学生应该在面对困难时坚持不懈。由此推断,学生应该全力以赴,不要放弃。故选 C。

10. What does the underlined word “setbacks” in Paragraph 6 mean?

- A. Strengths. B. Difficulties.
- C. Weaknesses. D. Efforts.

B 词义猜测题。根据最后一段中的“*Schools must also serve as a place where it is safe to fail and learn to deal with setbacks. One must not be discouraged by setbacks, but draw strength and new energy from them!*”可推知, setbacks 是必须面对的,与失败并列,从 setbacks 中能够汲取力量和活力;根据上下文含义以及结合选项分析可知,此处 setbacks 的意思为“挫折、困难”,与 difficulties 含义相同。故选 B。

11. Which is the text probably taken from?

- A. A picture book.
- B. A literature book.
- C. A geography textbook.
- D. An educational magazine.

D 文章出处题。通读全文可知,文章主要描述了科学家们发现,坚持不懈会使学生在学校取得更好的成绩和更高的成就,因此推断文章可能来自教育杂志。故选 D。

D

I was reading a book while my son watched an old comedy show on TV. Suddenly, I heard someone yell: “Go to your happy place!” These words made me put my book down and ponder all the happy places I have had over the years.

When I was a little boy, my happy place was my mum’s lap while we shared a freshly-made bowl of popcorn. When I was in primary school, my happy place was a tree in the woods where I could sit and watch the leaves turn golden and red in the fall. When I was a teenager, my happy place was my

bedroom where I could lie on my bed and listen for hours to my favourite songs on the radio. As a young man, my happy place was an old rocking chair where I could hold my newborn babies in my arms and gently rock them to sleep.

As I got older, though, I realised that the very best happy place of all was deep down within my own soul. It was there that I realised just how much I was loved. It was there that I saw I could love too. It was there that I learned my happiness was in my own hands and that I could create it, one loving choice at a time.

When you have your own soul as your happy place, then your happy place is wherever you decide to go. When your happy place lives in your heart, then you get to give it to everyone you meet. When your happy place is the very life you live, then you make the world around you a happier place as well. Create your own happy place then. Fill your heart with love. Fill your soul with kindness. Fill your days with joy. Take this glorious gift of life you have been given and live it, one loving choice at a time.

【语篇解读】作者阐述了自己对于“幸福之地”的理解。

12. What does the underlined word “ponder” in Paragraph 1 mean?

- A. Call at. B. Leave for.
C. Think about. D. Search for.

C 词义猜测题。根据第二段的内容可知,作者回忆了从小时候到现在自己的“幸福之地”。结合画线词所在的句子“These words made me put my book down and ponder all the happy places I have had over the years.”可推知,画线词 ponder指“思考;回忆”,与“Think about”表达的意义相同。故选 C。

13. Which of the following is NOT true about the author’s happy place?

- A. It differed as he grew.
B. It was in his own hands.
C. It lay in the depth of his soul.
D. It was shaped by his surroundings.

D 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容可知,随着年龄的增长,作者的“幸福之地”在变化,所以 A 项正确;根据第三段第一句“As I got older, though, I realised that the very best happy place of all was deep down within my own soul.”可知,

C 项正确;根据第三段最后一句“It was there that I learned my happiness was in my own hands and that I could create it, one loving choice at a time.”可知,B 项正确。综上所述,选项 D 符合题意。

14. According to the author, what influences one’s happy place most?

- A. Attitude.
B. Creativity.
C. Kindness.
D. The environment.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“When you have your own soul as your happy place, then your happy place is wherever you decide to go. When your happy place lives in your heart, then you get to give it to everyone you meet. When your happy place is the very life you live, then you make the world around you a happier place as well.”可知,“幸福之地”随着看待角度的不同而变化,即个人的态度影响着“幸福之地”的定义。故选 A。

15. What is the author’s purpose of writing the passage?

- A. To suggest ways to find happy places.
B. To share his own growing experience.
C. To stress the importance of happy places.
D. To illustrate his understanding of happy places.

D 写作意图题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段中的“When you have your own soul as your happy place, then your happy place is wherever you decide to go. When your happy place lives in your heart, then you get to give it to everyone you meet. When your happy place is the very life you live, then you make the world around you a happier place as well.”可知,作者阐述了自己对于“幸福之地”的理解。故选 D。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

The world is a colourful landscape of different languages, skin colours and different cultures. It’s important to have a good understanding of different cultures in order to become a well-rounded person.

16

One way is to read books written by authors from a particular culture. Reading works by authors who have a close relationship with a particular

culture allows people to gain an authentic glimpse into the food, music, language, religion and way of a life of a particular group of people. 17

Another way to learn about different cultures is to try to learn a foreign language. 18 A person can choose a language he/she has always wanted to learn and locate learning programmes to help him/her master the language. Besides, one can enroll in a foreign language class in order to learn in a more formal setting. One can also try to visit areas of the city to establish social connection with native speakers of the language.

19 Seek out restaurants that feature authentic food from a variety of countries. Food is an important part of different cultures and allows people to gain deep understanding into a particular cultural group's way of life.

Communicating with people from other countries through email or snail mail is another useful way to become familiar with different cultures. 20 Various websites offer pen pal services, offering to connect individuals with pen friends around the world.

- A. Stories based on a local culture expose one to a different culture.
- B. Trying authentic food from a specific cultural group is also a great idea.
- C. There are several ways to become knowledgeable about different cultures.
- D. A variety of language-learning books, software and audio programmes is available.
- E. The Internet has made it possible to communicate with others from different countries.
- F. Making contact with native speakers of the language allows one to gain first-hand knowledge.
- G. One way to develop this appreciation is to try to learn about other cultures around the world.

答案: 16~20 CADBE

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

Nevins had his legs seriously injured in a war. He had 36 operations, had both legs amputated (截掉), and spent several years going to Walter Reed Amy Medical Centre.

The years left him 21 and restless. He was often woken up by bad dreams. He knew he needed 22. To find a way out, he called a friend, Anna Dennis. She told him, "You 23 yoga (瑜伽) in your life." At first, Nevins laughed at the 24. "That's the stupidest thing I've heard," Nevins said. But he decided to have a 25.

A yoga instructor, Dennis offered to give him three 26. At his first lesson, he found himself feeling 27 because of his artificial legs. It was painful to balance, and he was angry 28 she kept telling him to press his feet into the ground.

Finally he told her, "29 saying that word! I don't have any feet!" And then, he 30 his artificial legs and threw them aside, a big move because he was 31 for people to see him without them—only his doctors had seen him like that.

"I raised my arms, and it felt as though life was shooting out of my hands. I became a 32 person," he said.

When the day was over, he couldn't 33 his next lesson. Following what began as a 34 exercise, yoga finally became Nevins's saving grace (可取之处).

Nevins 35 others to find yoga. "All of us are living with wounds," he said. "Yoga helps you to let go of the things that don't serve you any more."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。一名士兵在战争中失去了双腿,心理也受到创伤。后来,他通过练习瑜伽重拾对生活的信心。

21. A. worried B. proud
C. careless D. moved

A 根据第一段中 Nevins 的不幸遭遇和本句中的 "restless" 以及后文中的 "He was often woken up by bad dreams." 可知, Nevins 很焦虑 (worried)。

22. A. praise B. work
C. help D. sleep

C 根据上文的描述以及后文中的 "To find a way out, he called a friend" 可知, Nevins 需要他人的帮助 (help)。

23. A. expect B. need
C. miss D. continue

B 根据语境可推断, Nevins 的朋友说他需要 (need) 练习瑜伽。

24. A. advice B. decision
C. warming D. result
A 根据后文中的“the stupidest thing”可知,他觉得朋友的建议(advice)很可笑。
25. A. rest B. job
C. dream D. try
D 根据本句中的“But”以及下文的描述可知,Nevins 决定试一试(try)瑜伽。
26. A. suggestions B. choices
C. lessons D. chances
C 后文中的“At his first lesson”和“his next lesson”是提示。
27. A. pleased B. sad
C. surprised D. impolite
B 根据后文中的“It was painful to balance, and he was angry”可知,Nevins 刚开始练瑜伽时感到很沮丧(sad)。
28. A. so B. if
C. though D. because
D “she kept telling him to press his feet into the ground”与“he was angry”之间是因果关系,故填 because。
29. A. Mind B. Stop
C. Regret D. Consider
B 根据上文中的“he was angry”以及后文中的“I don't have any feet!”可知,此处表示 Nevins 让瑜伽教练不要(Stop)再说那个字。
30. A. put on B. showed off
C. picked up D. took off
D 根据上文中的“I don't have any feet!”以及本句中的“threw them aside”可推断,Nevins 脱掉(took off)了自己的假肢。
31. A. afraid B. ready
C. happy D. bored
A 根据本句中的“only his doctors had seen him like that”可知,对 Nevins 来说,脱掉自己的假肢是一个勇敢的举动,因为他一直害怕(afraid)别人看到自己不戴假肢时的样子。
32. A. popular B. real
C. serious D. new
D 根据上文中的“it felt as though life was shooting out of my hands”可知,瑜伽让 Nevins 重拾对生活的信心,仿佛重获新(new)生。
33. A. learn from B. attend
C. wait for D. give
C 根据后文的描述可知,在第一节瑜伽课结束时,Nevins 已经迫不及待(couldn't wait for)想上

下一节课了。

34. A. simple B. different
C. similar D. difficult
D 根据上文中的“At his first lesson, he found himself feeling 27 because of his artificial legs. It was painful to balance”可知,最初练习瑜伽对 Nevins 来说是一件很困难的(difficult)事。
35. A. required B. encouraged
C. forced D. allowed
B 根据后文中的“Yoga helps you to let go of the things that don't serve you any more.”可知,Nevins 鼓励(encouraged)大家练习瑜伽。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Humans have always looked up at the stars and wanted to learn more about space. **36. Determined** (determine) to find out the secrets of the universe, scientists work hard to make vehicles to carry people into space.

In the mid-20th century, rockets that were **37. powerful** (power) enough to overcome Earth's gravity were developed, making space exploration **38. a** reality. In 1961, Yuri Gagarin became the first human **39. to travel** (travel) into space. Although China's space programmes started later than the US, it has made great progress in a short time. In 2003, Yang Liwei **40. successfully** (success) orbited Earth in the Shenzhou V spacecraft, **41. which** made China the third country in the world that independently sent humans into space. More recently, China **42. has made** (make) history by landing Chang'e 4 on the far side of the moon. However, accidents that resulted **43. in** the deaths of the astronauts happened before despite scientists' efforts to make sure nothing went wrong. **44. But** the desire to explore space never fades away. Many countries have plans to explore **45. planets** (planet) like Mars and Jupiter. So the future of space exploration remains bright.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 书面表达(满分 15 分)

党的二十大报告指出:“推动绿色发展,促进人与自然和谐共生。”假如你是李华,你的英国朋友 Tom 看到你在微信上分享了学校最近举行的主题为“建造绿色家园”的植树活动,发邮件向你询问有关情况。请你用英语回复邮件,内容包括:

1. 活动情况简介;
2. 活动的意义。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

My efforts to learn, read, write and speak English have been a significant challenge in my life. When I first came to the United States from Hong Kong, China about 12 years ago, I could barely communicate in English. Today, although I still have much to learn, I realise I have made a good amount of progress in my years abroad.

I grew up in a small village in China, where no one I knew spoke English. I wasn't exposed to English or any other language through books, magazines or TV. Only when I later went to study in Hong Kong was I exposed to American and Western cultures through movies, music and other media. Although English is common in Hong Kong due to its history, I still couldn't speak, read or write much after graduating from high school.

In my early 20s, I decided to move to New York City and I was determined to make a new life for myself there. However, I didn't want to end up speaking my native language because I knew that learning English was very important if I wanted to be successful in this new country. New York seemed like another world and without speaking much English it was even more difficult to make friends.

I didn't have a teacher at first, so I tried every way I could to learn the language. One way that was very useful was listening to the radio and watching TV, mostly news. I tried to speak like the people I heard on TV. They spoke more clearly and it was easier to understand than the English I heard people speaking in my neighbourhood. I picked up one word at a time, and looked them up in the dictionary. I would also try to write down the words and remember them. I made a goal of learning at least 20 new words every day.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

After a while I made friends. _____

Thinking back on the ways I have learned

English over the years, I have something to say.

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear Tom,

I'm delighted to learn that you are interested in our tree-planting activity.

The activity is held annually with different themes. This year's theme is "Building a Green Home". The activity was held on March 12, our national Tree-planting Day. Early in the morning, all the teachers and students gathered on the West Hill, where we spent the whole morning digging holes, planting trees and watering trees.

Undoubtedly, we benefit a lot from the activity, which not only brings us the pleasure of labour but also helps us to develop team spirit. Hopefully you can join us next year.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

After a while I made friends. They were another way I learned English. I would pick up a lot of cool expressions just from spending time with them and listening to them. My friends were patient with me and helped me a lot, but I often became discouraged. Seeing I gave up speaking English, they tried to encourage me to speak up. They often invited me to their parties where I was in an English atmosphere and I was forced to communicate with them in English.

Thinking back on the ways I have learned English over the years, I have something to say. It is clear that I am a visual learner—I learn by seeing and looking. I had the most success when reading and using written materials. I enjoyed reading books, newspapers and magazines. Of course, it is also very important to be able to speak and listen. So, I spent lots of time trying to develop these skills, like getting involved in social activities with friends. Therefore, if I could become more and more fluent, so can you!

Unit 3

Faster, higher, stronger

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 掌握新闻报道的写作特征和语言特征；
3. 初步了解世界上三大体育赛事，掌握提取主要信息的方式；
4. 能够谈论运动员带给自己的启示和影响，了解与体育运动相关的知识，感知运动员身上体现的体育精神。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇和表达

1. shiny *adj.* 光滑发亮的, 闪光的
2. association *n.* 协会, 社团
3. sharpen *v.* 使提高, 使改进
4. footstep *n.* 脚步声; 足迹
5. expectation *n.* 预料, 预期
6. self-belief *n.* 自信
7. philosophy *n.* 人生哲学
8. shot *n.* 投球, 射球, 击球
9. follow in one's footsteps 仿效某人; 继承某人(尤指家人)的事业
10. carry on 继续; 坚持
11. attach... to 依附, 附属; 把……贴(系, 粘)在……上

12. give way 倒塌, 向下垮
13. beyond one's expectations 超出某人的预期
14. in a row 连续地
15. set out 打算; 开始; 出发; 阐述; 说明
16. a far cry from 与……大不相同

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. hoop *n.* (篮球中的)篮圈
2. backboard *n.* 篮板
3. bump *n.* 隆起之处
4. teammate *n.* 队友
5. warrior *n.* 武士, 战士
6. muddy *adj.* 沾满泥的, 泥泞的
7. bounce *v.* (使)弹起, (使)反弹
8. sharpen one's skills 磨炼/提高某人的技能
9. living proof 活生生的例子

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1—Para. 2	Stephen practised playing 1. basketball on the muddy basketball court.	Stephen's grandfather built a simple 2. basket along a narrow dirt road. Stephen spent many childhood hours playing on the 3. muddy basketball court.
Para. 3	The beginning of Stephen's basketball 4. career .	Many people thought it was impossible for Stephen to be a great player because he was too 5. short , too thin and too weak. But his 6. creativity and perseverance made him Davidson's star player.
Para. 4—Para. 5	Stephen join the NBA and performed 7. beyond people's expectations.	Stephen joined the NBA, and won his first NBA 8. championship . After 9. receiving the MVP award for two years in a row, he said that he wanted to be 10. himself .

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What's the purpose of the passage?
 - To tell people why Stephen Curry was doubted by many people.
 - To inform people of Stephen Curry's basketball skills.
 - To inspire people with Stephen Curry's determination to succeed.
 - To tell people how Stephen Curry became successful.
- When Stephen was young, where did he play basketball?
 - In a big stadium.
 - On the playground of his school.
 - On a muddy basketball court.
 - On a shiny basketball court.
- Which one is TRUE according to Paragraph 2?
 - The weak plastic backboard broke with every shot.
 - The road under the basket was quite flat.
 - Stephen didn't like to play basketball on that court.
 - Stephen had learnt a lot while training on the court.
- What's Stephen's reaction towards people's doubts?
 - He didn't give up and pursued his dream.
 - He ignored their words totally.
 - He was very disappointed.
 - He hoped to get their support.
- What does Stephen mean by saying "What I wanted to do was just be myself"?
 - You needn't care about others at all.

- Work hard and never give up, and you will succeed.
- You should take others' advice as much as possible.
- Each one should experience some difficulties before achieving success.

答案: 1~5 CCDAB

II. 课文语法填空

In Stephen Curry's hometown, a narrow dirt road goes from his grandfather's house **1. to** the woods nearby. Along this road, his grandfather built a simple basket. Like his father, Stephen played on the **2. muddy** (mud) basketball court. He learnt to be **3. creative** (create) and flexible as a player, and he also learnt to shoot **4. accurately** (accurate). He had to adjust his own playing style since there were bumps and rocks on the road that caused the ball to bounce **5. in** all directions. Though he was thought **6. to be** (be) unable to follow in his father's footsteps, he didn't give **7. up**. After joining the NBA, he led the Warriors to their first NBA **8. championship** (champion). He explained his philosophy that he never set out **9. to change** (change) the game. He inspired others to believe in **10. themselves** (them).

III. 阅读升华

- What kind of person do you think Stephen is?
Confident, hard-working and determined.
- Can you think of any other famous basketball player? Which of his qualities inspires you?
Michael Jordan. He is definitely one of the most motivated and persistent players. (回答合理即可)

课后素养评价(十一)

I. 阅读理解

During World War II, William Powell served in Europe as a soldier in the US Army. Golf was his hobby. He played at some of the most popular courses in Scotland. However, upon his return

home, William Powell was discouraged to find that he wasn't allowed to play golf at local courses because he was an African American. William Powell took a unique approach to solving his problem. He built his own golf course.

William Powell began the construction of the Clearview Golf Course in 1946. He moved rocks and spread grass seeds to build a golf course in Canton, Ohio. He convinced two African American doctors to invest in the course and continued to build it for the next year and a half. William Powell built it without the help of a designer. He did it while working at night as a security guard. In 1948, the Clearview Golf Course opened, and the business is still popular today.

In 1967, William Powell's daughter, Renee, became a professional golfer on the Ladies Professional Golf Association (LPGA) tour. Now, she serves as Head Professional at her father's golf course. In 2001, the Clearview Golf Course was one of the 15 golf courses listed on the National Register of Historic Places. It's the only course owned, built, designed and run by African Americans. The Clearview Golf Course not only serves as a challenge to experienced golfers, but also provides an enjoyable round for those players who are new to the game.

In 2009, the Professional Golfers' Association of America (PGA of America) honoured William Powell with a Distinguished Service Award. William Powell, 92 years old, accepted the award politely. "I have had so many special things happen to me, because the golf sees no colour," he said.

【语篇解读】文章按照时间顺序,介绍了 William Powell 对高尔夫球的卓越贡献。

- Why was William Powell refused to play golf at local courses?
 - Because he was a bad golfer.
 - Because he was a black man.
 - Because he was a retired soldier.
 - Because he was a poor guard.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“that he wasn't allowed to play golf at local courses because he was an African American”可知,William Powell 不被允许在当地高尔夫球场打球,是因为他是非裔美国人(黑人)。故选 B。
- Which one is RIGHT about the Clearview Golf Course?
 - It was built with the help of a designer.
 - It was built during World War II.
 - It was invested in by two doctors.
 - It only serves experienced golfers.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“He convinced two African American doctors to invest in the course”可知,William Powell 建造 Clearview Golf Course 获得了两位医生的投资支持。故选 C。

- What can we learn about William Powell from the passage?
 - He died at the age of 92.
 - His contribution to golf is recognised.
 - He built a golf course for black people only.
 - He was a native American.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“In 2009, the Professional Golfers' Association of America (PGA of America) honoured William Powell with a Distinguished Service Award.”可知,William Powell 对高尔夫球的贡献是有目共睹的。故选 B。
- How is the passage mainly developed?
 - By time order.
 - By comparing facts.
 - By space order.
 - By providing examples.

A 推理判断题。根据文中的“During World War II”“in 1946”“In 1948”“In 1967”“In 2001”和“In 2009”等相关时间信息可知,文章是通过时间顺序展开的。故选 A。

II. 七选五

Workout fads (狂热) come and go, but virtually no other exercise programme is as lasting as yoga (瑜伽). It originated from India and it's been around for more than 5,000 years. 1

2 Yoga does more than burn calories and tone muscles. It's a total mind-body workout that combines strengthening and stretching poses with deep breathing and meditation or relaxation. Research shows yoga can help manage stress, improve the mood, and enhance the quality of sleep. In addition, yoga has been shown to increase flexibility, improve balance and increase strength.

3 All these types, from the peaceful hatha to the high-intensity power yoga, take your workout to a level of mind-body connection.

People of all ages and fitness levels can do the most basic yoga poses and stretches. You can do yoga anywhere, indoors or out. You'll need to use a yoga mat to keep you from sliding around in standing poses, and to cushion you while in seated and lying positions. 4 It includes a yoga ball for

balance, a yoga block or two, and straps to help you reach for your feet or link your hands behind your back.

Even though there are many instructional books and DVDs on yoga, it is well worth it to invest in some classes with a good instructor who can show you how to do the postures. But if you don't live near a studio, or you're the on-the-go type who struggles to make time for a regular class, doing yoga at home can help you fit the practice into your life. 5 Simply choose the time and the length of the session that works for you, and get your "om" on at home.

- Yoga is a great way to strengthen your body.
- Other optional equipment may also be needed.
- There are more than 100 different forms of yoga.
- Now it is a popular practice throughout the world.
- Therefore, yoga facilities are necessities for your exercise.

F. Yoga has long been praised for its physical and spiritual benefits.

G. You don't have to wait for a specific class time or commit to a class.

答案: 1~5 DFCBG

【微点写作】运动记事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 我观看了在周一举行的运动会上的4×100米接力决赛。

I watched the final of the 4×100-metre relay at our sports meeting held on Monday.

- 在9月15日,我校举行了一场运动会。

A sports meeting was held in my school on September 15th.

- 有些人参加了比赛,而有些人只是观看了比赛。

Some joined in the competitions while some just watched them.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas — Language points

学习任务及目标

- 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 细读课文,找出相关的细节信息并梳理课文的写作脉络;
- 基于文章内容,能够运用与话题相关的语言知识介绍一位运动员;
- 通过总结斯蒂芬·库里的成功经验,在今后的学习、生活和工作中要坚持自己的梦想,并为之不断努力,成为更好的自己。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- The heavy rain made the streets so **muddy** that people, horses and carts got stuck. 泥泞的
- Taylor scored with a low **shot** into the corner of the net. 射球
- The ball **bounced** twice before he could reach it. 弹起

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>shiny</u> <i>adj.</i> 光滑发亮的, 闪光的	shine <i>v.</i> 发光, 发亮 <i>n.</i> 光亮, 光泽

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
	<u>associate</u> <i>v.</i> 联想; 联系
<u>association</u> <i>n.</i> 协会, 社团	<u>associative</u> <i>adj.</i> 有关联的; 相关的
	<u>sharp</u> <i>adj.</i> 锋利的, 锐利的; 尖的
<u>sharpen</u> <i>v.</i> 使提高, 使改进	<u>sharply</u> <i>adv.</i> 尖刻地; 严厉地; 猛烈地

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
expectation <i>n.</i> 预料, 预期	expect <i>v.</i> 预料, 预期
	expected <i>adj.</i> 预料的, 预期的
philosophy <i>n.</i> 人生哲学	philosopher <i>n.</i> 哲学家; 思想家; 达观者
	philosophical/philosophic <i>adj.</i> 哲学的; 达观的

III. 补全短语

- a far cry from 与……大不相同
- attach... to ... 依附, 附属; 把……贴(系, 粘)在……上
- follow in one's footsteps 仿效某人; 继承某人(尤指家人)的事业
- day in and day out 夜以继日地
- carry on 继续; 坚持
- beyond one's expectations 超出某人的预期
- end up 结果为……, 以……结束
- aim at 瞄准; 目的在于
- in a row 连续地

10. set out 打算; 开始; 出发; 阐述, 说明

11. give way 倒塌, 向下垮

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 强调句型

... it was along this road that Stephen's grandfather built a simple basket by attaching a piece of plastic to a telephone pole.

……正是在这条路上, 斯蒂芬的祖父在电线杆上贴了一块塑料, 做成了一个简易的篮筐。

2. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语

Knowing where the ball would go wasn't easy. 能判断球反弹的方向并不容易。

3. 句型公式: “too... to...” 结构

Despite his father's successful career, Stephen was thought by many people, including his high school teammates and coaches, to be too short, too thin and too weak to follow in his father's footsteps.

尽管父亲的职业生涯很成功, 但是斯蒂芬的高中队友和教练等很多人都认为他太矮、太瘦弱, 无法延续他父亲的事业。

任务型课堂

1. association *n.* 协会, 社团

(教材原文) A far cry from the bright lights and shiny courts of the National Basketball **Association** (NBA), it was along this road that Stephen's grandfather built a simple basket by attaching a piece of plastic to a telephone pole.

这与美国职业篮球联赛(NBA)赛场上明亮的灯光和闪亮的球场相去甚远。正是在这条路上, 斯蒂芬的祖父在电线杆上贴了一块塑料, 做成了一个简易的篮筐。

一感 读句子感悟用法

They work **in association with** a number of local companies to raise money for the homeless. 他们与本地一些公司联合为无家可归的人筹款。

I've never **associated** you **with** this place.

我从未把你和这个地方联系在一起。

A person's success **is** closely **associated with** his hard work.

一个人的成功与他的努力是密切相关的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) in association _____ 与……联合/合作; (事物)与……在一起 (2) associate <i>v.</i> 联系; 交往 associate... _____ ... 把……和……联系起来 (3) associated <i>adj.</i> 有关联的; 相关的; 有联系的 be associated with 与……有关
探究结论	(1) with (2) with

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① To achieve success, we must associate theory with practice.

② This exhibition was organised by the local government in association (associate) with several paper-cutting artists.

(2) 句式升级

There are many serious health problems that are associated with smoking.

→ There are many serious health problems associated with smoking. (用分词作定语升级)

2. attach... to... 依附, 附属; 把……贴(系, 粘)在……上

(教材原文)... it was along this road that Stephen's grandfather built a simple basket by **attaching** a piece of plastic **to** a telephone pole. ……正是在这条路上, 斯蒂芬的祖父在电线杆上贴了一块塑料, 做成了一个简易的篮筐。

一感 读句子感悟用法

We ought to **attach importance to** the education of the children in poor areas.

我们应该重视贫困地区孩子们的教育问题。

The kindergarten **is attached to** the well-known university.

这个幼儿园附属于此所著名的大学。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) attach importance/significance _____ ... 重视, 认为……重要/有意义 (2) attached <i>adj.</i> 依恋的; 附属的 be attached to... 依恋; 爱慕; 附属
探究结论	(1) to

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① The girl attached a note to her mother's computer to remind her of the parents' meeting.

② This hospital is attached (attach) to the medical college.

(2) 完成句子

Attached to other trees, the plants tend to grow better.

依附在别的树上, 这些植物会长得更好。

3. carry on 继续; 坚持

(教材原文) But Stephen **carried on**.

但斯蒂芬还是坚持了下来。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Carry on with your work while I'm away.

我不在时你要接着干你的活。

You'll wear yourself out if you **carry on working** so hard.

你要是继续这样拼命工作, 身体会吃不消的。

More often than not, it is easier to make a plan than to **carry out** a plan.

通常情况下, 制订计划比执行计划更容易。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	carry on (with) sth. 继续某事 carry on _____ sth. 继续做某事 carry _____ 实行; 贯彻; 执行; 实现
探究结论	doing; out

三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① He gave himself a new name to hide his identity when he went to carry out a secret task.

他在执行一项秘密任务时, 给自己起了一个新的名字来隐藏身份。

② She is determined to carry on with her education.

她决定继续她的教育。

4. expectation *n.* 预料, 预期

(教材原文) He performed beyond everyone's **expectations** with his accurate shooting and continuous efforts.

精准的投篮和不断的努力使他的表现超出了所有人的预期。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He has won first prize in the contest, which is **beyond everyone's expectations**.

他在比赛中夺得了第一名, 这超出了所有人的预期。

He **expected to meet** his old friends who he hadn't seen for many years.

他期望见到多年未见的老朋友。

This led to an **unexpected** consequence, though she had a wonderful time there.

尽管她在那里度过了一段美好的时光, 但这导致了意想不到的结果。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) _____ one's expectations 超出某人的预期 (2) expect <i>v.</i> 期待, 期望 expect _____ sth. 期望做某事 (3) expected <i>adj.</i> 预料的, 预期的 unexpected <i>adj.</i> 出乎意料的, 始料不及的
探究结论	(1) beyond (2) to do

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

We were all astonished at the unexpected (expect) news.

(2) 完成句子

① What he referred to in his speech was beyond our expectations.

他在演讲中提到的出乎我们的意料。

② He didn't expect to hurt his friends by telling lies.

他没料到他的谎言伤害了他的朋友。

5. 强调句型

(教材原文)... **it was** along this road **that** Stephen's grandfather built a simple basket by attaching a piece of plastic to a telephone pole.

……正是在这条路上,斯蒂芬的祖父在电线杆上贴了一块塑料,做成了一个简易的篮筐。

一感 读句子感悟用法

It was the manager **that/who** asked his secretary to keep him informed of the progress.

是经理让他的秘书通知他进展情况。

It is coffee **that** they always drink in the afternoon.

他们一向在下午喝的是咖啡。

It is in the gym **that** he often plays basketball with his classmates on weekends.

是在体育馆他经常和他的同班同学在周末打篮球。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>强调句型是用来对句中某一成分加以强调的,其一般句型为“It is/was+被强调部分+that/who+其他成分”。</p> <p>需要注意的几点:</p> <p>(1) 强调句型和其他句型最明显的区别:强调句型的判断标志是去掉 it is/was 和 that, 适当调整后仍然是一个完整的句子。</p> <p>(2) 此句型不可以强调谓语动词,如果要强调谓语动词,可以在动词前加 do, does 或 did。</p> <p>(3) not... until... 的强调句型: It is/was not until... + 其他成分。</p> <p>(4) 该句型可以强调 because 引导的原因状语从句,但不能强调 as, since 等引导的原因状语从句。</p> <p>(5) 如果强调的是主语或宾语且是指人时,则可以用 who 或 that; 如果被强调的部分是其他成分,那么用 that。</p>
探究结论	(3) that (5) who

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It was yesterday that we had an English examination.

② It was with the help of the local guide that the mountain climber was rescued.

(2) 句式升级

She didn't mention her own plan until near the end of the letter.

→ It was not until near the end of the letter that she mentioned her own plan. (改为强调句)

课后素养评价(十二)

I. 单词拼写

- One day, a pair of big shiny (闪光的) shoes stopped in front of my eyes.
- The association (协会) has put the event off until next month.
- Unfortunately, the car got caught in the muddy (泥泞的) road.
- Shooting (投球) with great accuracy made him admired by many fans.
- The government played a major role in promoting Confucian philosophy (哲学).
- He sharpened (使提高) his skills by practising day and night in the stadium.

7. The ball bounced (弹起) twice before he could reach it.

8. Some parents have unrealistic expectations (期望) of their children.

II. 短语填空

give up; in a row; attach... to; set out; give way; a far cry from; carry on; follow in one's footsteps

- If you work hard, the life in your future is a far cry from what's now.
- The father is extremely proud that his son followed in his footsteps and became a doctor.
- He has achieved what he set out to do three years ago.

4. I attach great importance to this research.
5. The Coast Guard had given up all hope of finding the two divers alive.
6. He has been late for work three days in a row, which makes his boss angry.
7. Though she was very tired, she carried on swimming.
8. This overpass (立交桥) gave way during the earthquake that happened last week.

III. 完成句子

1. It was an old bike that John bought yesterday in the marketplace.
约翰昨天在集市上买的是一辆旧自行车。
2. The well-known player spends more than eight hours practising on the court every day.
这位著名的运动员每天花八个多小时在球场练习。
3. The clock had hardly struck twelve when they realised that it was too late to catch the last train.
钟刚敲十二点,他们就意识到赶不上末班车了。
4. Praised by the neighbours, he became the pride of his parents.
受到邻居们的表扬,他成了父母的骄傲。
5. They have done what they can to help her.
他们已经竭尽所能去帮助她了。

IV. 完形填空

After having a child, I found my regular exercise interrupted. I was not only busy but also lacked the motivation. Solo gym sessions or some quick 1 following the DVD while the baby sleeps didn't 2 me at all. So I decided to sign up for a hiking trip in Peru, hoping that it would get me 3 again.

Looking over my travel arrangements before I left, I 4 phrases such as “3-hour hike 5 primitive forests” and “sliding with a rope down waterfalls”, and I started to feel a little 6.

However, as we made our way through the forests and were 7 with amazing views of 8 waterfalls, this team of strangers 9 me to go on. Being physically active with a group motivated me to reach the 10 or the valley below—rather than simply lying down on the forest floor and giving up. 11 I might have done if I were alone.

12 confirm my experience: Group exercise can really start a new attitude towards fitness. “People get a better workout in a group than they do on their own,” said Allison Kimmel, a group 13 instructor. That's because other people 14 both support and competition. “Humans are social

animals and the shared experience of facing a challenge 15 is compelling (不可抗拒的),” said David Ezell, the CEO of fitness provider Darien Wellness.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者因为生育而中断健身,在参加了团队远足之后重归健康生活的故事,从而说明了团队锻炼的好处。

1. A. summary B. addition
C. exercise D. lecture
C 根据前文“I found my regular exercise interrupted”可知,这里是指两种锻炼方式。故选C。
2. A. contribute to B. appeal to
C. cater to D. object to
B 根据下文“So I decided to sign up for a hiking trip in Peru”可知,前面的锻炼没有吸引力,因此作者决定报名远足旅行。故选B。
3. A. acting B. flying
C. studying D. moving
D 根据前文内容可知,作者的常规锻炼被中断,希望自己再次动起来。故选D。
4. A. examined B. scanned
C. copied D. deleted
B 根据文中提到的“我在出发前查看了‘三小时徒步穿过原始森林’”和“在瀑布中带绳滑行”可知选B。
5. A. across B. over
C. through D. beyond
C 根据下文“made our way through the forests”可知,穿越内部,用介词through。故选C。
6. A. convinced B. disappointed
C. delighted D. worried
D 根据下文“However, as we made our way through the forests... me to go on.”可知,作者最初有点担心,然而美景令作者感觉不虚此行。故选D。
7. A. rewarded B. crowded
C. covered D. equipped
A 作者一行欣赏到了奇妙的瀑布景观。be rewarded with表示“被赏以……,得到……报酬,获得……”。故选A。
8. A. awful B. awesome
C. accessible D. still
B 根据前文“amazing views of”可知,此处指景色很棒。故选B。
9. A. begged B. forced
C. permitted D. inspired

D 根据下文“with a group motivated me to reach”可知,这里表示鼓励作者继续前行。故选 D。

10. A. summit B. foot
C. destination D. waterfall

A 空处和“or the valley below”形成对比。故选 A。

11. A. that B. which
C. where D. when

B 分析句子结构可知,此处为定语从句,指代前面整件事,定语从句中缺少宾语,且空前有逗号,用 which 引导。故选 B。

12. A. Victims B. Tourists
C. Strangers D. Experts

D 根据下文中的“Allison Kimmel”“David Ezell”可知,此处是说专家证明作者的健身经历是有效的。故选 D。

13. A. business B. career
C. flight D. fitness

D 根据说话内容可以判断,此处是指健身教练。

故选 D。

14. A. offer B. consume
C. receive D. ignore

A 这里是指在参加团队锻炼时,队员们可以提供支持和竞争。故选 A。

15. A. alone B. alike
C. together D. closely

C 此处强调团队锻炼的优点,共同面对挑战时一起分享经验不可避免。故选 C。

【微点写作】运动记事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 这是一次激动人心的经历,令我难以忘记。

It was an exciting experience that/which I would never forget.

2. 比赛前,每位选手都保持安静、静止不动。

Before the race, every competitor was quiet and still.

3. 我从未想到体育赛事的气氛会如此紧张。

I had never imagined that the atmosphere at a sports event could be so intense.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 通过了解动词-ing 形式作主语的结构和表意功能,掌握其用法,并能够在真实语境中运用;
2. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 能够正确使用动词搭配恰当的运动,并尽量想出更多不同的运动类型;
4. 了解运动精神,听懂与运动精神相关的话题内容;
5. 认识到运动精神的重要性,培养积极向上的人生观。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. **Yoga** is a type of exercise in which you move your body into various positions in order to become more fit or flexible. 瑜伽
2. He **cheated** the old lady out of her money. 欺骗
3. **Precious** objects and materials are worth a lot of money because they are rare. 珍贵的
4. **Earphones** are a small piece of equipment that you wear over or inside your ears so that you can listen to the radio or recorded music. 耳机
5. It was his first day to try **roller skating**, so he was afraid of falling down. 滑旱冰

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
remarkable <i>adj.</i> 非凡的; 不寻常的	remarkably <i>adv.</i> 引人注目地; 明显地
	remark <i>v.</i> 谈论, 说起
accuracy <i>n.</i> 准确性; 精确度	accurate <i>adj.</i> 准确的; 精确的
	accurately <i>adv.</i> 准确地; 精确地
complete <i>v.</i> 完成 <i>adj.</i> 完全的; 彻底的	completion <i>n.</i> 完成, 结束

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
popular <i>adj.</i> 流行的, 受欢迎的	popularise <i>v.</i> 普及; 使流行
	popularity <i>n.</i> 普及; 受欢迎

III. 补全短语

1. come off 脱离; 掉落
2. one after the other 相继地; 陆续地
3. throw... away 把……扔掉
4. take part in 参加
5. get the best out of 发挥……的最大功效
6. best of all 最好的
7. see... as ... 把……看作……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: had almost done sth. when...
Etenesh Diro had almost completed two thirds of the 3000m steeplechase, when disaster struck.

埃特内什·迪罗几乎完成了 3 000 米障碍赛的三分之二, 这时灾难降临了。

2. 句型公式: *adj.* + enough to do
I even encountered a man who, at the age of 68, was brave enough to go roller skating!
我甚至遇到了一个六十八岁的男子, 他有足够的勇气去滑旱冰!
3. 句型公式: 否定词置于句首引起的部分倒装
Not only did he have guts, he was much faster than me!
他不仅有胆量, 而且比我快得多!
4. 句型公式: 不定式作定语
In 2003, Yao Ming became the first Chinese sportsperson to win the award, and in Shanghai in 2015 Yao Ming and Li Na both won awards.
2003 年, 姚明成为首位获得该奖项的中国运动员; 2015 年在上海, 姚明和李娜双双获奖。

任务型课堂

1. remarkable *adj.* 非凡的; 不寻常的; 显著的

(教材原文) In this spirit, the Laureus World Sports Awards is an annual ceremony to honour **remarkable** sportspeople.

本着这种精神, 劳伦斯世界体育奖是一个年度颁奖典礼, 以表彰杰出的运动员。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The government refused to **make any remark on** the political scandal happening recently.

政府拒绝对最近发生的政治丑闻作任何评论。

He **remarked on** the difference in security measures at the two airports.

他讲到了两个机场安全措施的不同之处。

A local newspaper **remarked that** car accidents were on the decrease due to the forceful law.

一家地方报纸评论说, 由于强有力的法律措施, 车祸在减少。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) remark <i>n.</i> 评论; 言论 <i>v.</i> 谈到, 评论 make a remark on/upon/about 就……发表意见 remark _____ sth. 评论/谈论某事 remark that... 谈到/说起…… (2) remarkably <i>adv.</i> 不寻常地; 惊人地
探究结论	(1) on/upon

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Professor Li made a short remark in the class on/upon/about students' cheating in examinations, whose words left a deep impression on them.

② The professors present at the meeting exchanged a few remarks (remark) in a low voice when the chairman made a speech.

③ My life improved remarkably (remarkable) when I discovered art.

④ He made a remarkable speech after being elected president. His remarks inspired many people. (remark)

2. 不定式作定语

(教材原文) In 2003, Yao Ming became the first Chinese sportsperson **to win the award**, and in Shanghai in 2015 Yao Ming and Li Na both won awards.

2003 年, 姚明成为首位获得该奖项的中国运动员; 2015 年在上海, 姚明和李娜双双获奖。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He is always **the first to arrive at school** and **the last to leave school**.

他总是第一个到校, 最后一个离校。

And **the best way to strengthen willpower** is to make it into a habit.

而且增强意志力最好的方法就是让意志力成为一种习惯。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)当中心词是序数词或被序数词、形容词最高级等修饰时或前面有 next, only, last 等时,常用 _____ 作后置定语。 (2)不定式作定语可以修饰抽象名词,常见的有 ability, chance, ambition, offer, anxiety, answer, reply, attempt, belief 等。
探究结论	(1)不定式

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ①One of the most effective ways to reduce (reduce) stress is to talk about feelings with someone you trust.
- ②She was the first woman to win (win) the gold medal at the Olympic Games.
- ③The ability to express (express) an idea is as important as the idea itself.
- ④Thank you for giving me the chance to make (make) the speech.

语法探究

动词-ing 形式作主语

「语法感知」

- ①Since then, **finding ways to grow more rice** has been his life goal.
- ②**Knowing where the ball would go** wasn't easy.
- ③**Shooting with great accuracy** was another thing he learnt.
- ④**Mary's being late for class** made her teacher angry.
- ⑤It is no use **arguing with him about such a matter**.

1. 句子①②③都是动词-ing 形式短语作主语。
2. 句子④是动词-ing 形式的复合结构作主语。
3. 句子⑤是动词-ing 形式短语作真正的主语。

「语法精讲」

动词-ing 形式是非谓语动词的一种,起名词的作用,同时保留动词的属性,且可以有自己的宾语、状语等。动词-ing 形式常在句中作主语、宾语、表语、定语等。动词-ing 形式作主语往往表示经常性、习惯性的动作或状态,且作主语时谓语动词通常用单数形式。

1. 动词-ing 形式在句首直接作主语

Seeing is believing.

眼见为实。

Talking is much easier than doing.

说比做容易得多。

2. it 在句首作形式主语,而动词-ing 形式在后面作真正的主语,常见句型:

It is + *adj.* (good, nice, worthwhile, interesting, useless 等) + 动词-ing 形式

It is no use/no good/a waste of time... + 动词-ing 形式

It is useless worrying about it.

为这事担心无济于事。

It is no use waiting for him here since he has left.

在这里等他是没用的,因为他已经离开了。

3. there be 结构中动词-ing 形式作主语

There is no doing sth. 不可能做某事。

There is no point doing sth. 做某事没意义。

There is no telling how many miles you will have to run while pursuing a dream.

= We can't tell how many miles you will have to run while pursuing a dream.

难以预料在追求梦想的道路上你要走多远。

There is no point scolding him now.

现在责骂他毫无意义。

4. 动词-ing 形式作主语时的逻辑主语

动词-ing 形式作主语时可以有自己的逻辑主语,“逻辑主语+动词-ing 形式”叫作动词-ing 形式的复合结构。动词-ing 形式作主语时,逻辑主语要用名词所有格或形容词性物主代词。

The president's attending the meeting himself gave them a great deal of encouragement.

总统亲自出席会议给了他们莫大的鼓励。

Her not coming back made us disappointed.

她没有回来让我们很失望。

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

1. Eating (eat) too much may make you fat.
2. Drinking much water is good for your health.
3. It is dangerous smoking (smoke) in the elevator.

- There is no point complaining (complain) about the mistakes after exams.
- Playing music and singing songs are the most interesting things for him.

II. 完成句子

- It was no good telling him the truth as soon as he came back home.
他一回到家就告诉他真相是没有好处的。

- There is no point blaming him for making mistakes/a mistake.
责备他犯错是没有意义的。
- It is a waste of time practising in that way.
用那种方式练习就是浪费时间。
- Reading aloud is not allowed in the library.
在图书馆里大声朗读是不被允许的。
- There was no knowing what he could do.
无法知道他能做什么。

课后素养评价(十三)

I. 选词(或短语)填空

remarkable; cheat; take part in; come off; throw away

- He felt ashamed of cheating in the exam, determined never to do such things again.
- We will throw away a lot of things as we grow up.
- Don't pull so hard, or the handle will come off.
- He showed remarkable endurance throughout his illness.
- How many countries took part in the last Olympic Games?

II. 单句语法填空

- To help/Helping (help) you to finish the task is our duty.
- Having (have) a conversation with her best friends made her feel better.
- Working with you is (be) my great pleasure.
- They had just finished their meal when someone knocked at the door.
- The little boy is clever enough to understand (understand) what the teacher said.
- It is no use blaming (blame) her for taking the wrong keys by mistake.
- Playing chess and jogging are (be) what she likes to do in her spare time.
- Practising (practise) English every day enables him to make great progress.
- Do you have anything to be taken (take) to your sister?
- It is no good eating (eat) too much for dinner.

III. 阅读理解

The air gets a little thinner and the cold begins to wrap around us as fall leaves and winter arrives. Some people regard winter as a goodbye to their favourite outdoor sports. However, there are plenty of winter outdoor activities that transcend all seasons.

Climbing

Some climbers say that winter climbing and summer climbing are completely different sports. The snow, ice and cold have the tendency to turn one terrain (地形) into something completely different than it is in the warmer months. As with any other change in temperature and terrain, you'll need gear (设备) and expectations that make sense for the conditions. Plan for the weather getting worse, pack hot liquids, bring all extreme winter climbing supplies—even if the terrain isn't expected to need it, layer your clothes, and turn back if you need to. Winter climbing offers more different experiences and views than climbing in warmer months.

Cycling

No matter what type of cycling you're into, whether it is mountain biking or commuting to work, you can turn it into an all-season activity. Just like anything else, it simply requires some modification (改进). Wearing more layers is important, but not so many that you'll be sweating after a few minutes peddling. A good base layer, gloves, boots and a head covering will make you plenty comfortable in the cooler temperatures.

Running

Seasonal Affective Disorder is a condition in which people can feel depressed and fatigued in the winter months as a result of the body's lack of sunlight. Some people can combat this issue with light therapy. Another way to fight the winter blues is to do some exercise.

Continuing to run outside is one way to soak in as much sunlight in your workout as you can. More layers and better shoes may be all you need to turn your warm weather month sport into a cold weather sport as well. In fact, many runs and marathons take place in cooler months. Just be aware of the

thinner air and how it can affect your breathing as well as your muscles. However, don't let a little cold keep you from enjoying a run with a beautiful snowy backdrop.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍的是冬季的一些超越季节的户外活动。

1. What should you prepare when climbing in winter?

- A. Hot liquids. B. A head covering.
C. Boots. D. Thin clothes.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Climbing** 部分中的“Plan for the weather getting worse, pack hot liquids, bring all extreme winter climbing supplies—even if the terrain isn't expected to need it, layer your clothes, and turn back if you need to.”可知,在冬天登山时应该准备热的液体。故选 A。

2. What does the underlined word “fatigued” mean in the text?

- A. Excited. B. Warm.
C. Tired. D. Frightened.

C 词义猜测题。根据 **Running** 部分中的“feel depressed”和“in the winter months as a result of the body's lack of sunlight”可知,在冬季,由于身体缺乏阳光,人们会感到抑郁和疲劳,这叫季节性情绪失调。由此可知,画线词 fatigued 的意思是“疲劳的”,和 tired 意思相近。故选 C。

3. What's the purpose of the text?

- A. To show the benefit of climbing.
B. To recommend some good winter sports.
C. To warn people of the danger of winter sports.
D. To tell the difference between winter and summer sports.

B 写作意图题。通读全文,尤其是第一段中的“Some people regard winter as a goodbye to their favourite outdoor sports. However, there are plenty of winter outdoor activities that transcend all seasons.”可知,本文主要介绍的是冬季的一些超越季节的户外活动,因此目的是推荐一些好的冬季运动。故选 B。

【微点写作】运动记事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 他站在起跑线上,看上去轻松、自信。

He stood at the start line, looking relaxed and confident.

2. 当赛跑运动员们开始起跑,人们都疯狂了!

When the runners set off, everyone went wild!

3. 我们都站起来,并开始欢呼呐喊。

We all stood up and started cheering and shouting.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 理解课文内容,总结中国女排成功的经验;
3. 对“体育精神”这一话题有更深入的理解,能够形成自己的体育观,并能够运用所学知识阐述自己对体育精神的理解并举例证明,提高语言的综合运用能力,锻炼逻辑思维能力;
4. 辩证地看待问题,能够客观地对不同的观点进行评价。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

1. intense *adj.* 紧张的,激烈的
2. vivid *adj.* 生动的,逼真的
3. burst *v.* 突然出现

4. assign *v.* 分配,分派
5. opponent *n.* (竞争、比赛等的)对手
6. surgery *n.* 外科手术
7. defeat *v.* 战胜,打败
8. cooperation *n.* 合作,协作
9. seize *v.* 夺取
10. net *n.* 球网

11. be assigned to 被分到……
12. pay off 取得成功
13. burst onto 突然出现在……(指突然成功)
14. come true 实现
15. go wild 变得发狂
16. be caught up in 陷入;卷入

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. nerve *n.* 意志力
2. steely *adj.* 钢铁般的;坚定的
3. preliminary *adj.* 初步的;预备的
4. comeback *n.* 东山再起

5. ingredient *n.* (完成某事的)要素,因素
6. teamwork *n.* 合作,协作
7. tournament *n.* 锦标赛
8. spiker *n.* (排球队的)扣球队员,主攻手
9. quarter-final *n.* 四分之一决赛
10. semi-final *n.* 半决赛
11. podium *n.* 表演台,讲台
12. give one's all to the fight 全力以赴去战斗
13. play a close match 进行一场势均力敌的比赛
14. ups and downs 起落;荣辱
15. the key to... ……的关键

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1	The Chinese women's volleyball team won the gold medal.	After winning the gold medal, the crowd has gone 1. wild . The joy and 2. pride are on the faces of the Chinese fans. The Chinese players embrace each other, with tears of 3. happiness in their eyes.
Para. 2—Para. 5	The spirit of Chinese women's volleyball team.	The Chinese women's volleyball team holds a very special place in the nation's heart. But winning gold in Rio shows the team's 4. competitive spirit vividly. Every single member of the team gave their all to the fight, including Hui Ruoqi who had had heart 5. surgery previously. Their 6. perseverance paid off with an epic comeback against the defending 7. champion Brazil in the quarter-finals. Fighting 8. spirit and strong team spirit together contributed to their success. And 9. cooperation between team members is essential.
Para. 6	The team begins its new journey.	The Chinese women's volleyball team has fought their way through ups and downs. Led by 10. coach Lang Ping, they have continued to aim high.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. Which of the following statements is TRUE according to the history of Chinese women's volleyball team?
 - A. They were world-famous from the beginning of the 1970s.
 - B. They won more than one Olympic gold before 2000 AD.
 - C. They hadn't expected to hold the championship again.
 - D. It was certain that they could win the gold in 1984 in Los Angeles.
2. What do you think about the team's performance at the Rio Olympics?
 - A. Their victory was so natural because of their practice.
 - B. There was no trouble for the team to perform in Rio.

- C. The victory needed the devotion from every member.
- D. Hui Ruoqi's joining was unnecessary for the whole team.
3. Which country was the last one to serve as Chinese opponent before we won Olympic gold in Rio?
 - A. Serbia.
 - B. Brazil.
 - C. The Netherlands.
 - D. Greece.
4. What can be inferred from the sentence "the team begins its journey to the next Olympics"?
 - A. The team is going on the journey to the next Olympics by air.
 - B. Hui Ruoqi won the Most Valuable Player at the Rio Olympics.
 - C. They have fallen to the zero point after this victory.
 - D. There is still much work to do for the team in the future.

答案: 1~4 BCAD

II. 课文语法填空

The Chinese women's volleyball team is Olympic champion once again. After hearing the news, the crowd has gone wild. The joy and pride are on the faces of the Chinese fans. The Chinese players embrace each other, with tears of **1. happiness** (happy) in their eyes. The Chinese women's volleyball team holds **2. a** very special place in the nation's heart. But **3. winning** (win) gold in Rio shows the team's competitive spirit **4. vividly** (vivid). Every single member of the team gave their all to the fight, including Hui Ruoqi **5. who/that** had had heart surgery previously. Their perseverance paid **6. off** with an epic comeback against the defending champion Brazil in the quarter-finals. But fighting spirit alone was not enough **7. to guarantee**

(guarantee) victory. Strong team spirit also contributed greatly to their success. **8. Cooperation** (cooperate) between team members is essential. The Chinese women's volleyball team has **9. fought** (fight) their way through ups and downs. **10. Led** (lead) by coach Lang Ping, they have continued to aim high.

III. 阅读升华

- Which Olympic victory best represents Chinese women's volleyball team's competitive spirit?
Rio de Janeiro.
- What do you think of the opinion that a team needs to start from zero after winning a gold medal?
I think it makes sense. Humble attitude and fighting spirit are the key to winning again. (回答合理即可)

课后素养评价(十四)

I. 单词拼写

- His vivid (逼真的) description of his adventure in the forest made us want to have a try ourselves.
- When he opened it, he found it was empty and again his anger burst (爆发).
- They have assigned (分派) their best man to the job.
- He downed his opponent (对手) with three blows.
- The three goals we scored in the first half gave us a useful cushion against defeat (失败).
- The only way not to fall down into the valley is to seize (抓住) the big branch.
- Fortunately, a teacher impressed the value of cooperation (合作) on me.
- The battle for third place was intense (激烈的).
- He was knocked out of the tournament (锦标赛) in the third round.
- As far as I know, his father has just recovered from heart surgery (外科手术).

II. 短语填空

less than; be caught in; go wild; burst onto; pay off; thanks to; come true; the key to

- Thanks to your perseverance and intelligence, the work has been making great progress.

- Rap music, bursting onto the music scene in the 1970s, has been popular with many people.
- I am sure that your dream will come true one day as long as you work hard.
- I believe that the time spent in studying now will pay off in the future.
- Almost all the young people interviewed believed that perseverance is the key to success.
- The fans went wild as soon as the singer stepped onto the stage.
- The woman had her jewels stolen last night. Luckily, in less than 8 hours, the thief was caught.
- He was caught in the traffic jam; as a result, he was late for the meeting for half an hour.

III. 补全句子

- 有这么多作业要完成,他今天上午没有时间去购物。(with 复合结构)
With so much homework to finish, he won't have time to go shopping this morning.
- 如果给予更多的时间,我就能做得更好。(状语从句的省略形式)
Given more time, I'll be able to do it better.
- 在这起车祸中有六人丧生,包括两名孩子。(include)
Six people were killed in the car accident,

including two children.

4. 这张旧沙发只好用作备用床了。(serve as, spare)

The old couch had to serve as a spare bed.

5. 我相信我们每一个人都能为世界的未来作出贡献。(contribute to)

I believe that each of us can contribute to the future of the world.

IV. 七选五

Is Fresh Air Really Good for You?

We all grew up hearing people tell us to “go out and get some fresh air”. 1 According to recent studies, the answer is a big YES, if the air quality in your camping area is good.

2 If the air you're breathing is clean—which it would be if you're away from the smog of cities—then the air is filled with life-giving, energising oxygen. If you exercise out of doors, your body will learn to breathe more deeply, allowing even more oxygen to get to your muscles (肌肉) and your brain.

Recently, people have begun studying the connection between the natural world and healing (治愈). 3 In these places patients can go to be near nature during their recovery. It turns out that just looking at green, growing things can reduce stress, lower blood pressure and put people into a better mood (情绪). Greenery is good for us. Hospital patients who see tree branches out their window are likely to recover at a faster rate than patients who see buildings or sky instead. 4 It gives us a great feeling of peace.

5 While the sun's rays can age and harm our skin, they also give us beneficial Vitamin D. To make sure you get enough Vitamin D—but still protect your skin—put on sunscreen right as you head outside. It takes sunscreen about fifteen minutes to start working, and that's plenty of time for your skin to absorb a day's worth of Vitamin D.

- A. Fresh air cleans our lungs.
B. So what are you waiting for?
C. Being in nature refreshes us.
D. Another side benefit of getting fresh air is sunlight.
E. But is fresh air really as good for you as your mother always said?
F. Just as importantly, we tend to associate fresh air with health care.
G. All across the country, recovery centres have begun building Healing Gardens.

答案: 1~5 EAGCD

【微点写作】运动记事

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 我看到赛跑运动员们都在尽力奔跑。

I could see the runners running as fast as they could.

2. 不幸的是,他摔倒了,并且他的左脚严重受伤。

Unfortunately, he fell down and his left foot was badly hurt.

3. 我相信这一时刻将会是我们所有人的珍贵记忆。

I believe this moment will remain a precious memory for all of us.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 掌握场景描写的特征和方法,能够运用所学知识细致地描述场景并根据课后要求描述一段体育场景;
3. 联系自己的学习与生活,深入思考女排精神对自己的学习态度、生活态度和价值观的启示。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. She rushed downstairs and **burst** into the kitchen.
突然出现

2. In a sports contest, your **opponent** is the person who is playing against you. (竞争、比赛等的)对手
3. When a group of people **seize** a place, they take

control of it quickly and suddenly, using force.

夺取

4. In a game or sport, your **teammates** are the other members of your team.

队友

5. An **ingredient** of a situation is one of the essential parts of it.

要素

6. It was a good strategy to **defeat** the enemy.

打败

7. The BBC will cover all the major games of the **tournament**.

锦标赛

8. The basketball **nets** hung down from the ceiling at either end of the gymnasium.

球网

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>vivid</u> <i>adj.</i> 生动的, 逼真的	<u>vividly</u> <i>adv.</i> 生动地
	<u>vividness</u> <i>n.</i> 生动, 逼真
<u>assign</u> <i>v.</i> 分配, 分派	<u>assignment</u> <i>n.</i> 任务
<u>surgery</u> <i>n.</i> 外科手术	<u>surgeon</u> <i>n.</i> 外科医生
<u>steely</u> <i>adj.</i> 钢铁般的; 坚定的	<u>steel</u> <i>n.</i> 钢铁
	<u>cooperate</u> <i>v.</i> 合作, 协作
<u>cooperation</u> <i>n.</i> 合作, 协作	<u>cooperative</u> <i>adj.</i> 合作的, 协作的
	<u>intensely</u> <i>adv.</i> 强烈地; 紧张地
<u>intense</u> <i>adj.</i> 紧张的; 激烈的	<u>intensity</u> <i>n.</i> 强烈; 紧张

III. 补全短语

1. set off 出发, 动身; 使爆炸; 点燃
2. contribute to 促成, 有助于; 造成; 为……作贡献
3. burst onto 突然出现在……(指突然成功)
4. pay off 取得成功

5. on one's feet 站着; 恢复健康

6. come true 实现

7. go wild 变得发狂

8. be caught up in 对……入迷; 被缠住; 卷入

9. give one's all to the fight 全力以赴去战斗

10. ups and downs 起落; 荣辱

11. the key to ... 的关键

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: with + 名词 + 介词短语

And there we see the Chinese players embracing, with tears of happiness in their eyes ...

在那里, 我们看到中国队的队员们拥抱在一起, 眼里含着幸福的泪水……

2. 句型公式: 现在分词作状语

Every single member of the team gave their all to the fight, including Hui Ruoqi who had had heart surgery less than five months previously.

每个队员都全力以赴, 包括不到五个月前刚做完心脏手术的惠若琪。

3. 句型公式: thanks to...

Thanks to my teammates' hard efforts, I had the opportunity to show my spiking skills.

多亏了队友们的努力拼搏, 我才有机会展示我的扣球技术。

4. 句型公式: 过去分词作状语

Led by well-known Chinese volleyball player and coach Lang Ping, they have continued to aim high.

在中国著名排球运动员、中国女排主教练郎平的带领下, 她们为实现更高的目标而继续努力。

任务型课堂

1. burst v. 突然出现

(教材原文) In the 1980s, the team **burst** onto the international volleyball scene with several major world titles, and an amazing three-set victory over the United States in the final of the 1984 Los Angeles Olympics.

20世纪80年代, 中国女排赢得了多场世界大赛, 并在1984年洛杉矶奥运会的决赛中以惊人的三连胜击败了美国队, 在国际排坛大放异彩。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He **burst onto** the fashion scene in the early 1980s. 20世纪80年代初他突然在时尚界活跃起来。

The boy rushed downstairs and **burst into** the toilet. 男孩跑下楼, 冲进厕所。

Seeing her classmates **burst out laughing/burst into laughter** because of her foolish mistakes, she **burst into tears**.

看到同学们因为她犯了愚蠢的错误而放声大笑, 她突然大哭起来。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	burst _____ 突然出现在……(指突然成功) burst out 突然……起来, 突然发生 burst out doing ... = burst _____ + n. 突然……起来 burst in 闯进来; 突然插嘴 burst into 突然闯入; 情绪的突然爆发 burst with anger/joy 勃然大怒/乐不可支
探究结论	onto; into

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① The police burst in and arrested the gang who were gambling.
 ② Once he burst with anger, he would throw anything at hand out of the window.
 ③ Rita was seen as a new kind of star when she burst onto the scene in 1953.

(2) 一句多译

那只猴子的滑稽表情使每个人都大笑起来。

- ① The funny look of the monkey made everyone burst out laughing. (burst out)
 ② The funny look of the monkey made everyone burst into laughter. (burst into)

2. assign v. 分配, 分派; 指定, 指派(教材原文)... after it was **assigned** to the “group of death”, ...

……被分配到“死亡之组”后, ……

一感 读句子感悟用法

The teacher **has assigned each of us a holiday task**.
 = The teacher **has assigned a holiday task to each of us**.

老师给我们每个人都分配了假期的任务。

They've **assigned** the best man **to** the job.

他们指派了最优秀的人负责这项工作。

She was sent abroad on a difficult **assignment**.

她被派出国去执行一项艰巨的任务。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) assign sb. sth. = assign sth. _____ sb. 将某物分配给某人 assign sb. to sth./as sth. 指派某人负责某项工作/担任某一职务 sb. be assigned to do sth. 某人被派去做某事 (2) _____ n. [C, U] (分派的) 工作, 任务; [U] (工作等的) 分派, 布置
探究结论	(1) to (2) assignment

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

- ① Can you tell us about the most difficult assignment (assign) that you've had to do?
 ② A wise and experienced leader will assign a job to whoever is the most qualified.
 ③ He was assigned to investigate (investigate) a balloon accident.

3. defeat v. 战胜, 打败; 使受挫 n. 失败(教材原文) Next, the Chinese team **defeated** the Netherlands in the semi-final matches, having lost to them in the preliminaries.

接下来, 在半决赛中中国队击败了曾在预赛中惜败过的荷兰队。

一感 读句子感悟用法Before long he rebuilt a strong army and **defeated** the enemy.

不久之后, 他重新建立了一支强大的军队并打败了敌人。

Know the enemy and know yourself, and you can fight a hundred battles with no danger of **defeat**.

(谚语) 知己知彼, 百战不殆。

二探 抓要点探究归纳**【易混辨析】defeat, beat, win**

易混词	区别
defeat	意为“战胜, 击败”, 宾语是人, 多指在战争、比赛、竞争中战胜对手
beat	意为“战胜, 打败”, 宾语必须是对手, 常指在游戏、比赛中击败对手, 和 defeat 经常互换使用 另外, beat 还有“敲打; (心脏) 跳动”之意, 过去式为 beat, 过去分词为 beaten
win	意为“赢得; 获胜; 取得”, 作及物动词时, 后常接 match, debate, battle, prize, honour, election, respect 等作宾语

三评 多维度评价测试

选词填空: defeat, beat, win

Believe it or not, I defeated/beat my idol and won the match yesterday. Now my heart is still beating wildly.**4. contribute to 促成, 有助于; 造成; 为……做贡献**(教材原文) Strong team spirit also **contributed** greatly **to** their success.

强大的团队精神也极大地促成了她们的成功。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The study shows that having no breakfast can **contribute to** obesity.

这项研究表明不吃早饭会导致肥胖。

People have **contributed** some food and clothes **to** the poor in Africa.

人们向非洲的穷人捐了一些食物和衣服。

Brave soldiers **make contributions to** our country.

勇敢的士兵们为我们的国家作出了贡献。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) contribute... to... 向……捐献……; 向……投稿 (2) _____ n. 贡献; 捐献; 投稿 make a contribution/contributions to 为……作贡献
探究结论	(2) contribution

名师点拨

contribute to 和 make a contribution/contributions to 中的 to 都是介词, 后面要接名词、代词或动名词。

三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① Fortunately, practising English every day contributes to my improvement in English.

幸运的是, 每天练习英语有助于我英语水平的提高。

② The scientist was rewarded by the government for having made great contributions to the country.

这位科学家因对国家作出的巨大贡献而受到政府的奖励。

5. “go+形容词”结构

(教材原文) When the runners set off, everyone **went wild!**

当赛跑参赛者出发时, 每个人都发狂了!

一感 读句子感悟用法

Put the meat in the fridge so it doesn't **go bad.**

把肉放进冰箱里, 免得坏了。

When they found us guilty, I just **went blank.**

当他们判定我们有罪时, 我的脑子顿时一片空白。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	“go+形容词”结构是系表结构, go 可用作系动词, 意为“变成; 处于……状态”, 常接形容词作_____。表示状态的改变时, 该结构通常指由好变坏或由正常变为不正常。常见搭配: go _____/mad/blind 变坏/变疯/变瞎 go pale/red 变得苍白/变红 go hungry 挨饿 go _____ (脑子)突然一片空白
探究结论	表语; bad; blank

三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① With days passing on, my father's hair is going grey.

随着时间的流逝, 我爸爸的头发正变得灰白。

② Meat will go bad easily in hot weather if it isn't put in the fridge.

天热时, 肉如果不放在冰箱里, 就很容易变质。

③ Suddenly the screen went blank a moment ago. 刚才屏幕上突然一片空白。

④ Something went wrong with her computer and most of her information stored in it couldn't be recovered.

她的电脑突然坏了, 而且里面存储的大部分信息都无法恢复了。

写作探究

运动记事

一、写作指导

运动记事是记录个体所经历过的运动赛事的一种短文形式, 写作时一般要注意以下几点:

1. 规范的格式

一般分三段进行叙述。第一段简单介绍背景, 第二段讲述所见所闻, 第三段表明态度以及受

到的启发。

2. 正确的人称

该文体是对运动赛事的记录, 讲述他人参加比赛的趣事以及自己受到的启发, 因此人称多用第一人称和第三人称。

3. 正确的时态

因为短文是对比赛当天的回忆,所以时态多用一般过去时。

二、典题示例

今年十月你所在的城市举办了马拉松比赛。你有幸观看了比赛,请就你的所见所闻用英语写一篇运动记事。内容包括:

1. 对比赛的简单介绍;
2. 你的所见所闻;
3. 你的感想。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

参考词汇:马拉松 marathon;活力 vigour

三、审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以一般过去时为主
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	1. 简单介绍你所在城市的马拉松比赛的情况 2. 描述在马拉松比赛中让你印象最深的事 3. 表达你的感受和比赛对你的启发

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇和表达

- ① add vigour to 给……增加活力
- ② warm up 热身
- ③ spare no effort to do sth. 竭尽全力做某事
- ④ with great passion 以极大的热情
- ⑤ perseverance and bravery 毅力和勇气
- ⑥ achieve success 取得成功
- ⑦ be determined to do sth. 决定做某事
- ⑧ participate in 参加

(二)完成句子

- ① On October 10th, the event of a marathon was held in our city (在我们的城市举办).
- ② It helped to add vigour to our city (为我们的城市注入活力).
- ③ As soon as I arrived there, I saw so many players warming up (热身) for the event.
- ④ The perseverance and bravery helped the players to achieve success (取得成功) in the event.
- ⑤ I was determined to participate in (决心参加) the marathon next year.

(三)句式升级

- ① 用 which 引导的定语从句连接(二)中的①②句

On October 10th, the event of a marathon was held

in our city, which helped to add vigour to our city.

- ② 用“on doing...”结构升级(二)中的③句

On arriving there, I saw so many players warming up for the event.

- ③ 用强调句型改写(二)中的④句

It was the perseverance and bravery that helped the players to achieve success in the event.

(四)连句成篇

On October 10th, the event of a marathon was held in our city, which helped to add vigour to our city.

On arriving there, I saw so many players warming up for the event. When they started out, they spared no effort to reach the finish line. Nearly three hours later, the first player got to the finish line, who finished such a difficult task with great passion.

It was the perseverance and bravery that helped the players to achieve success in the event. I was determined to participate in the marathon next year.

五、学以致用

上周末你们学校举行了一场篮球比赛,你作为观众出席了该比赛。请就你所观看的比赛用英语写一篇文章,内容包括:

1. 对比赛的简单介绍;
2. 你的所见所闻;
3. 你的感想。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

【参考范文】

There was a basketball match between our school and another senior high school last Sunday. A large number of students came to the basketball court, cheering for our team.

All the players were quite energetic and got ready to fight for the match. When the match began, players of our team performed very well. When the match was coming to an end, the scores were so close that all the players went all out to win the match. In the end, a player of our team shot the ball into the basket, and our team won first place.

How wonderful the match was!

课后素养评价(十五)

I. 单句语法填空

- You will need to complete three written assignments (assign) per semester.
- She always serves us with a big dinner when we gather together.
- He tells stories very vividly (vivid) and holds his audience spell-bound.
- We would like to see closer cooperation (cooperate) between parents and schools.
- All my hard work paid off in the end, and I finally passed the exam.
- The intensity (intense) of the work left little room for personal grief or anxiety.
- A major new talent who is known for this novel has burst onto the literary scene.
- Knowing he was defeated (defeat), he left feeling shamed.

II. 完成句子

- When passing by the playground, I saw him playing basketball with his classmates.
经过操场的时候,我看到他和他的同班同学们正在一起打篮球。
- Having worked there for 30 years, Haydn moved to London, where he was very successful.
在那里工作了三十年后,海顿移居伦敦,并在那儿大获成功。
- Walking along the street, he met an old friend.
在大街上走时,他遇到了一位老朋友。
- It was so cold a day/such a cold day that there was nobody in the street.
天气非常寒冷,以至于街上没有人。

III. 语法填空

Last weekend our school held a sports meeting.

- Realising (realise) it was our last high school sports meeting, we decided to make 2. it an unforgettable experience for all of us.

We first attended the opening parade, for 3. which our class had made a lot of 4. preparations (prepare). To our 5. excitement (excite), our parade performance was a great success. After the

parade, the games started. My classmates attended various events such as running, the high jump and the long jump. Due to the hard training they 6. had done (do) before, their performances were very 7. impressive (impress). On the stand, my classmates applauded and cheered for the athletes, some raising their cameras to capture the exciting moments. Finally, the result 8. was announced (announce). It was amazing that our class won the second place. Our efforts paid off! Cup in hand, we took 9. a picture together.

I believe this sports meeting will remain a precious memory for all of us 10. as time goes by.

IV. 写作

第一节 书面表达

党的二十大报告提出了广泛开展全民健身活动的要求,青少年要加强体育锻炼,促进身心全面发展。假定你是李华,你的美国网友 Harry 发邮件询问你最喜欢的运动。请你根据所给提示回信,向他介绍你最喜欢的运动——游泳。

- 何时开始喜欢游泳;
- 现在练习游泳的情况;
- 你的理想。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;

3. 信的开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Harry,

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

“Do you forget to bring your homework to school?” my maths teacher asked. I nodded my head and said in a low voice, “Yes, sir.” What a mistake I had made! I had completed my maths homework. But when I headed for school, I forgot to put it into

my schoolbag. Now my homework is still lying on the desk at home.

“You will have to get a zero then,” my maths teacher said. I was shocked. I had never got a zero in a maths class before. But the school had rules, and the teacher had to let everyone follow them. I was immediately worried about my final maths average, which was based on my homework and the tests. Would I get a C or even a D at the end of the term? If so, what should I do?

My next class was a gym class. As I walked down the hall with my classmates, all those feelings rushed out in hot tears. I wiped them away as quickly as I could. But when we entered the gym and sat down on the floor, it was clear to everyone around me that I had been crying.

My gym teacher, Ms Brown, was an athletic teacher, often with a smile on her face. Ms Brown was nice and compassionate (有同情心的). She loved her students and often came to help if the students were in trouble.

During that gym class, my mind was all about the maths homework and I was worried about my final maths average. So I failed to devote my attention to Ms Brown's direction. And clearly, I was sad. I guessed that Ms Brown found there was something wrong with me. When it was near the end of the gym class, she walked to me.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

She sat down to comfort me. _____

I felt relaxed and decided to work harder at maths. _____

读后续写技能养成 || 环境描写——晴好天气

「技能概述」

1. 环境描写——晴好天气

是指对晴天、阳光、蓝天、白云和风等天气状况的描写。

2. 续写技巧

可以根据不同的季节或不同的地域对晴好天

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear Harry,

Nice to receive your email. I'd like to tell you about my favourite sport—swimming.

At the age of six, I began to learn to swim from my parents, who are good at it. Now I often go swimming with my friends in my spare time. Besides, I go to sports school every weekend, where I have learned many swimming skills.

My favourite swimmer is Alice, who won two gold medals at the Olympic Games at the age of 16. I hope I can swim as well as her and have the opportunity to take part in the Olympic Games in the future.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

She sat down to comfort me. “Are you okay?” she asked. I told her about my trouble. Then Ms Brown said to me, “We all make mistakes.” She told me what happened to her several days ago. I was surprised that she also made mistakes since I had thought she was perfect. She told me the world didn't end because I got a zero in a maths class and encouraged me to study hard.

I felt relaxed and decided to work harder at maths. In maths classes, I paid more attention to the teacher's lectures. After reaching home after school, I would do the maths homework more carefully. And I left notes to remind me not to forget to bring my homework to school again. At the end of that term, based on my good daily performances and test scores, my final maths average was an A. This experience taught me a lesson: as long as we learn from mistakes, we're making progress.

气进行描写,并结合亮度、温度、湿度或天、地、风、光等进行描写;还可以借助对树木、花草、虫鱼等的状态和行为描写来衬托晴好天气。

「范例体悟」

It was Saturday morning, and all the summer world was bright and fresh, and filled with life.

There was a song in every heart. There was cheer on every face. The air was filled with the pleasant smell of flowers. Cardiff Hill, beyond the village and above it, was green with trees and looked beautiful.

找出文中有关晴好天气的环境描写。

bright and fresh; the air was filled with the pleasant smell of flowers; green with trees and looked beautiful

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. sunny *adj.* 明媚的
2. clear *adj.* 晴朗的
3. blue *adj.* 湛蓝的
4. warm *adj.* 温暖的
5. bright *adj.* 明亮的
6. brilliant/glorious *adj.* 灿烂的
7. gentle/soft *adj.* 轻柔的
8. mild *adj.* 温和的
9. sunshine/sunlight *n.* 阳光
10. shine *v.* 闪耀
11. dazzling *adj.* 耀眼的
12. clear up 天气放晴
13. be bathed in/be blessed with/enjoy bright/brilliant/glorious sunshine 沐浴着/享受着明媚的/灿烂的阳光
14. be flooded with 充满了
15. the sunshine shone through ... on/in ... 阳光穿过……照耀在……上
16. break through 冲破

II. 佳句背诵

1. The day was bright, with a fresh breeze blowing.
天气晴朗,微风习习。
2. The clear sky is as blue as the calm sea.
晴朗的天蓝得像平静的大海。
3. The sun was shining and birds were singing.
阳光照耀,鸟儿啼啭。
4. The place is flooded with sunlight.
这个地方到处是阳光。
5. The sun melted the snow.
太阳融化了白雪。
6. The field is covered in a golden flood of sunlight.
田野被一片金色的阳光笼罩。
7. The sun broke through around lunchtime.

午饭时分,太阳破云而出。

8. The sun shone through a break in the clouds.
阳光透过云层的缝隙照下来。
9. A ray of sunshine came straight into my room.
一缕阳光径直照进我的房间。
10. The sun glared out of the blue sky.
太阳在蔚蓝色的天空中发出耀眼的光芒。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. Spring breeze draws the curtain of clouds and the sunshine floods into the classrooms.
春风吹开了云的幕布,阳光涌进了教室。
2. The whole world blossoms with one beam of the sunshine.
一束阳光让整个世界绽放。
3. The sun began to rise slowly in the sky, bathing the mountain in golden light.
太阳开始在天空中缓缓升起,给山披上了一层金纱。
4. The sky is clear blue now, and the sun has cast glorious sunshine down on the meadows, banks and woods.
现在天空湛蓝,太阳将灿烂夺目的阳光洒向草原、河岸和树林。
5. Familiar smells of the earth rose up to greet her.
熟悉的泥土气息向她迎面扑来。
6. The sun looked at her with a glowing smile and the flowers nodded merrily towards her.
太阳带着灿烂的笑容看着她,花儿也朝她开心地点点头。
7. The breeze patted her on the face, warm and comfortable.
微风轻抚着她的脸庞,温暖而舒适。

II. 用环境描写——晴好天气的方法完成语段

Spring, 1. like an amazing artist (像一位了不起的艺术家), paints our campus with richer and deeper colours. 2. Golden sunshine, delicate green leaves and a sea of fragrant flowers crowd into my eyes (金色的阳光,娇嫩的绿叶,一片芬芳的花海涌入我的眼帘). Walking into the painting, I am totally drunk with the twittering of birds. Soon 3. the delicate air and soft raindrops (清香的空气和柔软的雨滴) melt my heart. Oh, I'm lost in the masterpiece of spring!

第三单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Welcome to Pocono Whitewater

There's something fun here at Pocono Whitewater for every level of adventurer! We have mild to wild whitewater rafting (漂流), family trips and birdwatching boating... Choose one adventure now... It's up to you! We have trips available daily. Give us a call today!

Dam Release Whitewater Rafting

Experience the best whitewater on the Lehigh River! Surrounded by forests and mountains, you will enjoy 12 miles and 5 hours of Class III whitewater rafting and outstanding scenery. This is a fun and thrilling trip that everyone from aged 12 and up can do! While paddling (划桨) in the swift water, you'll shout and laugh.

Dam Release Whitewater Rafting Rates:

★Individual (aged 12 & up): \$ 61.00

★Group (at least 8 people): \$ 31.00

Rates Include: all necessary rafting equipment, life jacket, free parking, bus service to/from the river and professional river guides.

Family Style Whitewater Rafting

Bring along the whole family this summer and enjoy 8 miles and 5 hours long of Class I whitewater rafting. Mild water of the Lehigh River is simply perfect for beginners, school groups and kids aged 4 and older. This is just perfect for enjoying the passing scenery, kicking your feet over the edge of the raft, or swimming in the river!

One of the most unique things about this trip is a free riverside barbeque (烧烤)! Our workers will cook and serve you a picnic lunch—hot dogs, potato salad, fruit, etc. The classic family picnic!

Family Style Whitewater Rafting Rates:

★Adult: \$ 39.00

★Child (aged 4—14): \$ 33.00

★Group (at least 8 people): \$ 30.00

Rates Include: all necessary rafting equipment, life jacket, free parking, bus service to/from the river and a barbeque lunch. However, river guides are not included.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇广告。文章介绍了两种水上活动。

1. Which of the following people is suitable for Dam Release Whitewater Rafting?

- A. A 4-year-old boy. B. A 6-year-old girl.
C. An 8-year-old girl. D. A 14-year-old girl.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Dam Release Whitewater Rafting** 部分中的“*This is a fun and thrilling trip that everyone from aged 12 and up can do!*”可知,十二岁以及十二岁以上的人可以参加此项漂流运动。故选 D。

2. If ten college students are to participate in the Dam Release Whitewater Rafting, how much money will be paid in total?

- A. \$ 310. B. \$ 330.
C. \$ 390. D. \$ 610.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Dam Release Whitewater Rafting** 部分中的“*Group (at least 8 people): \$ 31.00*”可知,十个大学生可以买团体票,31美元/人,十个人共 310 美元。故选 A。

3. In which aspect is Family Style Whitewater Rafting unique?

- A. It allows people to swim in the river.
B. It provides good scenery.
C. It provides a barbeque lunch for free.
D. It offers all necessary rafting equipment.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Family Style Whitewater Rafting** 部分中的“*One of the most unique things about this trip is a free riverside barbeque (烧烤)!*”可知,这项漂流活动的独特之处是提供免费的烧烤午餐。故选 C。

B

Before the dark cloud cast a shadow over my life, I was a 39-year-old woman who enjoyed travelling, listening to jazz music and reading. Then

my whole life changed. On November 10th 2019, I awoke from sleep with the worst headache of my life. I was rushed to hospital and diagnosed with brain aneurysm (动脉瘤)! After emergency surgery, I lay on the bed feeling shocked and lost. Yet, I knew I had to face the music.

Nine months later, my doctor recommended I start cycling to help flood my brain with oxygen, which benefited my physical recovery. I hadn't used one in almost two decades, so I was scared. However, with the support of my wonderful cheerleader, Brian, my husband, I got on a bike cautiously. After only three minutes, I was tired and my hands were shaking. I felt powerless and wanted to give up, but Brian encouraged me with smiling eyes. I rode for a few minutes, stopped to rest and rode again. Little by little I could ride continuously for ten minutes! My husband joked I deserved the first prize!

Now, I ride whenever I have the energy. Usually, I get on the bike a few times a week. Last year I participated in a benefit ride for the local school. I enjoy travelling internationally, but haven't had the opportunity to do so since my surgeries. I hope to one day be able to ride in another country. Until then, though, I'll participate annually in the Good Old Summertime Classic and continue my local routes.

Biking not only restores my body but also my soul. It feels empowering to take charge of my body and life again. I know I will ride on.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。作者被诊断为脑动脉瘤,并做了手术。术后医生建议作者开始骑自行车。这能促进作者的大脑供氧,有利于身体恢复。因此作者在丈夫的鼓励下开始骑自行车,最终身体得到了恢复。

4. What does the underlined phrase “face the music” in Paragraph 1 refer to?

- A. Enjoy jazz music. B. Accept the fact.
C. Lose the feeling. D. Have the surgery.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线短语的前文“I was rushed to hospital and diagnosed with brain aneurysm (动脉瘤)! After emergency surgery, I lay on the bed feeling shocked and lost.”和画线短语所在的句子“Yet, I knew I had to face the music.”可知,作者被诊断出脑动脉瘤,并做了手术,虽然作者感到很震惊和失落,但是作者不得不接受这一事实。由此可知,画线短语“face the music”指的是接受事实。故选 B。

5. How was the author's first biking after the surgery?

- A. She quit halfway.
B. She felt disappointed.
C. She made it.
D. She got the first prize.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“However, with the support of my wonderful cheerleader, Brian, my husband, I got on a bike cautiously. After only three minutes, I was tired and my hands were shaking. I felt powerless and wanted to give up, but Brian encouraged me with smiling eyes. I rode for a few minutes, stopped to rest and rode again. Little by little I could ride continuously for ten minutes!”可知,作者在手术后第一次骑自行车很成功。故选 C。

6. What does the author expect to do for the future?

- A. To help the local school.
B. To go cycling abroad.
C. To have enough energy.
D. To participate in local routes.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“I hope to one day be able to ride in another country.”可知,作者希望将来能在国外骑行。故选 B。

7. What can we learn from the author's story?

- A. One is never too old to learn.
B. Love breaks down barriers.
C. Exercise is the best medicine.
D. Happiness lies in good health.

C 推理判断题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段中的“Biking not only restores my body but also my soul. It feels empowering to take charge of my body and life again.”可知,作者被诊断出脑动脉瘤,并做了手术。术后医生建议作者开始骑自行车。这能促进作者的大脑供氧,有利于身体恢复。因此作者在丈夫的鼓励下开始骑自行车,慢慢地作者的身体恢复了。从作者的故事我们可以得知,运动是最好的药。故选 C。

C

Whether you prefer solo dancing or being involved in a more formalised programme, dancing offers the obvious plus to your physical health. You're not only moving your body in a rhythmic way and expressing feelings but also burning calories in your body and getting a workout for sure.

In a recent study, researchers compared the effects of walking, stretching and dancing on the white and grey matter of the aging brain. The result showed dancing had the significantly positive effect.

In the experiment, after volunteers in their 60s and 70s with healthy brains didn't show signs of cognitive (认知的) disorder, researchers placed them in three groups at will. One group walked, another group stretched and did balance training and the last group learned country dancing. The arrangements of the dancing became progressively more challenging over time. They all did the assigned activity for one hour a day, three times a week. After a period of six months, the volunteers' brains were re-scanned and compared to their brains when they had begun their voluntary work.

Agnieszka Burzynska, the study's lead author who is currently a neuroscientist and director of the Brain Lab at Colorado State University, found only one group showed a memory improvement—the country dancers. The participants who learned country dancing now had richer white matter in the part of the brain that processed memory. White matter usually breaks down as a person ages, which may lead to cognitive decline. Dancing, therefore, protected the brain from aging-caused neurodegeneration. So, dancing is not just an aerobic activity good for your physical health. It helps your brain, too!

Country dancing, ballroom dancing, tango and waltz are all done with others. When you take part in these dances, you're involved in a beneficial social activity as well. You are also cognitively motivating your brain as you learn the steps of the dances. Dancing therefore might be one of the best physical activities you can choose for brain health.

【语篇解读】跳舞是一项有氧运动。它不仅对身体健康有好处,还有助于脑健康。

8. What's the purpose of Paragraph 1?

- A. To add background material.
- B. To introduce the topic of the text.
- C. To raise questions about exercise.
- D. To present experimental conditions.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可推知,第一段的目的是引出话题:舞蹈的好处。故选 B。

9. What can we learn about the volunteers in the

experiment?

- A. They were grouped at random.
- B. They were under cognitive decline.
- C. They were all asked to learn dancing.
- D. They were all born in the 1960s and 1970s.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*In the experiment, after volunteers in their 60s and 70s with healthy brains didn't show signs of cognitive (认知的) disorder, researchers placed them in three groups at will.*”可知,志愿者是被随机分组的。故选 A。

10. What did the researchers mainly intend to prove through the experiment?

- A. The brain function of the volunteers.
- B. The cognitive disorder of the volunteers.
- C. The relationship between age and dancing.
- D. The effect of dancing on the volunteers' brains.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“*So, dancing is not just an aerobic activity good for your physical health. It helps your brain, too!*”可推知,研究者通过这个实验想证明跳舞对志愿者的大脑的影响。故选 D。

11. Which of the following is the best title for the text?

- A. How Dancing Affects People's Lifestyle
- B. Why Dancing Is the Best Social Activity
- C. How Dancing Helps People's Brain Health
- D. Why Country Dancing Is Beneficial to People's Health

C 标题归纳题。根据最后一段中的“*Dancing therefore might be one of the best physical activities you can choose for brain health.*”以及全文内容可知,本文主要介绍了跳舞不仅对身体健康有好处,还有助于大脑的健康。由此可知,C项可以作为本文的最佳标题。故选 C。

D

Kindergarten outside? For more than recess (放假,休息)? Yes, indeed. It's part of a growing worldwide trend towards outdoor education. The schools are called Forest Kindergartens.

The numbers are small so far in the US, but the idea is well established in Europe, with schools in Scotland, England and Switzerland. By far the most such schools are in Germany, which has more than 400 Waldkindergartens.

Some schools feature several hours of outdoor

schooling. This is certainly the case with the Waldorf School of Saratoga Springs. Children attending that particular school enjoy a good amount of outdoor education each day, rain or shine. They know to come with layers of clothing because they know that they will be venturing out on the nearby Hemlock Trail to learn more about the natural world around them. Some lessons are focused on nature; others are academic topics delivered in a natural setting. In all cases, students are active—not sitting at desks or on mats on the floor but walking, running, jumping, solving problems like how to get the mud off the bottoms of their shoes before their parents find out.

Other schools are all outdoors, all the time. This is the case with the Cedar Song Nature School, on Vashon Island, Wash. Students at this school come dressed for the weather, all right, but they spend their whole three-hour day outdoors, in a private five-acre forest, doing all manner of physical activities but also learning much more than “just what nature has to offer”.

Seriously, the focus is on activity at these schools. Even lessons on words and numbers involve the children's being active because the teacher leads the class to an outdoor “classroom”. All of this activity just has to be good for the children's physical systems as well, and studies have supported just that conclusion over the years. Other studies have shown that graduates of Waldkindergartens show a higher ability to learn when they progress through their academic careers.

In a time when so many children are being classified as obese because of their long-time watching television and playing video-games, these outdoor schools serve as a reminder that before the arrival of the “screen mentality”, children learned just as much, if not more, from opening their eyes to the world around them.

【语篇解读】文章介绍了一种当今非常流行的教学方式,即 Forest Kindergartens 户外教学方式。

12. In which country is the idea of Forest Kindergartens best established?

- A. England. B. America.
C. Germany. D. Switzerland.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的最后一句可知,目前这种学校最多的是德国,有四百多所。故选 C。

13. What does a Forest Kindergarten pay the most attention to?

- A. Textbooks.
B. Classroom activities.
C. Outdoor activities.
D. Academic achievements.

C 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段第一句可知,这样的学校关注的是活动;随后该段谈到,在这样的学校里,一切学习都是围绕活动展开的,而这样的学校开展活动的场所是户外。故选 C。

14. Why did the writer mention two schools' examples?

- A. To explain why we have Forest Kindergartens.
B. To tell the readers how Forest Kindergartens work.
C. To tell the readers about two best Forest Kindergartens.
D. To explain what can be learned in Forest Kindergartens.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段和第四段的内容可知,文章介绍了两所这样的学校,且介绍了这两所学校是如何开展学习活动的。故可推知,作者举这两所学校的例子,是为了告诉读者这样的学校是如何运作的。故选 B。

15. What does the writer want to express by the last paragraph?

- A. Something must be done to help students learn.
B. Outdoor schooling is necessary for children's health.
C. Children are sure to learn more in Forest Kindergartens.
D. Children should be classified in an outdoor “classroom”.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的第一句可知,在这个有这么多的学生由于长时间看电视或玩电子游戏而被认定为肥胖的时代,户外学校是一个提醒。由此可推知,作者写这一段是为了告诉我们,户外学校这种教学模式对孩子们的健康是必要的。故选 B。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Running is the best way to keep our body fit

and healthy. Those who want to burn fat and lose weight can run regularly in the morning. 16

When you run in the gentle morning atmosphere, you will get the psychological benefits along with the physical benefits. Running is more effective and also less time-consuming. Besides, in your busy day, morning is the free time to take some exercise.

17 Dr Scott Collier from the State University did a study on some groups of people of 40—60 years old. They walked or ran at 7 a.m., 1 p.m. and 7 p.m. From this study, he saw that the group of early exercisers experienced 10 percent drop in their blood pressure. So, we see that early morning run benefits us for the long term.

Another benefit of running is the stress relief. Every day running in the morning will help you to keep your mind fresh to start your daily work. 18 It will save you one step ahead to reach your goal. It provides you with a positive mood for a day.

Running is the best way to lose weight. But you should add some other training to build your muscle and burn fat. Some elite athletes say that when you wake up in the morning, you should first run for a while. 19

Most of the busy people do not have enough time to communicate properly with the family and social people. 20 The morning exercise such as running and walking gives us the opportunity to meet our neighbours. We can talk with them in the morning.

- A. Then start other physical exercise.
- B. Morning exercise lowers blood pressure.
- C. So, you can start your day with a cheerful mind.
- D. So, try for a few weeks, and you will see your progress.
- E. Morning run forces you to wake up early in the morning.
- F. We miss many social events for our work or other purposes.
- G. We cannot describe the benefits of running in the morning in words.

答案: 16~20 GBCAF

III. 完形填空 (共 15 小题; 每小题 1 分, 满分 15 分)

In 490 BCE about 10,000 Greeks fought against the Persian army at a place called Marathon. It is 21 that the Persians were ten times as 22 as the Greeks. However, where there is a will, there is a way. 23 the brave attack of the

Greeks, the Persians were badly beaten and 24 away from the plain of Marathon. When the Persians had run away, a soldier, who was the most famous 25 in Athens, was 26 to carry the good news to the city and he was also asked to march at full speed.

Although he had fought through the battle and 27 many wounds, the soldier at once started off towards the 28 city. 29 was twenty-six and a quarter miles from the plain of Marathon to the Marketplace of Athens, 30 there the elders of Athens had gathered 31 for news. He ran and ran over 32 and across plains. As he went on, his lips became 33 and his breathing hard, but when he thought of the 34 of the people of Athens on hearing the news, he 35 harder than ever.

At last the elders of Athens heard a great shout and saw a soldier staggering (蹒跚) towards them. “Rejoice! Rejoice! We won!” said the soldier, and fell down dead.

In honour of this noble soldier and athlete, we have the Marathon race in the modern Olympic Games, where the athletes run this same distance.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了现代奥运会的马拉松比赛是为了纪念一个从战场上跑到雅典传送捷报的希腊士兵而举办的。

21. A. designed B. said
C. told D. reported

B 根据后文中的“that the Persians were ten times as 22 as the Greeks”可知,据说,波斯军队的人数是希腊人的十倍。故选 B。

22. A. little B. few
C. many D. much

C 句意:据说,波斯军队的人数是希腊人的十倍。故选 C。

23. A. In B. To
C. Before D. By

D 根据后文中的“the brave attack of the Greeks, the Persians were badly beaten and 24 away from the plain of Marathon”可知,在希腊人的英勇进攻下,波斯人遭到重创,被赶出了马拉松平原。by the attack of 表示“在……的进攻下”。故选 D。

24. A. taken B. driven
C. got D. rolled

B 根据语境可知,波斯人遭到重创,被赶出了马拉松平原。故选 B。

25. A. player B. officer
C. soldier D. runner
D 根据语境可知,这个士兵是雅典最出名的长跑运动员。故选 D。
26. A. advised B. ordered
C. succeeded D. allowed
B 根据下文中的“to carry the good news to the city and he was also asked to march at full speed”可知,这个士兵被命令全速奔跑,把波斯军队撤退的好消息带到雅典城里。故选 B。
27. A. accepted B. harmed
C. received D. formed
C 根据前文中的“he had fought through the battle and”可知,这个士兵参加了战斗并受了很多伤。故选 C。
28. A. far B. nearby
C. close D. distant
D 根据语境可知,尽管受了很多伤,这个士兵还是向遥远的城市出发了。故选 D。
29. A. This B. That
C. There D. It
D 根据语境及常识可知,从马拉松平原到雅典市集有 26.25 英里。用 It 作形式主语。故选 D。
30. A. and B. but
C. or D. so
A 根据语境可知,雅典的长者聚在那里等待前线的消息,此处表示并列。故选 A。
31. A. asking B. calling
C. waiting D. looking
C 根据语境可知,雅典的长者聚在那里等待前线的消息。故选 C。
32. A. railways B. hills
C. rivers D. highways
B 根据后文中的“and across plains”可知,他越过山丘,穿过平原。故选 B。
33. A. fancy B. wet
C. red D. dry
D 根据语境可知,长时间的奔跑使他的嘴唇变干裂。故选 D。
34. A. joy B. sadness
C. disappointment D. surprise
A 根据后文中的“of the people of Athens on hearing the news”可知,想到雅典市民听到这个消息的喜悦,他就更加努力奔跑了。故选 A。
35. A. walked B. ran
C. pretended D. volunteered
B 根据前文可知,他是跑着去雅典的。故选 B。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Every four years, thousands of highly trained and talented athletes take part in the Olympic Games, **36. hoping** (hope) to be recognised as the best of the best.

The Olympic Games have **37. a** history of about 3,000 years. The ancient Olympic Games began in the year 776 BCE and eventually died out around the year 393. During the 12 centuries, the Olympics were held only in Greece and only Greek men were allowed **38. to participate** (participate). After that, the ancient Olympic Games stopped. More than 1,500 years later, a Frenchman, **39. named** (name) Pierre de Coubertin, brought the Olympics back to life. He hoped that people of different racial origins and from different cultures could create a peaceful world by joint efforts. It was in 1896 **40. that** the modern Olympics were first held in Athens. For over a century, both male and female athletes have devoted **41. themselves** (they) to achieving sporting excellence and pushing the boundaries of human achievement.

Among the well-known athletes, Cassius Clay and Carl Lewis left a deep impression on people. Their remarkable achievements not only demonstrate great talent, hard work and devotion, but also sportsmanship, **42. which** has motivated other athletes from all over the world.

China has also made great **43. contributions** (contribute) to the development of the Olympics. Since the 1984 Los Angeles Olympics, the upward trend for Chinese sport **44. has been** (be) unstoppable. The 2008 Beijing Olympics were held **45. successfully** (success) and dozens of remarkable athletes came to public attention. Just as Coubertin believed, “With the Olympic Games, each generation celebrates its advent, its joy of living, its faith in the future, its ambition and its will to ascend.”

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 书面表达(满分 15 分)

假设你是晨光中学的李津。英国友好学校将派教师来你校参加为期一周的暑期交流活动。在活动期间,英方教师 Chris 将做一个有关西方艺术的讲座,现就讲座内容征求你校学生的意见。请根据提示给 Chris 写一封电子邮件:

1. 你喜欢的讲座话题(从音乐、美术、舞蹈中任选其一);
2. 选择该话题的原因及关于该话题你感兴趣的内容;
3. 希望从中有所收获。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Once there was a little girl named Emily. Although her singing was very pleasant to hear, lacking of courage, she never dared to sing in front of strangers.

One summer, the neighbourhood where she lived would hold a singing competition. Her best friend, Lucy, came to invite her to participate in the competition, but Emily said, "I'm afraid to take part in it." Her mother said, "It's okay, just do it bravely." Emily followed her mother's advice and decided to give it a try. The day came. Emily and Lucy went to the competition site. But she was too timid (胆小的) to walk onto the stage. She had been waiting until others finished singing. She shakily (颤抖地) forced herself to stand on the stage. She started to sing, but her voice was so low. What's worse, she was so nervous that she forgot the lyrics after singing a few words. Being laughed at by others, embarrassed and shy, she ran away from the stage.

Some naughty boys ran after her and said, "Emily, coward (胆小鬼)! Emily, coward!" Emily didn't argue with them. What she wanted was to go back home as quickly as she could. Finally, she rushed into the house, hugged her mum and cried sadly.

"Well, my poor girl. Don't cry. Tell me what happened to you," asked her mum. Emily looked up at her mother and told her what she had experienced.

Listening to her, her mum cupped her face in her hands and said, "It doesn't matter, girl. As long as you practise singing more in front of strangers, you will become braver little by little. So, my girl, don't be beaten by a failure. You can go out to practise singing every day. No matter who is listening to you, go on singing and never stop. I believe there will be a harvest for you."

注意:续写 150 词左右。

Emily listened to her mother carefully and followed her mum's suggestion. _____

Going on singing, she walked into the park, where many people were singing and dancing. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear Chris,

I'm Li Jin, a student at Chenguang High School. Hearing that you'll give us a lecture about Western art and want to know about which topic to cover, I feel an urge to make my voice heard.

Personally, I like dancing and have been taking lessons on dancing in my spare time, so I want to learn what dance is popular among students in England. Meanwhile, I also hope to learn some folk dances from you in your lecture, which will help me improve my dancing.

Thank you for your time.

Yours,

Li Jin

第二节 读后续写

Emily listened to her mother carefully and followed her mum's suggestion. The next day, she began to practise singing outside. Gradually, her courage became greater and greater, and the sound of her singing was also louder and louder. Months later, she could sing as she was walking. A naughty boy who had laughed at her before cried to her, "Emily, coward! Emily, coward!" However, she chose to ignore his behaviour and continued to sing her songs.

Going on singing, she walked into the park, where many people were singing and dancing. Hearing her beautiful voice, some people stopped to listen to her singing and clapped for her. A grandma smiled at her and said, "Oh, little girl, you sing really well!" Emily said thanks to her. Emily felt pleased that she could sing confidently in front of strangers. The second year, the neighbourhood held the singing competition again. This time, Emily walked onto the stage bravely, and her loud and beautiful voice of singing moved all the people. They all cheered for her, including those boys who had laughed at her. Her mother was delighted to see the timid girl had been a brave one.

Unit 4

Meeting the muse

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点;
2. 通过略读和精读掌握课文大意,了解文中涉及的艺术家的著名作品、作品特色、艺术灵感的来源及他们对艺术的理解;
3. 通过了解列奥纳多·达·芬奇的创作之路和灵感来源,提高观察力和听力理解能力;
4. 理解名言的含义,初步感知这些名人对灵感的理解及他们灵感的来源。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

1. motion *n.* 动,运动
2. compose *v.* 作(曲)
3. quote *n.* 引文,引语
4. folk *adj.* 民间的,民俗的
5. tale *n.* 故事
6. turn to 转向;求助于
7. come to life 使……活跃起来
8. set... in motion 使……开始
9. bring out 使显示;出版;生产;解释;说明

10. on display 展览,公开展出

11. be known for 因……而闻名

(二)阅读词汇和表达

1. float *v.* 浮,漂
2. peacock *n.* (雄)孔雀
3. crouch *v.* 蹲下;蹲伏
4. princess *n.* 公主
5. ethnic *adj.* 民族的
6. Dutch *adj.* 荷兰的
7. pass down 传下来;遗传
8. so as to do 为了做……
9. go deeper into 深入到……
10. folk tale 民间故事

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
The introduction part		Here we find out more about the influences behind the successes of three very different 1. artists .
Para. 1—Para. 3	A 2. visual artist: Florentijn Hofman	Florentijn Hofman's large sculptures are on display all over the world. Turning to his children's toys is his way to find 3. inspiration . His inspiration for <i>Floating Fish</i> came from Chinese folk tales passed down through the 4. generations . The sights in Wuzhen set Hofman's idea for <i>Floating Fish</i> in motion.
Para. 4—Para. 5	A famous 5. composer : Tan Dun	Tan Dun thinks there is no 6. territory in the world of music and Chinese music should carry "universal expression" of the human 7. spirit so as to be recognised by the whole world.
Para. 6—Para. 7	A famous 8. dancer : Yang Liping	Yang Liping is known 9. as the "Peacock Princess". The inspiration for her famous dances concerns her life in Xishuangbanna with one of the 10. ethnic groups—the Dai people.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Which of the following is Hofman's inspiration for *Rubber Duck*?
 - Chinese folk tales.
 - Chinese musical traditions.
 - His children's toys.
 - His life in Wuzhen.
- How did Hofman get his inspiration for *Floating Fish*?
 - By living with the Dai people.
 - Through his experience in Wuzhen.
 - By turning to his children's toys.
 - By observing the fish carefully.
- What do the words Tan Dun says in Paragraph 5 refer to?
 - To advise combining Chinese music with sounds from the whole world.
 - To advise that Chinese music be recognised by the world.
 - To advise musicians from other countries to learn from Chinese music.
 - To advise Chinese people to listen to music from all over the world.
- Which is Yang Liping's famous work?
 - Spirit of the Peacock*.
 - Floating Fish*.
 - Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon*.
 - Nine Songs*.
- Why is Yang Liping called the "Peacock Princess"?
 - Because the peacock is her favourite bird.
 - Because her dances are connected with the peacock.

- Because she has done a great deal to protect the peacock.
- Because she wants to bring out the beauty of the Dai women who like the peacock very much.

答案: 1~5 CBAAB

II. 课文语法填空

The **1. inspiration** (inspire) of artists for their works varies from person to person. Florentijn Hofman is a Dutch artist, whose large sculptures are **2. on** display all over the world. On the one hand, the inspiration for his animal **3. sculptures** (sculpture) comes from his children's toys. On the other hand, his works are related to his **4. experiences** (experience). For example, when he visited Wuzhen, what he saw there encouraged him **5. to set** (set) his idea for *Floating Fish* in motion. Tan Dun, a Chinese composer, thinks that music is **6. universal** (universe). His music is a **7. combination** (combine) of Chinese musical traditions and Western influences. Yang Liping is an outstanding Chinese **8. dancer** (dance). She is well-known **9. as** the "Peacock Princess". The inspiration for her famous dances concerns her life in Xishuangbanna with one of the **10. ethnic** (ethnically) groups—the Dai people.

III. 阅读升华

- Who is most widely known for composing music for the film *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon*?
Tan Dun.
- Why do you think the author chose to use quotes instead of reported speech in the passage?
略

课后素养评价(十六)

I. 阅读理解

For some of us, the excitement of seeing a performance at a European opera house is just not enough. Fortunately, opera houses throughout Europe open their backstage doors to the public. Take advantage

of these opportunities to look behind the scenes of some of the world's great opera houses.

Teatro alla Scala Opera House Tours—Milan

Discover the activities within the opera house on a backstage tour of the La Scala theatre in Milan.

The tour also includes an overview of the history of the theatre and guides you through the auditorium (观众席) and the theatre boxes.

Paris Opera House Tours—Paris

While it is possible to walk around the public areas of the beautiful Paris Opera House on your own, guided tours are also offered and are led by an English-speaking guide. During the 90-minute tour, you will learn about the theatre's history and its architecture. You will also have an opportunity to visit the grand staircase.

Royal Opera House Tours—London

It is one of the most comprehensive of the opera house tours in Europe. The guide at the Royal Opera House takes you through sections of the backstage area to the prop (道具) room, where workers build the sets, the costume shop and the ballet studios. There's a chance that you will even catch the ballet dancers backstage in practice in their big ballet studio.

Teatro La Fenice Opera House Tours—Venice

Teatro La Fenice in Venice offers a couple of options for visitors. A self-guided tour of the beautiful halls and grounds with a voice guide is available at the box office. Guided tours are also available with an expert that will explain the history of the opera house from its origins to its rebuilding.

【语篇解读】文章介绍了四家歌剧院为观众开放后台区域,让其利用这些机会了解世界上一些伟大歌剧院的幕后故事。

- In which opera house might you be able to see a costume shop backstage?
 - The Teatro alla Scala Opera House.
 - The Paris Opera House.
 - The Royal Opera House.
 - The Teatro La Fenice Opera House.
- What do the four opera houses have in common?
 - They all offer free guided tours.
 - They all open their backstage areas to the public.
 - They are all free to the public.
 - They are all located in France.

D. They are all located in France.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Fortunately, opera houses throughout Europe open their backstage doors to the public.”可知,整个欧洲的歌剧院向公众敞开了歌剧院后台的大门。因此,这四家歌剧院的共同点是它们都向公众开放后台区域。故选 B。

3. Where can we most probably find this text?

- In a sports magazine.
- In an adventure novel.
- In a history book.
- On a culture website.

D 文章出处题。文章介绍了四家歌剧院为观众开放后台区域,让其利用这些机会了解世界上一些伟大歌剧院的幕后故事,这是与文化艺术有关的话题。因此,我们最可能在一个有关文化方面的网站上找到这样的文章。故选 D。

II. 七选五

More than the challenge of fitting into a new culture, there are many benefits that a student can get with an exchange programme. These benefits include:

Diverse academic opportunities. It's not actually the travel that students would love to study abroad.

1 Instead, it will be an offering of diverse opportunities for the student. For example, the student will be able to experience the differences of teaching methods, educational formats and academic programme offerings.

2 Studying in another country opens the student to different surroundings, which makes the student know about the country's customs, people and regions. Knowing other culture also teaches the student how to be open-minded.

Personality development. 3 Thus, the student needs to make decisions on his or her own and suffer the consequences or enjoy the fruit of that decision. With this, the student is taught how real life is, what it means to be responsible, and how being resourceful can help in his or her survival. It's no wonder that most students who returned after the exchange programme were seen with significant improvement on their personal development. 4

So, why not let your child have the benefits of a student exchange programme? Exchange programmes or study-abroad programmes are a great investment for the student. 5 Just imagine, by transforming students in a foreign country the society

is starting to build a new blood of more mature people who might just be able to create a better tomorrow for the generations to come.

- A. Improved protection of social rights.
 B. Better awareness of cultural differences.
 C. More importantly, it is helpful for the improvement of the society.
 D. Most of them are more confident and have better decision-making skills.
 E. The hosting school can also benefit by making a student's dream come true.
 F. Although students really love travelling, studying is not a travel-fun activity at all times.
 G. Being an exchange student often means living far

away from home and parental guidance.

答案:1~5 FBGDC

【微点写作】邀请信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 我很高兴得知我们学校的音乐厅将于10月9日举行一个音乐节。

I'm pleased to know that there is a music festival to be held in the music hall of our school on October 9.

2. 如果你能参加我们的节日,我将非常高兴。

It would be a great pleasure for me if you could join us for the festival.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 分析课文的结构和语言特点,理解课文中直接引语的作用;
3. 基于文章内容联系生活实际,从艺术家的艺术创作生涯中获得启发和鼓励,思考自己如何获得学习上和生活上的灵感并取得成功。

自主式预习

续表

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. A small boat was **floating** on the surface of the water. 浮,漂
2. **Folk** art and customs are traditional or typical of a particular community or nation. 民间的,民俗的
3. A **tale** is a story, often involving magic or exciting events. 故事
4. If you are **crouching**, your legs are bent under you so that you are close to the ground and leaning forwards slightly. 蹲下;蹲伏
5. The word “**ethnic**” means “connected with or relating to different racial or cultural groups of people”. 民族的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>motion</u> <i>n.</i> 动,运动	motionless <i>adj.</i> 静止的;一动不动的

教材词汇

拓展词汇

<u>compose</u> <i>v.</i> 作(曲)	composition <i>n.</i> 作曲;创作
	composer <i>n.</i> 作曲家
<u>quote</u> <i>n.</i> 引文,引语 <i>v.</i> 引述,引用,引证	quotation <i>n.</i> 语录;引用;引语

III. 补全短语

1. turn to 转向;求助于
2. come to life 使……活跃起来
3. find out 弄清;查明
4. set... in motion 使……开始
5. have... in common 有……共同之处
6. bring out 使显示;出版;生产;解释;说明
7. on display 展览,公开展出
8. so as to 以便;以致
9. go deeper into 深入到……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: whose 引导非限制性定语从句

Florentijn Hofman is a Dutch artist, whose large sculptures are on display all over the world.

弗洛伦泰因·霍夫曼是一位荷兰艺术家,他的大型雕塑作品在世界各地展出。

2. 句型公式: see+宾语+宾语补足语

During the walk and my stay here in the town, I saw the fish being fed by people.

在我住在镇上期间,当我散步的时候,我看到人们在喂鱼。

3. 句型公式: has/have been doing

Since his first opera, *Nine Songs*, Tan Dun has been using a combination of Chinese music and sounds from all over the world to tell stories.

谭盾自第一部歌剧《九歌》开始,就一直在以中国音乐和来自世界各地的音乐结合的方式讲述故事。

4. 句型公式: so as to 引导状语从句

As Tan once said, Chinese music should carry “universal expression” of the human spirit so as to be recognised by the whole world.

谭曾说过,中国音乐应该承载人文精神的“共同理念”,这样才能被全世界认可。

任务型课堂

1. compose v. 作(曲); 构成

(教材原文) He is most widely known for **composing** music for the film *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon* and the 2008 Beijing Olympics. 他最为人知的是为电影《卧虎藏龙》和 2008 年北京奥运会创作的音乐。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The committee **was composed of** professors and engineers.

委员会由教授和工程师组成。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) compose oneself 使自己镇定 be composed _____ (=be made up of/consist of) 由……组成 (2) composer <i>n.</i> 作曲家
探究结论	(1) of

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① He is a famous composer of pop music and has composed more than 200 songs so far. (compose)

② Emma frowned, making an effort to compose herself (her).

(2) 一句多译

这部新剧由四个部分组成,每个部分都很精彩。

① The new play is composed of four parts, each of which is very fascinating.

② The new play is made up of four parts, each of which is very fascinating.

③ The new play consists of four parts, each of which is very fascinating.

2. so as to 以便; 以致

(教材原文) As Tan once said, Chinese music should carry “universal expression” of the human spirit **so as to** be recognised by the whole world. 谭曾说过,中国音乐应该承载人文精神的“共同理念”,这样才能被全世界认可。

一感 读句子感悟用法

We left silently on tiptoe **so as not to** disturb others.

我们踮着脚悄悄地离开了,免得打扰别人。

He listened carefully **so as to/in order to** follow the teacher.

= **In order to** follow the teacher, he listened carefully.

= He listened carefully **so that/in order that** he could follow the teacher.

他认真听讲,以便能理解老师说的话。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	so as to do sth. 相当于 in order to do sth., 意为“为了做某事,以便做某事”,其引出的目的状语可以转换成 _____ 或 in order that 引导的目的状语从句。
探究结论	so that

名师点拨

(1) 使用 so as to do sth. 结构时,动词不定式的逻辑主语必须与句子主语一致。

(2) so as to do sth. 的否定形式是在 to 前面加 not, 即 so as not to do sth., 意为“为了不做某事”。

(3) so as to 引出的目的状语不可位于句首,而 in order to 引出的目的状语既可位于句首,也可以位于句中。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 一句多译

为了学习汉语,他来到了中国。

① He came to China in order to/so as to learn Chinese.② He came to China in order that/so that he could learn Chinese.③ In order to learn Chinese, he came to China.

(2) 根据提示补全句子

① All these gifts must be mailed immediately in order to be received/so as to be received (以便被收到) in time on New Year's Day.② In order to (为了) stay positive, we should only speak words of encouragement to ourselves.③ He created electronic tools so that/in order that (为了) people could use computers as musical instruments.**3. bring out 使显示; 出版; 生产; 解释; 说明**(教材原文) My dance comes from their traditional belief and aims to **bring out** the Dai women's beauty.

我的舞蹈来自他们的传统信仰,同时也致力于展示傣族女性的美。

一感 读句子感悟用法A huge amount of environmental damage has been **brought about** by the destruction of the rainforests.

热带雨林的破坏对环境造成了很大的危害。

The government hopes these measures will help to **bring down** prices.

政府希望这些措施将有助于降低价格。

The sale of the house only **brought in** about \$45,000.

这所房子只卖了大约 45 000 美元。

The Smiths are praised for the way they **bring up** their children.

史密斯夫妇因为其养育孩子的方式而受到了赞扬。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	bring _____ 引起; 致使; 造成; 带来 bring back 使忆起; 归还; 恢复; 带回 bring _____ 让……降下来; 使倒下 bring in 产生(利益); 赚到; 引进 bring up 养育; 提出; 呕吐
探究结论	about; down

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Could you bring out the meaning of this poem in detail?② These experts have very definite ideas on how to bring up children.③ Science has brought about many changes in our lives.④ (2023·新高考I卷) Then he went around to local ponds and streams and brought back some plants and animals.⑤ She has three part-time jobs, which bring in about \$24,000 a year.**4. see+宾语+宾语补足语**(教材原文) During the walk and my stay here in the town, I **saw the fish being fed** by people. You **see** also **some fish sculpted** on the wall.

在我住在镇上期间,当我散步的时候,我看到人们在喂鱼。你还会看见墙上有鱼形的浮雕。

[句式分析] 这两句是感官动词 see 的复合结构,第一句中 being fed 是现在分词的被动语态作宾语补足语,表示动作正在被做;第二句中 sculpted 是过去分词作宾语补足语,表示被动和完成。

一感 读句子感悟用法Did you **see the boy being questioned** by the police? 你看见那个正在被警察询问的男孩了吗?(强调动作正在被做)The manager was pleased to **see the project carried out** as planned.

看到项目按计划实施,经理很高兴。(强调动作已经被完成)

I **saw her cleaning** the classroom when I passed by. 当我从旁边经过时看到她正在打扫教室。(强调看到正在做某事)I **saw her send** her daughter to school yesterday morning.

昨天早上我看到她送她女儿去学校。(强调看到做过这件事)

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	“see+宾语+宾语补足语”的常用结构: (1) see sb./sth. done (被动、完成) (2) see sb./sth. doing sth. (主动、正在进行) (3) see sb./sth. _____ sth. (主动、完成) (4) see sb./sth. _____ (被动、正在进行)
探究结论	(3) do (4) being done

名师点拨

(1) 在变为被动语态时, see sb. do sth. 应改为 sb. be seen to do sth.。

(2) 能接不带 to 的动词不定式、现在分词和过去分词作宾语补足语的感官动词还有 feel, hear, observe, notice, watch 等。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① When I passed the window yesterday, I saw him drawing (draw) a picture.

② When I approached him, I saw James being held (hold) up in the water by old Tom.

③ I saw all the dishes washed (wash) and put away.

(2) 句型转换

I often see the old man sit in the yard, enjoying sunshine.

→ The old man is often seen to sit in the yard, enjoying sunshine.

课后素养评价(十七)

I. 单词拼写

- This is a quote (引语) from Shakespeare.
- They threw it in the water and then it floated (漂) on the surface of the water.
- She likes singing Chinese folk (民间的) songs very much.
- Their love story sounds like a fairy tale (故事).
- With a quick motion (动) of her hands, she did her hair up in a knot (结).
- Vivaldi composed (作曲) a large number of very fine concertos (协奏曲).
- Ryle crouched (蹲下) to tie up his shoelace (鞋带).
- Cultures of different ethnic (民族的) groups have different contents and features.

II. 短语填空

bring out; be known as; turn to; set... in motion; be known for; come to life; on display; instead of

- Some of her most famous photos are on display in this exhibition.
- It was fantastic to see my creation come to life on the screen.
- It's unwise of you to turn to the dictionary whenever you come across a new word.
- The spices (香料) really bring out the flavour of the meat.
- To this they agreed, and the plan was set in motion.
- Suzhou is known for its beautiful gardens, which attracts a large number of tourists every year.
- They raised prices and cut production, instead of cutting costs.
- Yuan Longping, the person who I respect the most, is known as Father of Hybrid Rice.

III. 完成句子

- Kemp knocked loudly so as to be heard above the high babble of voices.
肯普大声地敲门,以压过叽叽喳喳的高声喧哗而让人听见。
- They spent three years (in) building the highway.
他们花了三年的时间修建这条高速公路。
- On their way to work, people saw a car hit by a truck.
在上班的路上,人们看见一辆轿车被卡车撞了。
- As you can see, we're still working.
正如你看到的,我们仍在工作。
- She is very tired. She has been typing letters all day.
她很累。她一整天都在录入信件。

IV. 完形填空

A few weeks ago, I received a package containing a small batch (一批) of seeds from my friend. When I asked her what it would grow 1, a flicker of a smile crossed her face. "Just plant them and be patient. You'll see for yourself 2," she said.

I sowed the seeds in a beautiful flowerpot. In the first few days, I was excited to search for the slightest 3 of germination (发芽). But nothing happened. With 4 homework, I began to feel frustrated and a little bit disappointed. How much I 5 a splash of colour in my fast-paced life!

I watered the plant carefully. I placed the plant in the sunlight and rotated (旋转) it for a 6 illumination (光照). On the fourth day, to my great surprise a few light green sprouts (芽) 7.

Bending down and carefully studying the seedlings, I could almost 8 them growing. More days passed, the flowerpot soon became 9 with coriander (香菜) plants.

Now they are taller than the edge of the pot, 10 shaking their verdant (青翠的) leaves in the gentle 11 of the wind, as if they are merrily sing a song of 12 and freedom.

I am certain that after a few more days, my coriander plants will be ready for 13. Thanks to my friend and my patience, these plants have played a crucial part in 14 my everyday life. They may not be a main food on our table, but sprinkling some will surely add a 15 of flavour to our dishes to spice up (为……调味) our busy days.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者的朋友给她寄来一包种子,在作者的细心照料下,最终收获了香菜的故事。

- A. into B. for
C. up D. out
A 根据下文“Just plant them and be patient. You'll see for yourself 2”可知,作者好奇种子会长成什么。故选 A。
- A. gradually B. incredibly
C. ultimately D. intently
C 根据前文“Just plant them and be patient.”可知,耐心地种植,最终会看到种子长成什么。故选 C。
- A. samples B. signs
C. routes D. proofs
B 根据后文“of germination (发芽). But nothing happened.”可知,作者在寻找种子发芽的迹象。故选 B。
- A. apparent B. distinct
C. conventional D. massive
D 根据后文“I began to feel frustrated and a little bit disappointed”可知,此处表示事情很多。故选 D。
- A. allowed for B. longed for
C. provided for D. went for
B 根据后文“a splash of colour”可知,作者渴望快节奏的生活有一点色彩。故选 B。
- A. intense B. violent
C. balanced D. exceptional
C 根据前文“I placed the plant in the sunlight and rotated (旋转) it”可知,作者旋转植物是为了它能够得到均衡的光照。故选 C。
- A. emerged B. hatched
C. reserved D. sank
A 根据前文“a few light green sprouts (芽)”可知,植物发芽了。故选 A。
- A. pray B. assess
C. forecast D. hear
D 根据下文“as if they are merrily sing a song of 12 and freedom”可知,此处表示作者几乎能听到它们在生长。故选 D。

- A. conflicted B. facilitated
C. crowded D. surrounded
C 根据下文“I am certain that after a few more days, my coriander plants will be ready for 13.”可知,此处表示花盆里长满了香菜。故选 C。
- A. subsequently B. constantly
C. extensively D. merely
B 根据后文“shaking their verdant (青翠的) leaves in the gentle 11 of the wind”可知,此处表示在微风的轻语中不停地晃动着青翠的叶子。故选 B。
- A. howl B. scream
C. thunder D. whisper
D 根据下文“as if they are merrily sing a song of 12 and freedom”可知,此处表示在微风的低语中不断摇晃着青翠的叶子。故选 D。
- A. initiative B. leisure
C. harmony D. luxury
B 根据上文中的“merrily”可知,此处表示仿佛在欢快地唱着一首安逸、自由的歌。故选 B。
- A. possession B. consumption
C. exposure D. harvest
D 根据下文“They may not be a main food on our table”可知,香菜过几天就可以收获了。故选 D。
- A. breaking into B. relating to
C. brightening up D. wearing down
C 根据上文“How much I 5 a splash of colour in my fast-paced life!”可知,这些植物在点亮作者的日常生活中发挥了关键作用。故选 C。
- A. touch B. bunch
C. host D. lot
A a touch of 为固定短语,意为“少许,一点儿”。根据前文“but sprinkling some”可知,此处表示洒上一些肯定会为我们的菜肴增添一丝风味。故选 A。

【微点写作】邀请信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 这场时长三个小时的音乐节将在上午九点开始,你最好早点来找一个好座位,以便能更好地欣赏。
The 3-hour music festival will begin at 9:00 a.m. and you'd better come earlier for a good seat so that you can enjoy a better view.
- 届时将有许许多多由优秀的学生和老师进行的精彩表演,包括唱歌和跳舞。
There will be many wonderful performances given by excellent students and teachers, including singing and dancing.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 观察例句,总结非谓语动词作表语的规则;
2. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 能够在语篇写作中正确使用非谓语动词作表语;
4. 掌握复合形容词的相关知识,并能够识别新的复合形容词;
5. 学会赏析艺术作品,并能够用相关的表达对艺术展和艺术作品进行描述。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The higher we climbed, the more **awe-inspiring** the scenery became. 令人惊叹的
2. A **cable** is a thick wire, or a group of wires inside a rubber or plastic covering, which is used to carry electricity or electronic signals. 电缆
3. A **trend** is a change or development towards something new or different. 趋势,动向
4. A **contrast** is a great difference between two or more things which is clear when you compare them. 反差,对比

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
abstract <i>adj.</i> 抽象(派)的	abstraction <i>n.</i> 抽象; 抽象概念
	(反义词) concrete <i>adj.</i> 具体的
wire <i>n.</i> 金属丝; 电线	wireless <i>adj.</i> 无线的
innovative <i>adj.</i> 新颖的, 创新的	innovate <i>v.</i> 创新, 改革
	innovation <i>n.</i> 革新, 创新

III. 补全短语

1. be tired from 因……而劳累
2. be sure of 确信; 对……有把握

3. look over one's shoulder 转过头来看
4. check out 检查; 结账离开
5. take one's breath away 使某人大为惊讶
6. make up 组成; 构成
7. respond to 对……作出反应
8. apart from 除……外; 撇开……来说

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: “not... until...” 的强调句结构
It wasn't until we went on a trip to The Hague last year that this dream came true!
直到去年我们去海牙旅行, 这个梦想才实现!
2. 句型公式: It is/was + *adj.* + to do sth.
It was amazing to be standing in front of her at last!
最终能站在她面前真是太棒了!
3. 句型公式: as if 引导状语从句
Her eyes are wide and her mouth is parted, just as if she were about to speak.
她的眼睛睁得大大的, 嘴张着, 就好像要说话似的。
4. 句型公式: with 复合结构
Wu Guanzhong remained interested in exploring ways of expression, with his style changing and developing throughout his career.
吴冠中一直对探索表达方式很感兴趣, 他的风格在他的职业生涯中不断变化和发展。

任务型课堂

contrast *n.* 反差, 对比

(教材原文)... create a strong **contrast**.
……形成强烈的对比。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The company lost \$7 million this quarter **in**

contrast to/with a profit of \$6.2 million a year earlier.

这家公司本季度亏损了 700 万美元, 与去年同期 620 万美元的盈利形成了对照。

The snow was icy and white, **contrasting with** the

brilliant blue sky.

这雪冰冷、洁白,与晴朗的蓝天形成对照。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)by contrast 相比之下 in contrast _____ 与……相比 (2)contrast v. 对比,对照 contrast _____ 与……形成对比 contrast... with... 把……与……对比
探究结论	(1)to/with (2)with

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

①Their old house was large and broad; by contrast the new London flat seemed cramped (狭窄的) and dark.

②In contrast to/with Western cultures, there are many outstanding characteristics in traditional Chinese culture.

③Her actions contrasted sharply with her words.

(2)完成句子

In another passage, Melville again contrasts the land with the sea.

在另一段落中,梅尔维尔再次把陆地与大海做对比。

语法探究

不定式、动词-ing形式和动词-ed形式作表语

「语法感知」

①The look on his face showed that he felt **astonished**.

②My special hobby is **collecting** stamps.

③He is more **interested** in science than in art.

④Yang Liping's passion is **dancing**.

⑤Our next aim is **to help** farmers increase food production.

⑥Every artist's wish is **to create** something that expresses an idea.

观察句子,指出黑体部分所作的成分。

①动词-ed形式作表语 ②动词-ing形式作表语

③动词-ed形式作表语 ④动词-ing形式作表语

⑤不定式作表语 ⑥不定式作表语

「语法精讲」

一、不定式作表语

不定式作表语常用于以下三种情况:

(1)表示预定要发生的动作。

His wish is **to be** a doctor in the future.

他的愿望是将来当一名医生。

(2)当主语是 aim, purpose, idea, plan, wish, dream, ambition, decision, choice 等词时,常用不定式作表语。

My **dream** is **to enter** Peking University.

我的梦想是考入北京大学。

(3)当主语为 what 引导的名词性从句时,表语多用不

定式。

What I want to do most in senior high school is **(to) improve** my English.

我在高中最想做的是提高我的英语水平。

(如果前面有实义动词 do,作表语的不定式常省略 to)

二、动词-ing形式作表语

动词-ing形式作表语表示通常的情况,多指抽象的、经常性的动作。动词-ing形式作表语时相当于名词,用于解释主语的内容,表语和主语常常可以互换位置。

My job is **cleaning** the house three times a week.

我的工作每周打扫三次房子。

三、不定式作表语和动词-ing形式作表语的区别

不定式作表语强调的是一次性的、具体的、将要发生的动作;动词-ing形式作表语强调的是一般性的、抽象的动作,不特指某一次。

His job is **to paint** the walls.

他的工作是粉刷这些墙壁。

(句子中的“to paint the walls”作表语,表示一次性的、具体的、将要发生的动作。)

His job is **teaching** English.

他的工作是教英语。

(句子中的“teaching English”作表语,表示一般性的、抽象性的动作,不特指某一次。)

四、动词-ing形式和动词-ed形式作表语的区别

动词-ing形式和动词-ed形式作表语都相当于形

容词作表语,但两者差别很大。

1. 动词-ing 形式作表语,翻译为“令人……的”“使人……的”,含有主动的含义,表示主语的特征。

This dog is **frightening**.

这条狗让人害怕。

(句子中的“frightening”是动词-ing 形式作表语,表示主动,意为“令人害怕的”,说明狗的特征。)

2. 动词-ed 形式作表语,翻译为“感到……的”,常表示主语的状态。

This dog is **frightened**.

这条狗有些害怕。

(句子中的“frightened”是动词-ed 形式作表语,意为“被吓坏了的,害怕的”,说明狗的状态。)

「语法冲关」

I. 用括号内动词的适当形式填空

- The purpose of education is to develop (develop) a fine personality in children.
- The pupils will get confused (confuse) if they are made to learn too much.
- All of us were so disappointed (disappoint) at his

absence.

- Though the trip was tiring (tire), we felt very happy.
- His hobby is collecting (collect) stamps.
- Your task today is to wash (wash) the curtains.
- The library is now closed (close) without doubt.
- I'm very delighted (delight) to hear from you.
- It is surprising (surprise) that he should have failed in such an easy exam.
- His aim is to buy (buy) a house of his own in Shanghai someday in the future.

II. 完成句子

- My chief purpose is to point out the difficulties of the matter.
我主要的目的是指出这件事情的困难性。
- His wish is to become an astronaut.
他的愿望是成为一名宇航员。
- The result of the accident is shocking.
这一事故的后果令人震惊。
- On hearing the good news, everyone was excited.
一听到这个好消息,大家都很兴奋。

课后素养评价(十八)

I. 选词(或短语)填空

contrast... with; trend; abstract; make up; respond to; according to; be good at; check out; pay attention to; apart from

- We may talk of beautiful things, but beauty itself is abstract.
- Business in China is booming, and that trend is expected to grow.
- When your body learns to respond to some stress, it's able to protect you better from illness.
- The level of the two is quite different. His actions contrast sharply with his promises.
- The teacher asked the students to make up a story about a trip to the moon.
- Seaman visited about 30 countries, checking out the art scene in each.
- It was clear that the company also paid attention to the design.
- When he was a kid, Dereck was quiet and healthy. He was good at maths and science.

- Tom told me that nothing else mattered to him apart from his job.

- According to the forecast, it should brighten up later.

II. 单句语法填空

- My goal is to perform (perform) together with my daughter before the audience.
- Obviously, I was very disappointed (disappoint) at not getting the job.
- The purpose of new technology is to make (make) life easier.
- The film is so thrilling (thrill) that it is worth seeing again.
- Cleaning women in big cities usually get paid (pay) by the hour.
- He drove the car at such a frightening speed, which would make his mother feel frightened. (frighten)
- What pleases him most is bathing (bathe) in the sea.
- The online classroom provides an innovative (innovation) and interactive learning environment.

9. By contrast, Mrs Yang was much more outspoken.

10. He had an acting job at last, and not just any part, but the lead in a new film.

III. 阅读理解

What is art? That's an easy question to answer.

Art is a painting, a drawing or a sculpture. Now there are new items to add to the list. Art is a dead shark in a glass case. Art is an unmade bed. Art is a video of a group of people standing completely still for sixty minutes.

A new group of young artists began to produce works that challenged the accepted idea of what art is and the role the artist should play in society. This group came to be known as the YBAs—the Young British Artists. The art of the YBAs does not just stick to painting and sculpture. It uses all kinds of different materials to express the feeling of the artist.

Damien Hirst is the most famous of the YBAs. *The Shark in the Box* is his work and is meant to express his own fear of dying. The shark stands for death. Right now, it is harmless. But eventually it will come for you. There is nothing to be done about it.

Traditionally, artists have a message. They use their skills to lead us to enlightenment (启迪). The message of the YBAs is that they cannot do this. They are just as mixed up and confused as everybody else. A journalist once asked Damien Hirst what his next idea was for an artwork. “I don't know what I'm going to do next. I never know what I'm going to do next,” he replied.

Another YBA, Tracy Emin recently produced a work called “Bed”. This is just her own bed with the sheets disarranged and dirty. And the message? “Look at me—I'm a mess.”

Some artists work with the public in producing their work. Gillian Wearing filmed a group of people dressed as policemen trying to keep still for 60 minutes while standing on top of a table. At the end of that time, the table falls apart and everyone falls to the floor. You can try to be a good citizen and a respectable member of the community. But don't try too hard or the pressure will be too much.

Art mirrors the state of society. In the work of the YBAs we can see a society on the threshold (开端) of the future—a bit worried, a bit excited and wondering what is going to happen next. The YBAs

can't guide us, but they can make the journey more interesting.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了一群英国青年艺术家以及他们的作品形式和意义。

1. What does the underlined word “it” in Paragraph 3 refer to?

- A. The shark.
- B. Death.
- C. Damien's artwork.
- D. Damien's fear of dying.

B 代词指代题。根据画线词前面的“*The Shark in the Box* is his work and is meant to express his own fear of dying. The shark stands for death.”和画线词后面的“*But eventually it will come for you. There is nothing to be done about it.*”可推知, it 指代上文中提到的“death”。故选 B。

2. What can be inferred from Tracy's work “Bed”?

- A. She needs to be taken care of.
- B. She sees the world as a dirty one.
- C. She compares herself to the bed.
- D. She hopes for better living conditions.

C 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“*This is just her own bed with the sheets disarranged and dirty. And the message? ‘Look at me—I'm a mess.’*”可推知, Tracy 是将自己比作她的床。故选 C。

3. Which of the following refers to a person who tries too hard in Gillian's work?

- A. The table.
- B. The floor.
- C. 60 minutes.
- D. The people dressed as policemen.

A 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“*Gillian Wearing filmed a group of people dressed as policemen trying to keep still for 60 minutes while standing on top of a table. At the end of that time, the table falls apart and everyone falls to the floor. You can try to be a good citizen and a respectable member of the community. But don't try too hard or the pressure will be too much.*”可知, 在 Gillian 的作品中, 站在桌子上的人和所站的时间表示压力, 桌子则为压力的承受者。由于承受的压力太大, 时间过长, 桌子最终倒塌。故选 A。

4. What is the main purpose of the text?

- A. To explain what the work of the YBAs is like.

B. To show how the YBAs form ideas for their work.

C. To describe the YBAs as artists full of imagination.

D. To show the YBAs have made a great difference in art.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“A new group of young artists began to produce works that challenged the accepted idea of what art is and the role the artist should play in society. This group came to be known as the YBAs—the Young British Artists.”以及后文中的例子可知,本文通过三个例子,主要介绍 YBAs 的作品是什么样的。故选 A。

【微点写作】邀请信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 此外,你会享受一个有趣的游戏,如果你赢了,你可以得到一份礼物。

In addition, you will enjoy an interesting game, in which you can get a gift if you win.

2. 知道你有音乐天赋,我邀请你加入我们并展示你的表演。

Knowing that you have a talent for music, I invite you to join us and show your performance.

3. 如果方便的话,希望您能来。

Hope you can come if it is convenient for you.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重点语言点;
- 熟悉课文内容,理解随着科技的发展,艺术形式发生着改变,从而辩证地看待艺术与科技之间的关系;
- 联系实际,能够用英语描述一件艺术作品;
- 积极观察,发现生活中的美,从而更加热爱生活;
- 通过对艺术作品的选择和观察,更深刻地认识艺术在日常生活中的重要性。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

- innovation *n.* 革新,创新
- literally *adv.* 根据字面意思
- distinct *adj.* 清晰的;明显不同的
- lead to 导致;通往
- such as 例如
- light up 点亮;照亮
- as a result 结果;因此

8. rather than 而不是

9. be accessible to 接近,靠近,接触

10. up to 多达

11. be unfamiliar with 不熟悉……

(二)阅读词汇和表达

- technician *n.* 工匠
- animation *n.* 动画片
- Greek *adj.* 希腊的
- expect the unexpected 期待意外的惊喜
- interact with 与……互动
- label... as 把……称为

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1—Para. 2	What is art?	Visitors to one of the 1. <u>artworks</u> by American artist Janet Echelman in Vancouver could not only enjoy looking at it, but they could also interact 2. <u>with</u> it. But are these works really art?

续表

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 3	Art and technology are two separate things.	People have been expressing their thoughts and ideas through art using a variety of tools and 3. technologies for thousands of years, which means art and technology have always been seen as two very 4. separate things.
Para. 4—Para. 7	The relation of art and technology.	Technological advances have led to a combination of art and technology. Now art is more 5. accessible to us than ever before. We can not only 6. interact with art, but also take part in its 7. creation . With new technological tools at our fingertips, more people are exploring their creative sides. However, the increase in the amount and variety of art produced has also raised questions over its overall 8. quality . Some advances are perhaps bringing us 9. closer to a time when computers rather than humans create art.
Para. 8	The future of art and technology.	We can definitely expect the 10. unexpected with so many artists exploring new possibilities.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What's the purpose of the first paragraph?
 - To explain what art is.
 - To introduce the topic.
 - To advertise the Chinese painting.
 - To tell about Greek and Roman sculptures.
- What has got art and technology combined with each other?
 - Technological advances.
 - People's thoughts and ideas.
 - Artworks.
 - Artists and technicians.
- Which of the following is NOT true about *Along the River During the Qingming Festival*?
 - It is a famous painting in the Song Dynasty.
 - People seldom have a chance to see it.
 - People can enjoy a digital version of it thanks to technology.
 - It describes the scenes of Bianjing people's life.
- What's the author's attitude to the art-tech combination?
 - Supportive.
 - Indifferent.
 - Doubtful.
 - Disappointed.

答案: 1~4 BADC

II. 课文语法填空

For thousands of years, people have been expressing their thoughts and ideas through art. They have used a **1. variety** (vary) of tools and

technologies. **2. Yet/But** Michelangelo and others have been labelled as “artists” rather **3. than** “technicians”, **4. which** means that art and technology have always been seen as two different things.

Today, however, technological advances have led to a combination of art and technology. As **5. a** result, art is more **6. accessible** (access) to us than ever before. What's more, the art-tech combination is also changing our concepts of “art” and the “artist”. Not only can we interact with art, but also take part in **7. its** (it) creation.

8. Similarly (similar), such developments are making the line between art and technology less distinct. Where technology **9. will take** (take) art next is anyone's guess, but one thing is for sure—with so many artists **10. exploring** (explore) new possibilities, we can definitely expect the unexpected.

III. 阅读升华

- What's special about Janet Echelman's artwork in Vancouver?

Visitors can interact with it literally and change its colour and pattern.

- What effect do you think technology will have on art in the future?

Technology will continue to influence the development of art, making art more popular in people's daily lives. (回答合理即可)

课后素养评价(十九)

I. 单词拼写

- The fact that he didn't speak a foreign language put him at a distinct (明显的) disadvantage.
- We must encourage innovation (革新) if the company is to remain competitive.
- Sometimes you can't take some Chinese idioms literally (根据字面意思) because they have deeper meanings.
- Her husband is a good technician (巧匠), so he likes fixing old computers.
- The films are a mix of animation (动画) and full-length features.

II. 短语填空

rather than; light up; for sure; come across; as a result; lead to; take part in; look like

- The wild flowers look like a soft orange blanket (毯子) covering the desert.
- As a result, I have a good command of spoken English.
- This can lead to great stress, but have no fear!
- Yesterday more than 400 students from schools in Beijing took part in this activity.
- The meeting will be held in September, but nobody knows the date for sure.
- Their main job is to preserve health rather than treat illness.
- Last year New Year's fireworks lit up the sky over the city.
- He came across this story while he was doing a computer search of local news articles.

III. 完成句子

- Whatever/No matter what you say, I won't believe you.
无论你说什么,我都不会相信你。
- They talked as if they had met before.
他们交谈着好像以前见过面似的。

- The living room is clean and tidy, with a dining table already laid for a meal to be cooked.
客厅干净整洁,餐桌已经摆好,饭即将煮熟。
- Not only did he make a promise, but also he kept it.
他不仅做出了承诺,而且履行了诺言。
- It was not until near the end of the letter that she mentioned her own plan.
直到接近信的结尾,她才提到了自己的计划。
- When asked why he was late, he kept silent.
当问到你为什么迟到时,他保持了沉默。

IV. 七选五

Challenges are regular visitors in our life, and nobody is immune (不受影响的) to them. 1 However, we can use these challenges to make positive changes in our life. For instance:

Develop your passion. 2 When you are setting your goals, you always want to be passionate about those goals, because if you love what you do, you will be driven by the desire to achieve success.

3 When you have doubts about yourself, you are doing damage to your progress. Therefore, you are supposed to see yourself as a winner, and trust yourself. Feeding your mind with positives will reinforce your beliefs and sweep any doubts out of your system.

Track your progress. It is important that you take note of every improvement you make. 4 Every step forward will give you a boost, and accelerate your efforts to the achievement of your ultimate goal.

Learn how to control your emotions. It is important that you use your emotional intelligence when you encounter problems in your life. You are a product of your thoughts and feelings. Any negative emotions that show up can negate (否定) the positive forward movement you enjoyed earlier. So approach any challenge with a positive attitude.

5 Instead, strongly believe that you have all the tools you need in order to make positive changes in your life. It is in your hands to make the changes necessary and to take your life to new heights.

- A. Practice makes perfect.
 B. Consider confidence as a must for success.
 C. This will motivate you to work even harder.
 D. They can make us lose hope and even give up.
 E. Don't feel negative when you meet with difficulties.
 F. There is nothing to be gained from delaying decisions and thoughts.
 G. Having an enthusiasm for something will inspire you to achieve your goals.

答案: 1~5 DGBCE

【微点写作】邀请信

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 红星学校诚邀您出席 10 月 1 日的科技艺术节开幕式。

Hongxing School requests the honour of your presence at the opening of Tech Art Festival on the first of October.

2. 活动将于下午六时在体育中心开始,有欢迎致辞,之后是颁奖典礼,而且将于晚上八时举行闭幕式。

The event will begin at the sports centre at 6 p.m. with a welcome address followed by an awards ceremony, with the closing ceremony at 8 p.m.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 学习邀请信的写作,运用所学内容为艺术展写一封邀请信;
3. 联系实际,加深对本单元主题意义的理解,掌握艺术流作品和技术流作品各自的价值。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The word “**Greek**” means belonging or relating to Greece. 希腊的
2. If a word or expression is translated **literally**, its most simple or basic meaning is translated. 根据字面意思
3. An **animation** is a film in which drawings or puppets appear to move. 动画片

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
technician <i>n.</i> 工匠	technique <i>n.</i> 技艺, 工艺
	technical <i>adj.</i> 技术的, 工艺的
	technically <i>adv.</i> 在技术上, 在工艺上

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
distinct <i>adj.</i> 清晰的; 明显不同的	distinctly <i>adv.</i> 明显地, 清楚地
	distinction <i>n.</i> 差别, 区别

III. 补全短语

1. come to/into one's mind 进入某人的脑海
2. take in 参观; 吸收; 理解; 收留; 欺骗
3. for sure 一定, 肯定
4. a variety of 各种各样的
5. lead to 导致; 通往
6. light up 点亮; 照亮
7. as a result 结果; 因此
8. rather than 而不是; 宁愿
9. interact with 与……互动

10. label... as 把……称为

11. be accessible to 接近,靠近,接触

12. up to 多达;忙于……;胜任;由……决定

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: whatever 引导让步状语从句

Whatever your opinion, people have been expressing their thoughts and ideas through art for thousands of years.

不管你怎么看,人们数千年来一直在用艺术表达自己的思想和观点。

2. 句型公式: not only 置于句首引起的倒装

Not only can we interact with art, but also take part in its creation.

我们不但可以与艺术作品互动,还可以参与艺术作品的创作。

3. 句型公式: with+名词+介词短语

With new technological tools at our fingertips, more and more people are exploring their creative sides.

通过触手可得的新兴科技工具,越来越多的人开始发掘他们具有创造力的一面。

4. 句型公式: the way that+定语从句

A recent project used technology and data in the same way that Rembrandt used his paints and brushes.

最近有一个科研项目使用科技手段和数据还原了伦勃朗的绘画方式。

任务型课堂

1. take in 参观;吸收;理解;收留;欺骗

(教材原文) Once in front of the painting, they only have limited time to spend **taking in** its five metres of scenes along the Bian River in Bianjing. 即使面对画卷,由于这幅画卷长达五米,人们也只能在有限的时间内观赏画面上汴京汴河沿岸的景色。

一感 读句子感悟用法

It is only by taking correct attitude towards advertising that we can avoid being **taken in**.

我们对广告只有采取正确的态度才会避免被欺骗。

I'm sorry and I'll **take back** what I said.

对不起,我收回我说过话。

The company decided to **take on** a new secretary.

这家公司决定雇用一名新秘书。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	take _____ 收回;取回
	take down 写下;拆掉;取下来
	take off 脱下;起飞;腾飞
	take _____ 雇用;呈现;承担
	take over 接替;接管;占领
	take up 开始做;从事;占用(时间或空间)
探究结论	back; on

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Don't be taken in by products claiming to help to lose weight in a week.

② He took down everything the teacher said.

③ Charlie was taking off his shirt when the phone rang.

④ Our school has taken on a new look over the past few years.

⑤ Would you like me to take over the driving for a while?

⑥ I know how busy you are and naturally I wouldn't want to take up much of your time.

2. distinct adj. 清晰的;明显不同的

(教材原文) Similarly, such developments are making the line between art and technology less **distinct**.

同样地,这种发展正使得艺术和技术之间的界限更加不明显。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The learning needs of the two groups **are quite distinct from** each other.

这两个组的学习需求彼此是相当不同的。

I **distinctly** heard someone calling me.

我清楚地听到有人在叫我。

The **distinction** between craft and fine art is more controversial.

工艺和艺术之间的差别更具争议性。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be distinct _____ 与……不同
	(2) distinctly <i>adv.</i> 明显地,清楚地
	(3) _____ <i>n.</i> 区别,差别
探究结论	(1) from (3) distinction

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① Though they talked in a low voice, they could be heard distinctly (distinct).

② He draws a distinction (distinct) between art and culture.

③ These titles must be distinct from any other section title.

3. 状语从句的省略

(教材原文) **Once in front of the painting**, they only have limited time to spend taking in its five metres of scenes along the Bian River in Bianjing. 即使面对画卷, 由于这幅画卷长达五米, 人们也只能在有限的时间内观赏画面上汴京汴河沿岸的景色。

[句式分析] Once in front of the painting 中的 Once 与 in front of 之间省略了 they are.

一感 读句子感悟用法

Work hard **when (you are) young**, or you'll regret. 少壮不努力, 老大徒伤悲。

Although (he is) doing his best in maths these days, he has still got no good marks.

尽管这些天他一直在努力学数学, 但他仍然没有取得好成绩。

I won't attend his birthday party **unless (I am) invited**.

除非受到邀请, 否则我不会参加他的生日聚会。

If (it is) possible, he will help you out of the difficulty.

如果可能的话, 他会帮你摆脱困境。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	状语从句的省略条件: 在时间、条件、让步等状语从句中, 若从句的主语与主句的主语一致或从句的主语为 _____, 且从句谓语动词为 be 动词时, 可以将从句中的主语和 be 动词省略。
探究结论	it

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① When completed (complete), the museum will be open to the public next year.

② While walking (walk) in the park, I met my former maths teacher.

(2) 句型转换(改为状语从句的省略形式)

① I feel especially pleased while I am walking in the spring rain.

→ I feel especially pleased while walking in the spring rain.

② The concert was a greater success than it was expected.

→ The concert was a greater success than expected.

③ You must attend the meeting unless it is inconvenient to you.

→ You must attend the meeting unless inconvenient to you.

写作探究**邀请信****一、写作指导****1. 概述**

邀请信是邀请收信人参加某项活动(如参加会议、听报告或讲座、看电影、出席典礼等)的书信, 分为普通邀请信和正式邀请信两类。

2. 普通邀请信

普通邀请信的对象一般是朋友、熟人, 所以内容、格式上的要求不是十分严格。首先表明邀请的意图; 接着说明活动的时间、地点和内容; 最后表达希望对方能够参加或者出席的愿望。

3. 正式邀请信

正式邀请信一般由行政机构的负责人撰写, 以某机构或组织的名义发出, 被邀请者通常为专家、教授、学者

等。因此, 这类邀请信的语言要相对正式, 态度要诚恳, 语气要热情有礼。

二、典题示例

假如你是李华, 你校将于 12 月 9 日在学校操场为你们高三学生举办成人仪式。你的美国朋友 John 对此类活动很感兴趣。请你写一封英语电子邮件邀请他来参加。内容主要包括:

1. 成人仪式的时间、地点;

2. 成人仪式的目的;

3. 活动内容: 学习相关法律, 唱成人曲, 走过成人门等。

注意: 1. 80 词左右, 开头和结尾已给出, 不计入总词数;

2. 不要逐条翻译, 可以适当发挥, 使行文连贯。

Dear John,

I'm Li Hua. _____

Looking forward to your reply at your earliest convenience.

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

三、审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	以一般将来时为主
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	1. 讲述邀请的目的和意图 2. 具体描述成人仪式的活动过程和内容 3. 希望尽快得到对方的答复

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇和表达

- ①be aimed at 目的在于
- ②grown-up ceremony 成人礼
- ③schedule 安排, 预定
- ④participate in 参加
- ⑤be supposed to 应该; 被期望
- ⑥have a knowledge of 了解
- ⑦be bound to 必然; 一定会

(二)完成句子

- ①It is aimed at (目的在于) celebrating our maturity.
- ②The grown-up ceremony will be scheduled (将被安排) in the school playground for us Senior Three students on December 9th.
- ③We will firstly be informed of the duties and rights of a grown-up. We are supposed to (应该) have a knowledge of them.
- ④We'll go through the Adult Gate in the company of our teachers and parents. It is bound to (一定会) be meaningful to all of us.

(三)句式升级

- ①用过去分词作状语合并(二)中的①②句
Aimed at celebrating our maturity, the grown-up ceremony will be scheduled in the school playground for us Senior Three students on December 9th.
- ②用 that 引导的定语从句改写(二)中的③句
We will firstly be informed of the duties and rights of a grown-up that we are supposed to have a knowledge of.
- ③用 which 引导的非限制性定语从句改写(二)中的

④句

We'll go through the Adult Gate in the company of our teachers and parents, which is bound to be meaningful to all of us.

(四)连句成篇

Dear John,

I'm Li Hua. Aimed at celebrating our maturity, the grown-up ceremony will be scheduled in the school playground for us Senior Three students on December 9th. I'm writing to invite you to participate in it.

During the activity, we will firstly be informed of the duties and rights of a grown-up that we are supposed to have a knowledge of. Then we are to sing the grown-up song together. Last but not least, we'll go through the Adult Gate in the company of our teachers and parents, which is bound to be meaningful to all of us.

Looking forward to your reply at your earliest convenience.

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

五、学以致用

假定你是李华,是你校读书俱乐部的负责人。俱乐部将在下周三下午三点在报告厅进行英语朗读比赛(recitation contest)。请你给外教 Tom 写一封英语电子邮件。内容如下:

1. 问他届时是否有空出席;
2. 邀请他担任比赛评委;
3. 请他向学生推荐合适的文学作品(literary works)。

注意:1. 80 词左右,开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

Dear Tom,

I'm looking forward to your reply at your earliest convenience!

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

【参考范文】

Dear Tom,

I'm Li Hua, chairman of our school's reading club. There will be a recitation contest organised by our reading club at three next Wednesday afternoon in the lecture hall. So I'm writing to invite you to be present at it.

To make sure the contest is fair and successful, we would appreciate having you as a judge. If available then, could you do us the favour? By the way, it would be very nice if you can recommend some classic English literary works suitable for us students. Thanks for considering our request.

I'm looking forward to your reply at your earliest convenience!

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

课后素养评价(二十)

I. 单句语法填空

- Their products are more innovative (innovation) than those of their competitors.
- Idioms usually cannot be translated literally (literal) into another language.
- He lay on the bed with a newspaper covering (cover) his face.
- She is the only person who replies to the invitation.
- It's better to have your car washed (wash) before you get into the city.
- They request that all the cleaning work (should) be finished (finish) this morning.
- They strolled (漫步) on San Antonio's River Walk and took in the sights.
- You should stay where you are, unless asked (ask) to leave.

II. 完成句子

- These documents are not accessible to the public.
公众无法看到这些文件。
- I can't go with you, because I have much homework to do.
我不能和你一起去,因为我有很多家庭作业要做。
- What surprised me was not what he said but the way (that/in which) he said it.
令我吃惊的不是他说的话,而是他说话的方式。
- It was a time when we lived in harmony with nature.
那是一个我们与自然和谐相处的时代。
- I'll be there whatever happens.
不管发生什么事我都会到那儿的。

III. 语法填空

The 7-day holiday is entitled "Golden Week" by the Chinese government **1. to celebrate** (celebrate) the most important festival in China—the Spring Festival. Nowadays, more and more people choose to travel

by **2. driving** (drive) their own cars to celebrate the Spring Festival **3. with** family.

People can see a report **4. published** (publish) on the Internet, which shows that self-driving tourism **5. has attracted** (attract) more and more people over the past few years.

Driving your own car is **6. a** worthwhile way to try when you decide to travel. Compared with joining a travel agency, driving your own car gives you more freedom. However, if you are a member of a travel group, your schedule is beyond your control. Guides may lead you to some places **7. where** you don't want to go.

Apart from that self-driving tourism offers you many **8. opportunities** (opportunity) to spend some happy time with your family. During the tour, you help and encourage each other when tired. **9. Obviously** (obvious), the emotional connections would become closer after an **10. enjoyable** (enjoy) tour.

IV. 写作

第一节 书面表达

党的二十大报告强调,我们要传承中华优秀传统文化,不断提升国家文化软实力和中华文化影响力。假如你是李华,你校外教老师 Mr Smith 对中国传统文化很感兴趣。下周日你校将举行“成都宽窄巷子一日游”活动。请你用英语给 Mr Smith 写一封邮件,邀请他参加。内容包括:

- 发出邀请;
- 活动安排及理由;
- 期待回复。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

- 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;
- 信的开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇: one-day tour of Kuanzhai Alley in Chengdu 成都宽窄巷子一日游

Dear Mr Smith,

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It was time to go home. "Remember to work on your class speeches for homework," Miss Walker called, as everyone started talking and packing their schoolbags. Jenny felt sick. She hated having to read aloud in class. She was sure everyone got really bored with listening to her. Once, when Jenny was reading out her holiday diary, Lee was even looking at his watch, a silver and blue one which seemed just magical.

Jenny watched Lee walk ahead of her as they left school. He seemed so clever, and he had a certain sort of shining confidence. He was just one of those people who were good at everything. Jenny sighed. As she turned the corner, she saw Lee's watch lying right in the middle of the path.

Jenny knew she should just pick it up and return it to him, but she didn't want to run after him.

Jenny bent down quickly, picked up the watch and ran home. On arriving home, Jenny put it on almost without thinking. She was surprised it fitted so well. She walked to the mirror and started practising her speech. Words just flooded out of her. "I'm going to talk about swimming. I have been lucky. I've won lots of competitions. But when I'm in a race, I'm not really thinking about winning. I'm just loving the feeling of being in the water..." Jenny laughed with excitement. She walked across the room. She suddenly seemed to have a certain sort of confidence. Turning back to the mirror, Jenny saw a flash of light from the watch in the glass. The flash of silver seemed almost magical. So maybe Lee's watch really did have something magic about it.

The next day, as the lesson began, Miss Walker asked who was going to be brave and go first. Nobody moved. Jenny slowly raised her arm. Before Miss Walker could say anything, there was a shout from behind. "She's stolen my watch!" Lee said angrily. "It went missing at school yesterday."

注意: 续写 150 词左右。

Everybody was fixing their eyes on Jenny, waiting for an explanation. _____

Miss Walker smiled and asked the class to listen to Jenny's speech first. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear Mr Smith,

Knowing that you are interested in traditional Chinese culture, I'm writing to invite you to join us in the one-day tour of Kuanzhai Alley in Chengdu, which will be held next Sunday.

First, we'll set out for Kuanzhai Alley at 10:00 a.m. by bus at the school gate. On arriving there, we'll take a walk along the alleys to see the architectural style of the old buildings and experience the locals' life. What's more, we can try all kinds of local foods on the way. As scheduled, we'll go to a teahouse in the afternoon where we can taste some kinds of Chinese tea and get a lot of knowledge about tea. Most importantly, we can watch Sichuan Opera while drinking tea, which is a typical art to reflect Sichuan humanities features.

I'm looking forward to your reply.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

Everybody was fixing their eyes on Jenny, waiting for an explanation. Embarrassed, Jenny didn't say anything. Dead silence suddenly fell. Then came Miss Walker's voice, "Why is Lee's watch on your wrist?" Jenny hesitated for a while and decided to tell everybody about the truth. However, thinking of the well-prepared speech, the magic of the watch, she changed her mind. "But Miss Walker, could I give the speech first and then explain?" she made a request in a tone of begging.

Miss Walker smiled and asked the class to listen to Jenny's speech first. Jenny made her way to the platform with confidence. Words began to flood out of her. "How could she make it? We've never seen Jenny give so terrific a speech." Whispers went around the classroom, and even Miss Walker nodded with approval. Immediately Jenny finished her speech, a storm of applause erupted from the class. Relieved, Jenny told everyone the truth, especially the magic of the watch. "But it's just an ordinary watch with no magic," Lee announced.

读后续写技能养成 || 环境描写——恶劣天气

「技能概述」

1. 环境描写——恶劣天气

是指对阴雨天、下雪天、大风天、暴风、雷电、霜雪、冰雹等天气状况的描写。

2. 续写技巧

同学们可以根据不同的季节或不同的地域，并结合不同的自然灾害从视觉、听觉、触觉、嗅觉、味觉等角度对恶劣天气进行描写；还可以借助一些人与动物的行为描写来衬托恶劣天气。

「范例体悟」

1. Outside, there was a strong wind, and the branches were blown in disorder. The dust on the ground was flying in disorder, which made people unable to open their eyes.

2. This winter, the weather is unusually cold. There is no wind at this moment, the world seems to have stopped, and the river has stopped its footsteps.

找出文中有关恶劣天气的环境描写。

a strong wind; blown in disorder; flying in disorder; made people unable to open their eyes; unusually cold; no wind; the world seems to have stopped; the river has stopped its footsteps

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. rainy *adj.* 下雨的
2. cloudy *adj.* 多云的
3. overcast *adj.* 阴天的
4. cold/freezing/icy *adj.* 冰冷的
5. hot *adj.* 热的
6. snowy *adj.* 多雪的
7. heavy *adj.* 大的
8. dreadful *adj.* 可怕的
9. gloomy *adj.* 阴暗的
10. foggy *adj.* 有雾的
11. howl *v.* 呼啸
12. pile *v.* 堆积
13. cover *v.* 覆盖
14. darkness *n.* 黑暗
15. scream *v.* 尖叫
16. roar *v.* 吼叫

17. smelly *adj.* 有臭味的
18. smell *v.* 闻
19. sniff *v.* 嗅
20. shake *v.* 摇动
21. swallow *v.* 吞噬
22. unpleasant *adj.* 令人不快的
23. painful *adj.* 令人痛苦的
24. beat against 拍打
25. pour down 倾盆而下
26. rain cats and dogs 大雨倾盆
27. lie in ruins 成为一片废墟

II. 佳句背诵

1. The hot sun beat down on us.
炎热的太阳直照着我们。
2. The strong sunlight dazzled his eyes.
强烈的阳光使他睁不开眼。
3. As soon as I got outside it started pouring.
我刚走到外面，大雨便倾盆而下。
4. The sky is overcast, darkened with gloomy clouds.
天空乌云密布，黑云压顶。
5. On that dark and stormy night, the waves were crashing and the winds were howling.
在那个黑暗的暴风雨之夜，海浪肆意拍打，狂风咆哮。
6. The rain came pouring down, the streams rose, and the winds blew and beat against the house.
大雨倾盆而下，溪水上涨，风吹打着房子。
7. It was raining cats and dogs yesterday when school was over. I was all wet when I got home.
昨天放学的时候下着倾盆大雨。我到家时全身都湿透了。
8. Unfortunately, Tom was caught in the heavy rain.
不幸的是，汤姆在暴雨中被淋成了落汤鸡。
9. In a flash, lightning and thunder broke out, and the storm began.
刹那间，电闪雷鸣，暴风雨降临了。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. Several villages have been cut off by the snow.
几个村庄已被大雪隔绝。
2. The storm clouds were gathering over the sea.

暴雨云正在大海上空聚集。

3. The heavy rain was violently beating against the window.

大雨正疯狂地拍打着窗户。

4. The rain had cooled the air and he couldn't help shivering.

雨使空气变得凉飕飕的,他不禁打着哆嗦。

5. The wind howled, piling up snow in drifts, blinding the night with ice-white dust.

风呼啸着,堆着阵阵飘动的雪,用雪白的颗粒蒙蔽了黑夜。

6. I bent over against the cold, protecting my eyes with my arms.

我弯下腰来抵御寒冷,用胳膊护着眼睛。

II. 用环境描写——恶劣天气的方法完成语段

In the beginning, as the evening wore on, **1. dark clouds were gathering** (乌云正在聚集), which seemed to be running quickly across the sky. At that time, Jane and her friends heard **2. the frightening thunder** (吓人的雷声) as loud as a bomb. Rain started to **3. come down hard** (猛烈地地下着), **4. making it almost impossible to make out** (使得几乎不可能分清) what was in front in woods. What's worse, the wind **5. was picking up** (在变大), which **6. made the branches of the trees dancing wildly** (疯狂地摇曳着树枝).

第四单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Stuck at home? These famous museums of virtual tours you can take on your sofa. According to Fast Company, Google Arts & Culture teamed up with over 2,500 museums and galleries around the world to bring you virtual tours and online exhibits.

Guggenheim Museum, New York

Google's Street View lets visitors tour the Guggenheim's famous spiral (螺旋式) staircase without ever leaving home. From there, you can discover incredible works of art from the Impressionist, Post-Impressionist, Modern and Contemporary times.

Pergamon Museum, Berlin

As one of Germany's largest museums, Pergamon has a lot to offer—even if you can't physically be there. This historical museum is home to plenty of ancient works including the Ishtar Gate of Babylon and, of course, the Pergamon Altar.

Van Gogh Museum, Amsterdam

Anyone who is a fan of this tragic, gifted painter can see his works up close (or, almost up close) by virtually visiting this museum—the largest collection of artworks by Vincent van Gogh,

including over 200 paintings, 500 drawings, and over 750 personal letters.

The J. Paul Getty Museum, Los Angeles

European artworks from as far back as the 8th century can be found in this California art museum. Take a Street View tour to discover a huge collection of paintings, drawings, sculptures, manuscripts and photographs.

To see more of Google Arts & Culture's collection of museums, visit the collection's website.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了几个可以应用虚拟现实技术参观的博物馆。

1. Which one will you visit if you like modern art?

- A. Pergamon Museum.
- B. Guggenheim Museum.
- C. The J. Paul Getty Museum.
- D. Van Gogh Museum.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段第二句“From there, you can discover incredible works of art from the Impressionist, Post-Impressionist, Modern and Contemporary times.”可知,如果你喜欢现代艺术作品,你可以参观纽约的古根海姆博物馆。故选B。

2. Who will be interested in Pergamon Museum?

- A. One who is fond of tragic films.

选 D。

7. It's highly probable that this passage appears

- _____.
- A. on the Internet
B. in a diary
C. in a magazine about art
D. in a newspaper

A 文章出处题。根据最后一段中的“I am now building a file (文件夹) online and am in the process of landing some fantastic freelancing (从事自由职业) opportunities.”和“Click here for more.”可知,文章最有可能来自网上。故选 A。

C

“Lions and leopards, in particular, are ambush predators (捕食者). They often rely on the surprise to take down their prey,” says University of New South Wales conservation biologist Neil Jordan. “Farm animal losses can do serious damage to some farmers, and their killing of predators in response to that is a major cause of population decrease in the ambush predators.”

But what if there were a simple thing farmers could do to cut their losses? “The idea came about of painting eyes on the backsides of cows to tick lions and leopards into thinking they've been seen by their would-be prey. And once seen, they often abandon the hunt.”

Nature inspired this visionary solution. Probably the most famous example is on butterflies. They have eyespots in their wings, and these prevent predators such as birds from attacking them. Even humans are affected by eyespots: one study found that people are less likely to steal bikes when an image of watchful eyes is on display near bike racks.

But despite their usefulness, eyespots don't occur naturally in mammals. To make up for this, the scientists/cow-butt artists got to work. “I can guarantee the cows didn't enjoy the experience. I mean, it didn't hurt them at all, but gathering those cows up in the morning for their artificial-eye treatment probably wasn't the most exciting thing for them.”

Over the four-year experiment, the researchers found that ambush predators killed none of the hundreds of cows with eyespots on their backside. But the study also showed that, while less effective, simply painting cross marks on the cows also works. So perhaps any kind of novel marking can frighten a hunting predator. Farmers can potentially paint their cattle with artificial eyespots or cross marks.

But we recommend the eyespots because that was the best result. A little artistic license could go a long way to safeguard both farm animals and predators at risk of extinction.

【语篇解读】食肉动物捕食农场动物对农场主造成了严重损害,而因此农场主对食肉动物的猎杀又导致了食肉动物的濒危。在这种情况下,科学家提出了一个简单而实用的方法:在牛背上画上眼睛,这样就可以吓走捕食者。

8. What does the underlined word “that” in Paragraph 1 refer to?

- A. The killing of predators.
B. The population decrease.
C. The damage to the farmers.
D. The surprise to attack cows.

C 代词指代题。根据第一段中的“Farm animal losses can do serious damage to some farmers”可知,此处是指农场主因为这些损害而捕杀食肉动物。所以 that 是指对农场主的损害。故选 C。

9. What is the example of butterflies in Paragraph 3 intended to prove?

- A. Why birds avoid the insects with eyespots.
B. Why the bikes with watchful eyes are safer.
C. Eyespots came from the adaptation to nature.
D. Scientists got the inspiration from nature.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的第一句“Nature inspired this visionary solution.”可知,第三段中蝴蝶的例子意在证明科学家从大自然中获得灵感。故选 D。

10. What can we learn about artificial-eye treatment from the last paragraph?

- A. It leads to the extinction of predators.
B. Only time will tell whether it works or not.
C. Cross marks could work much better than eyespots.
D. It would be a win-win for farm animals and predators.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的最后一句“A little artistic license could go a long way to safeguard both farm animals and predators at risk of extinction.”可知,人工眼睛治疗对农场动物和捕食者来说是双赢的。故选 D。

11. What is the best title for the text?

- A. Farmers Mark Their Cattle with Eyespots
B. Cows with Eye Images Keep off Predators
C. Cows Enjoy Having Artificial-eye Treatment
D. Farmers Kill Predators to Protect Their Animals

B 标题归纳题。通读全文,尤其是根据第二段中的“The idea came about of painting eyes on the backsides of cows to tick lions and leopards

into thinking they've been seen by their would-be prey. And once seen, they often abandon the hunt.”可知,文章主要是讲在牛背上画眼睛能赶走捕食者。故选B。

D

Female birds sing, too, but scientists tend to tune in to male birdsong and ignore female songs. It highlights a long-standing bias (偏见) and helps us think about why that bias persists (持续).

Since the beginning of modern birdsong research, the field has focused on male songbirds. Any serious birder could tell you that females do sing, sometimes as frequently as males. However, early birdsong researchers tended to be men. Men are significantly less likely than women to lead research projects studying female songs. Thus, we are missing key behaviours as a result of historical biases caused by a lack of diverse participation in science.

So how do we make science welcoming and accessible for all? We need to communicate better with nonscientists. Engaging the public in science is essential for basic science findings that influence how we perceive the world around us.

For example, understanding that female birds do sing matters not only to scientists but also to the billions of people who hear the sounds of wild birds every day. In many species, males and females look similar from a distance, but can be distinguished by ear. Paying close attention to which sounds each sex makes and thinking about why they might be producing them opens up a richer window into the environment around us. It turns out female birds use songs for all the same reasons male birds do: to signal individual identity, defend valuable territories and attract potential mates.

Public awareness of female birdsong has the potential to change the science itself. Apps like eBird collect millions of public observations and audio recordings of birds every year. Increasing public engagement and involvement with research promises to benefit the scientific community and society more broadly. In many cases, scientists and experts already have strongly held biases about the way the world works, and these biases allow mistaken conclusions to persist. Public observers often make better observers of the world around them because they lack preconceived ideas.

Female birds sing! We welcome a future where

research and communication combine to improve our understanding of the world around us and deepen our connections to each other and the natural world. 【语篇解读】文章主要讲述了我们为什么不知道雌鸟也鸣叫。

12. What does the second paragraph mainly talk about?

- A. Who is to blame for the long-standing bias.
- B. Why female birdsong is long ignored by scientists.
- C. What contributes to diverse participation in science.
- D. How men have conducted modern birdsong research.

B 段落大意题。根据第二段的内容可知,对鸟类鸣叫的研究集中在雄鸟群体;尽管观鸟者都知道雌鸟也鸣叫,却因为从事科学研究的科学家大多是男性,而使得雌鸟鸣叫一直鲜少被科学家研究。所以此段主要是在分析雌鸟鸣叫一直鲜少被科学家研究的原因。故选B。

13. Why is it important for us to be aware of female birdsong?

- A. It will enable us to become real scientists.
- B. It will help us distinguish bird species by ear.
- C. It will expand our understanding of the world.
- D. It will make advanced science accessible to all.

C 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Engaging the public in science is essential for basic science findings that influence how we perceive the world around us.”和第四段中的“Paying close attention to which sounds each sex makes and thinking about why they might be producing them opens up a richer window into the environment around us.”可知,更多地了解雌鸟鸣叫会使我们对周围世界的理解更加的丰富。故选C。

14. What does the underlined word “preconceived” mean in Paragraph 5?

- A. Biased.
- B. Creative.
- C. Mistaken.
- D. Varied.

A 词义猜测题。根据第五段中的“In many cases, scientists and experts already have strongly held biases about the way the world works, and these biases allow mistaken conclusions to persist. Public observers often make better observers of the world around them because they lack preconceived ideas.”可知,preconceived是形容词,修饰后面的名词 ideas,是要和上文提到的“科学家已经持有的偏见”作

努力的认可(recognition)。故选 A。

23. A. patience B. pleasure
C. stress D. appreciation
C 根据下文中的“frustration”可知,此处应填一个词义与之相近的消极词汇,C项符合语境。
24. A. assigned B. hoped
C. forbidden D. persuaded
A 大学毕业后“我”成了一个IT经理,被指派(assigned)与一位富有的客户打交道。故选A。
25. A. strongly B. happily
C. unwillingly D. anxiously
B 根据下文内容可知,“我”认为这可能是发挥自己才能的时候,所以应是愉快地(happily)接受了任务。故选B。
26. A. Moreover B. Instead
C. Therefore D. However
D 前文讲“我”认为这可能是发挥自己才能的时候,后文说这位客户的要求“我”处理不了,前后文是转折关系。故选D。
27. A. look into B. meet with
C. wait for D. stand by
D 公司选择支持(stand by)客户,努力满足他的一些不合理的要求。故选D。
28. A. frequently B. fluently
C. originally D. gradually
C 公司尽力满足这位客户的一些不合理的要求而不是坚持当初(originally)签订的合同。故选C。
29. A. programmes B. problems
C. goals D. results
B 这导致了意想不到的问题(problems)。故选B。
30. A. longed B. refused
C. preferred D. agreed
B 一些员工拒绝(refused)做超出他们工作范围的任何事。故选B。
31. A. staring at B. aiming at
C. pointing at D. shouting at
A 记得一天早晨,“我”走进了办公室,打开手提电脑,盯着(staring at)屏幕很长时间。故选A。
32. A. funny B. easy
C. difficult D. amazing
C “我”应该怎么办?在“我”的人生中那是一段艰难的(difficult)时光。故选C。
33. A. left B. charged
C. shut D. lost
A 最终“我”放弃了“我”的第一份工作,伤心地离开(left)了公司。故选A。
34. A. lesson B. life

C. truth D. job

D 当时“我”认为,也许“我”能找到不和难对付的人和事打交道的工作(job)。故选D。

35. A. urgent B. necessary
C. reasonable D. possible
D 后来“我”意识到:在现代社会这可能(possible)吗?故选D。

IV. 语法填空(共10小题;每小题1.5分,满分15分)

In the 17th century, the Netherlands experienced a period of **36. artistic** (art) prosperity known as the Dutch Golden Age. During this period, artists found **37. inspiration** (inspire) in Northern Renaissance painting techniques, contributing to masterpieces like *Girl with a Pearl Earring* by Johannes Vermeer. Known as the “Mona Lisa of the North”, this painting **38. represents** (represent) the best of Dutch art and it has become one of art history’s most beloved paintings.

Girl with a Pearl Earring is Vermeer’s most well-known work of art. **39. However**, it did not attain international fame until the end of the 20th century, **40. when** it was featured in a special exhibition in Washington, D. C. The painting does not show a specific person. Instead, it shows **41. an** unknown girl dressed in grand clothing who, “like a vision coming from the darkness,” art historian Arthur K. Wheelock explained, “belongs to no specific time or place.” Vermeer is known for his ability to create shapes and forms **42. using** (use) light rather than line. This characteristic approach **43. to** modeling is particularly evident in *Girl with a Pearl Earring*.

In addition to its fascinating context and appealing beauty, the piece is celebrated for the mystery that surrounds it. “When you think about the Mona Lisa, she is also looking at us, but she isn’t engaging,” Tracy Chevalier points out. “While *Girl with a Pearl Earring* is right there, there is nothing between her and us. She has this magical quality of being **44. incredibly** (incredible) open and yet mysterious at the same time—and that is **45. what** makes her so appealing.”

V. 写作(共两节,满分40分)

第一节 书面表达(满分15分)

假设你是李华,你的朋友 Tom 邀请你下周去他们学校参加文化交流活动,并向外国朋友介绍中国的传统绘画。但是你正忙于准备期末考试,不得不谢绝邀请。请根据所给的要点用英语给他写一封回信:

1. 谢绝邀请;
2. 说明理由;
3. 推荐朋友 Mary 参加, 并说明原因。

注意: 1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节, 使行文连贯;
3. 信的开头和结尾已给出, 不计入总词数。

Dear Tom,

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jatin and his younger sister, Neha, lived with their parents in a poor neighbourhood. Their mother was very sick and their father was struggling to find a job, and they had only a little money with which to buy food. As they had not paid the rent for several months, the landlord was urging them to leave all the time.

One day, Jatin took Neha's shoes to a shoe repairman to be fixed, but he lost them on the way home. It wasn't until he got home that he realised he had lost the shoes. He was afraid that his parents would be angry and disappointed, so he begged his sister to keep it secret. Neha agreed and the two decided to share Jatin's running shoes. Neha's school hours were in the morning, so she would wear them first. After school, she would rush back and give them to Jatin. He could then run to his school, which began in the afternoon. Although he ran as fast as he could, Jatin often arrived late and was warned by the school.

A long-distance race was going to be held for the boys in the city. When Jatin learned that the third prize was a new pair of shoes, he decided to take part. He ran home excitedly and promised his sister that he would win her the new shoes.

The day of the race arrived. Jatin had a strong start, but halfway through the race he began to get tired and his legs began to ache. Getting more and more exhausted, he thought only of Neha and his promise to her. Dreaming of the new shoes he would win for his sister gave him strength, and he stayed right behind the two fastest runners, determined to finish third. Suddenly, as the finish line drew near, another runner collided (碰撞) with Jatin from

behind and Jatin crashed to the ground.

注意: 续写 150 词左右。

Jatin looked up and he saw other boys rushing ahead. _____

Filled with pleasure, Jatin walked home in no time. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear Tom,

Thank you very much for your invitation to introduce the traditional Chinese painting to foreign friends, but I'm sorry to inform you that I can't. The reason is that I'm busy preparing myself for the coming final examination.

I strongly recommend my friend Mary to take my place next week. She began to learn painting at an early age and has a good knowledge of the traditional Chinese painting, which, together with her active personality and perfect spoken English, will help make your activity a success.

Sorry again for any inconvenience caused by my absence.

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

Jatin looked up and he saw other boys rushing ahead. Refusing to give up at this crucial point, Jatin clenched his teeth, jumped to his feet and ran as fast as he could. Finally, he was the fourth one to dash across the finish line. Jatin couldn't help sobbing at the thought of letting his sister down. But much to his surprise, the runner who collided with him was disqualified for breaking the rule and Jatin won the third prize. Jatin felt overjoyed and relieved during the award ceremony, holding the shoes close to his chest.

Filled with pleasure, Jatin walked home in no time. He could not wait to see his sister and share the good news. On his arrival, Jatin found Neha was walking about outside nervously and anxiously. "Neha, see what I have got for you," Jatin said excitedly, taking the prize out of his bag with his trembling hands. The instant Neha saw the shoes, her face lit up. So thrilled was she that she threw herself at Jatin. "Thank you! Jatin." Tears of joy welled up in their eyes as the brother and the sister hugged tightly together.

Unit 5

Revealing nature

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Comprehending

学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点；
- 略读课文，熟悉话题语境，获取课文的主旨大意；
- 细读课文，解读文本，感知叙述类文本的结构及语言特点，并按照事件发展的顺序梳理达尔文的发现之旅；
- 了解三种稀有动物的基本信息，掌握关于动物的词汇，为后续的阅读与表达做铺垫；
- 能够谈论自己对自然界的认识，通过谈论与动植物相关的话题激发探索自然的兴趣。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

- distant *adj.* 遥远的
- sample *n.* 样本
- suspect *v.* 猜想, 怀疑, 觉得
- evolve *v.* 进化
evolution *n.* 进化(论)
- generate *v.* 产生, 创造
- a variety of 各种各样的
- date back to 追溯到, 起源于……
- adapt to 适应

9. be crowded with 挤满, 堆满

10. answer the call 响应号召

11. of all time 有史以来

12. in question 讨论中的; 有疑问的, 被怀疑的

13. come to exist 开始存在

(二)阅读词汇和表达

- seed *n.* 种子, 籽
- geologist *n.* 地质学家
- ancestor *n.* (动物的)原种, 祖先
- finch *n.* 雀科鸣禽
- beak *n.* 鸟嘴, 喙
- first choice 理想选择; 首选
- be a disgrace 是耻辱, 是丢脸的事

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1—Para. 2	The beginning of the 1. <u>journey</u> .	Darwin answered the captain's call to visit 2. <u>distant</u> countries yet little known. Despite the fact that he was not the captain's first choice, his adventures would lead to one of the most important 3. <u>scientific</u> discoveries of all time. In 1831, he left England on the ship. 4. <u>Fascinated by</u> rocks, plants and animals, he collected many 5. <u>samples</u> of the plants and animals and studied them.
Para. 3—Para. 6	The process of forming Darwin's theory: 6. <u>evolution</u> .	On the Galápagos Islands, Darwin noticed that there was a difference between the finches. He found the answer to how new 7. <u>species</u> of plants and animals came to exist. He explained this theory in his book, <i>On the Origin of Species</i> . His 8. <u>scientific</u> studies were so 9. <u>convincing</u> that more and more people started to believe his theory.
Para. 7	The influence of <i>On the Origin of Species</i> .	The book is regarded as one of the most important works ever 10. <u>written</u> , and it has changed ideas about life on Earth forever.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- Who answered the call to visit distant countries yet little known?
 - The captain's first choice.
 - A young man who had completed his degree in a medical school.
 - A young man whose father was proud of him.
 - A young man whose father thought badly of him.
- Which inspired Darwin most on the Galápagos Islands?
 - Rocks.
 - Plants.
 - Animals.
 - Birds.
- According to Darwin, how did new species of plants and animals come to exist?
 - They came from the same place.
 - They appeared on Earth together.
 - They evolved from their ancestors.
 - They often changed themselves.
- What's most people's original attitude towards Darwin's theory of evolution?
 - Favourable.
 - Unacceptable.
 - Uninterested.
 - Neutral.
- What's the main idea of the passage?
 - To introduce how *On the Origin of Species* was written.
 - To tell why Charles Darwin travelled on the *Beagle*.
 - To share who was Charles Darwin with readers.
 - To introduce how a theory of evolution was discovered.

答案: 1~5 DDCBD

II. 课文语法填空

The captain wanted a person to visit distant countries yet little known. Darwin answered the call but he was not the captain's **1. first** (one) choice. Darwin left school without completing his degree, **2. which** made his father very angry. Despite all this, his adventures would lead to one of the most important scientific **3. discoveries** (discover) of all time. In 1831, he left England on the ship. **4. Fascinated** (fascinate) by rocks, plants and animals, he collected many samples of the plants and animals and studied them, and then he presented a question: how did different species come to exist? Darwin's opinion didn't agree with many people's. He thought animals evolved as they adapted **5. to** their changing environments but he needed to look for more **6. evidence** (evident). On the Galápagos Islands, Darwin noticed there was **7. a** difference between the finches. **8. It** seemed that their beaks had evolved according to what food was available on that particular island. He found the answer to how new species of plants and animals came to exist. He explained this theory in his book, *On the Origin of Species*. His **9. scientific** (science) studies were so **10. convincing** (convince) that more and more people started to believe his theory, which has changed ideas about life on Earth forever.

III. 阅读升华

- What method did Darwin use to draw his conclusion?
Observing and analysing.
- How do you think the human species will evolve in the future?
The human species will evolve into a more advanced species in the future.

课后素养评价(二十一)

I. 阅读理解

The rapid pace of global warming and its effects on habitats raise the question of whether species are able to keep up so that they remain in suitable living conditions. Some animals can move fast to adjust to a swiftly changing climate. Plants, being less

mobile, rely on means such as seed dispersal (传播) by animals, wind or water to move to new areas, but this redistribution typically occurs within one kilometre of the original plant.

When the climate in a plant's usual range becomes hotter than it can tolerate, it must find

new, cooler areas that might lie many kilometres away. One explanation for long-distance seed dispersal is through transport by migratory (迁徙的) birds. Such birds swallow seeds when eating fruit and can move them tens or hundreds of kilometres outside the range of a plant species.

González-Vary and her colleagues reported how plants might be able to keep pace with rapid climate change with the help of migratory birds. The authors analysed the fruiting times of plants, patterns of bird migration and the interactions between fruit-eating birds and fleshy-fruited plants across Europe. Plants with fleshy fruit were chosen for this study because most of their seed transport is by migratory birds, and because fleshy-fruited plants are an important part of the woody-plant community in Europe. The common approach until now has been to predict plant dispersal using models fitted to abiotic (非生物的) factors such as the current climate. González-Vary instead analysed an impressive data set of 949 different seed-dispersal interactions between bird and plant communities, together with data on entire fruiting times and migratory patterns of birds across Europe. The researchers also analysed DNA traces from bird wastes to identify the plants and birds responsible for seed dispersal.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了植物是如何适应气候变化的。

1. How do species adapt to climate change when it's too hot?

- A. All animals will move away across great distances.
- B. Some plants depend on migratory birds to carry seeds.
- C. Some plants depend on animals, wind or water to move.
- D. Plants' seeds disperse to cooler places of several kilometres away.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“One explanation for long-distance seed dispersal is through transport by migratory (迁徙的) birds. Such birds swallow seeds when eating fruit and can move them tens or hundreds of kilometres outside the range of a plant species.”可知,植物会通过候鸟迁徙将其种子传播到远方,通过这种方式适应过热的气候。故选 B。

2. Why did researchers mainly study fleshy-fruited plants?
- A. Because most of these can't fit rapid climate change.
 - B. Because migratory birds like making nests in them.
 - C. Because migratory birds transport their seeds.
 - D. Because they are favoured by most birds.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Plants with fleshy fruit were chosen for this study because most of their seed transport is by migratory birds, and because fleshy-fruited plants are an important part of the woody-plant community in Europe.”可知,该研究选择将肉质果实植物作为研究对象主要是因为它们的种子是由候鸟迁徙传播的。故选 C。

3. Why does the author mention “fleshy fruit” and “fruiting times” in Paragraph 3?

- A. To explain relations between fruit plants and migratory birds.
- B. To clarify the reason why birds migrate in fruiting times.
- C. To present a fact that migratory birds eat flesh fruit.
- D. To show that fruit depends on migratory birds.

A 推理判断题。第三段首句“González-Vary and her colleagues reported how plants might be able to keep pace with rapid climate change with the help of migratory birds.”提到植物在候鸟的帮助下跟上快速的气候变化,再结合本段中的“The authors analysed the fruiting times of plants, patterns of bird migration and the interactions between fruit-eating birds and fleshy-fruited plants across Europe.”可知,本段提到“肉质果实”和“结果期”是为了找出植物的果实与候鸟迁徙之间的联系。候鸟迁徙能帮助植物果实传播,从而让植物跟上气候变化。故选 A。

4. What is the text mainly about?

- A. The advantage of fruit plants.
- B. The destination of the bird migration.
- C. The adaptation of fruit plants to the climate change.
- D. The influence of climate change on plants and animals.

C 主旨大意题。通读全文,并结合第三段首句“González-Vary and her colleagues reported how plants might be able to keep pace with rapid climate change with the help of migratory birds.”

可知,本文主要介绍了植物是如何适应气候变化的。故选C。

II. 七选五

Why Walking Makes You a Better Worker?

We're busy at work, distracted (分心) by technology and often live in urban environments far from wild spaces. 1 The average American, for example, spends about 90% of their life indoors. But what happens if we make time for an hour outside each day?

2 You'll have to stand up and move, which is beneficial if most of your day involves sitting in front of a screen. Research shows short breaks can improve work enthusiasm, and a quick break in natural light will deliver a shot of vitamin D.

There's also a lot of work on the mental benefits of being in nature—on the state of being happy and on your brain's ability to make sense of life. “When people are all out in nature, even in urban nature, people tend to have more positive emotion and energy than when they are indoors. 3” says Lisa Nisbet, associate professor at Canada's Trent University.

The idea that nature is good for us has been gaining ground since the 1980s. 4 Afterwards shinrin-yoku (森林浴), the Japanese concept followed that absorbing the atmosphere in forests can benefit your health. Researchers of shinrin-yoku have since found plenty of physical and mental

benefits, while global studies suggest time in nature can, for example, restore our ability to focus, increase creativity, and even help us live longer.

Of course, many of us live in cities with no ready access to forests or wilderness. 5 Various studies have shown that green environments in cities have beneficial effects.

- A. We also don't get out much.
- B. But it doesn't have to be a forest.
- C. People can get to a forest for a hike.
- D. In other words, people are happier in nature,
- E. There are some obvious benefits of going outside.
- F. Green and blue spaces are better than busy city streets.
- G. First came the theory that humans have a basic desire to connect with nature.

答案:1~5 AEDGB

【微点写作】观察日志

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 向日葵可以种在花盆里。
Sunflowers can be grown in flowerpots.
2. 他们可以在任何季节在室内开始。
They can be started off indoors in any season.
3. 每个花盆种一颗种子,并且给土壤浇水使其湿润。
Sow one seed per flowerpot and water the soil to make it moist.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 阅读课文,在语篇中学习和掌握与话题相关的词汇,并能够运用所学词汇进行交流;
3. 联系实际,从达尔文的故事中体会探索的艰辛,学习科学家的科学精神和创新精神,并以此指导自己的学习生活。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. I sow the **seed** in pots of soil-based compost. 种子,籽
2. The **geologist** I contacted thinks this is an ideal

place to drill.

地质学家

3. A **sample** of a substance or product is a small quantity of it that shows you what it is like. 样本

4. If you say that something is a **disgrace**, you are emphasising that it is very bad or wrong. 耻辱
5. Some festivals are held to honour the dead or to satisfy the **ancestors**. 祖先
6. A bird's **beak** is the hard curved or pointed part of its mouth. 鸟嘴, 喙

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>distant</u> <i>adj.</i> 遥远的	distance <i>n.</i> 距离; 间距
<u>generate</u> <i>v.</i> 产生, 创造	generator <i>n.</i> 发电机
	generation <i>n.</i> (产品发展的) 代; 产生
<u>suspect</u> <i>v.</i> 猜想, 怀疑, 觉得	suspicion <i>n.</i> 怀疑; 疑心
	suspicious <i>adj.</i> 令人怀疑的; 可疑的

III. 补全短语

1. first choice 理想选择; 首选
2. of all time 一直, 始终; 有史以来
3. in question 讨论中的; 有疑问的; 被怀疑的
4. share... with ... 和……分享……
5. date back to 追溯到
6. lead to 导致
7. be crowded with 挤满……; 充满……
8. at the same time 同时
9. come to exist 开始存在
10. adapt to 适应

11. a variety of 各种各样的
12. be regarded as 被认为是……

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句

It seemed their beaks had evolved according to what food was available on that particular island.

它们的喙似乎是根据那个特定岛上的可觅得的食物进化而来的。

2. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作定语

The young man in question, Charles Darwin, was a geologist and naturalist, fascinated by rocks, plants and animals.

我们正在讨论的这个年轻人就是地质学家和博物学家查尔斯·达尔文, 他对岩石和动植物有着浓厚的兴趣。

3. 句型公式: enough to do

It was just an idea, but enough to inspire Darwin to look for more evidence.

这只是一个想法, 但足以激励达尔文去寻找更多的证据。

4. 句型公式: 强调句型

... but it was the birds that interested him the most.

……但最令他感兴趣的是鸟类。

5. 句型公式: so... that...

But Darwin's scientific studies were so convincing that more and more people started to believe his theory.

但是达尔文的科学研究是如此令人信服, 以至于越来越多的人开始相信他的理论。

任务型课堂

1. distant *adj.* 遥远的

(教材原文) The captain of the ship, the *Beagle*, wanted someone who would “profit by the opportunity of visiting **distant** countries yet little known”.

贝格尔号的船长想要招募这样一名船员, 这名船员将能“借此机会访问遥远且至今鲜为人知的国度并从中受益”。

一感 读句子感悟用法

He is a troublemaker. You must **be distant with** him.

他是一个惹是生非的人。你不要跟他在一起。

The boy who is standing **in the distance** has a gift for writing.

站在远处的那个男孩有写作天赋。

It was difficult to get to know her because she always **kept everyone at a distance**.

因为她总是与大家疏远, 所以很难了解她。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) be distant towards/ _____ sb. 对某人冷淡/疏远 be distant from 离……遥远 (2) distance <i>n.</i> 距离; 间距; 遥远 at a distance (of) 隔一段距离; 从远处 _____ the distance 在远处 from a distance 从远处 keep... at a distance = keep one's distance from... 与……保持距离
探究结论	(1) with (2) in

名师点拨

对于 distance 的提问多用 what, 而不用 how far 或者 how long; 表示长距离应用 a long distance 而不是 a far distance。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① The village where I used to live is distant from Beijing.
- ② What is the distance from Beijing to Shanghai?
- ③ The noise of the car died away in the distance.
- ④ We saw them waving to us at a distance of two hundred yards.
- ⑤ In the dark of the night, the lights of the small town are like the distant (distance) fireflies, which are becoming dimmer and dimmer.

(2) 完成句子

- ① Don't be distant towards/with your parents.
不要疏远你的父母。
- ② She was warned to keep her distance from John/keep John at a distance if she didn't want to get hurt.
有人警告她说, 如果不想受到伤害就离约翰远一点。

2. evolve v. 进化; 逐步发展, 逐渐演变

(教材原文) Maybe animals **evolved** as they adapted to their changing environments?
也许动物为了适应不断变化的环境会逐渐进化?

一感 读句子感悟用法

We can **evolve** the truth **from** a mass of confusing evidence.
我们可以从大量令人困惑的证据中推断事实真相。
As a result of **evolution**, it seems to me that humans should have no more value than any other creature.
由于进化的结果, 在我看来, 人类并不比其他生物拥有更多的价值。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) evolve _____/out of 从……进化; 从……逐渐形成/发展/演变 (2) evolution <i>n.</i> 进化(论); 发展
探究结论	(1) from

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① Darwin believed that we evolved from apes.
- ② I wish to see that you could enquire it in time and inform me the things' evolution (evolve).

(2) 完成句子

It is said that the Spring Festival evolved from an activity known as the Winter Sacrifice.
相传春节是由一个名叫腊祭的祭祀活动演变而来的。

3. a variety of/varieties of 各种各样的

(教材原文) When the *Beagle* reached the Galápagos Islands in 1835, Darwin saw **a variety of** new species, but it was the birds that interested him the most.
1835年, 当贝格尔号抵达加拉帕戈斯群岛的时候, 达尔文发现了各种各样的新物种, 但最令他感兴趣的是鸟类。

一感 读句子感悟用法

There are **various** colours to choose from.
有各种各样的颜色供选择。
Prices **vary** according to the quantity ordered.
价格随订购数量不同而有所变化。
The importance of being an Olympian will **vary from** athlete **to** athlete.
参加奥运会对每个运动员而言意义不同。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) variety <i>n.</i> [U]变化, 多样化; [C]品种 (2) _____ <i>adj.</i> 各种不同的, 各种各样的 (3) vary <i>v.</i> 相异; 改变 vary in 在某方面不同 vary from... _____ ... 从……到……不同 vary with 随……而变化
探究结论	(2) various (3) to

名师点拨

(1) a variety of 后接可数名词复数作主语时, 谓语句常用复数形式。
A great variety of patterns **were** provided to customers.
种类繁多的图案被提供给了顾客。
(2) “the variety of + 可数名词复数”意为“……的品种”, 作主语时谓语句用单数形式。
The variety of goods in the shop **is** rich.
这家商店的商品品种丰富。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

- ① The shop has various (vary) clothes for customers to choose from.

② Varieties (vary) of celebrations will be organised to display the agricultural harvest.

③ The price of tomatoes varies with the season.

④ A variety of his books have been (be) published in recent years.

(2) 完成句子

① He resigned for various reasons/a variety of reasons/varieties of reasons.

他由于种种原因辞职了。

② Teaching methods vary greatly from school to school.

每所学校的教学方法大不相同。

4. suspect v. 猜想, 怀疑, 觉得

(教材原文) Darwin **suspected** that the finches had evolved from a common ancestor, which had arrived on the islands a long time before.

达尔文猜想这些雀科鸣禽是由一个共同的祖先进化而来的, 这个祖先很久以前就来到了这片岛屿。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The police **suspected** him **of** having stolen the money.

警察怀疑钱是他偷的。

Judging from his expression, I **suspected him to be/as** a thief.

从他的表情来看, 我怀疑他是一个小偷。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) suspect sb. _____ (doing) sth. 怀疑某人(做过)某事 suspect sb./sth. to be/as... 怀疑某人/某物是…… (2) suspicion <i>n.</i> 怀疑; 疑心 under suspicion 被怀疑 (3) suspicious <i>adj.</i> 令人怀疑的; 可疑的 be suspicious of/about sth. 对某事怀疑
探究结论	(1) of

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Any man who has witnessed the attack is under suspicion.

② Some of his colleagues at work became suspicious (suspect) of his behaviour.

(2) 完成句子

The boss suspected him of taking the computer away from the company.

老板怀疑他从公司拿走了电脑。

5. what 在从句中的成分

(教材原文) It seemed their beaks had evolved according to **what food was available on that particular island**.

它们的喙似乎是根据那个特定岛上的可觅得的食物进化而来的。

一感 读句子感悟用法

If you swim in a river or lake, be sure to investigate **what is below the water surface**. Often there are rocks or branches hidden in the water.

如果你在河里或湖里游泳, 一定要查明水面下的情况。经常会有岩石或树枝隐藏在水中。(what 作主语)

The newcomer went to the library the other day and searched for **what he could find about Mark Twain**.

这个新人前几天去了图书馆, 寻找他能找到的关于马克·吐温的书籍。(what 作宾语)

You can't imagine **what Tom was ten years ago**.

你无法想象汤姆十年前是做什么工作的。(what 作表语)

I didn't know **what books Linda likes reading**.

我不知道琳达喜欢读什么书。(what 作定语)

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	what 引导的宾语从句的语序为 _____ 语序。 what 在从句中可以作主语、_____ 语、_____ 语和 _____ 语。
探究结论	陈述; 宾; 表; 定

三评 多维度评价测试

补全句子

① 你知道那个女孩的父亲是干什么的吗? (what 作表语)

Do you know what the girl's father is?

② 一座现代化城市已经在十年前还是一片荒地的地方建起来了。(what 作主语)

A modern city has been set up in what was a wasteland ten years ago.

③ (2023·新高考 I 卷) 他决定去建造后来他称之为生态机器的东西。(what 作宾语)

He decided to build what he would later call an eco-machine.

④ 我们很难想象古代奴隶们的生活是什么样子的。(what 作定语)

It's difficult for us to imagine what life was like for slaves in the ancient world.

课后素养评价(二十二)

I. 单词拼写

- The dam will generate (产生) electricity equal to about 40 million tons of coal without causing so much air pollution.
- The world moves on because of those who are eager to discover what their ancestors (祖先) did.
- They suspected (怀疑) that the secret had been given away by one of their friends.
- With a microscope, he observed the surface characteristics of the sample (样本).
- The time we spent together is now a distant (遥远的) memory.
- It's said that these seeds (种子) rely on wind for dispersion (传播).
- It is interesting that Chinese characters evolve (逐渐演变) from pictures and signs.

II. 短语填空

a variety of; adapt to; in question; of all time; date back to; come to exist; be crowded with; in the distance

- As he walked along, he began to see another man in the distance.
- The meeting room was crowded with businessmen who came from all over the country.
- The vase is valued at \$30,000 and it dates back to the Ming Dynasty.
- When they moved to France, the children adapted to the change well.
- There is a variety of patterns to choose from.
- This book is regarded as one of the best-sellers of all time.
- Then you have to discover whether the painting in question has those characteristics.
- Certain forms of knowledge come to exist in certain places.

III. 补全句子

- 正是因为我遇上交通阻塞被困住才来晚的。(强调句型)
It was because I was stuck in the traffic that I came late.

- 李江和苏华在我们欢迎英国学生时应该穿什么服装的问题上没有达成一致。(what 引导宾语从句)
Li Jiang and Su Hua don't agree on what we should wear when greeting the British students.
- 马克·吐温享有良好的声誉,他被认为是美国最伟大的作家之一。(过去分词作定语)
Mark Twain, considered to be one of the greatest American writers, enjoys a good reputation.
- 这场比赛意义重大,要求每个人都准时到场。(so... that...)
The game is so significant that it is required that everyone should present themselves punctually.

IV. 完形填空

Ian Ellis was planning on doing some bird-watching. But instead, he took part in an incredible 1 !

As Ian looked through his telescope, he saw the curious 2 . A herd of cows surrounded something in the mud, so Ian set off to see what it was. And what he found was a complete 3 !

The preserve was only a few miles away from the ocean. Somehow, a 5-day-old baby seal (海豹) had found its way to the grassland and had become 4 in the mud. So Ian arranged for it to be taken to the 5 Natureland Seal Shelter.

At the shelter, the seal was named Celebration, and it was 6 that she was suffering from several diseases. But thanks to Ian discovering her, Celebration was right where she 7 to be in order to get well.

She 8 made some friends while she was there! Once Celebration 9 recovered, it was time to release her and her new friend, Charlie, back into the wild.

The two friends were 10 to the seaside by a shelter staff member, where Ian 11 them to say farewell to Celebration. He would do the honour of releasing her back to her true 12 .

Celebration was a bit more hesitant to 13 the human friends she'd made. She gradually made her way to the water and eventually swam out to

sea, but not before 14 back to say goodbye one last time. Ian says overall it really was a 15 experience.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Ian Ellis 抢救了一只小海豹的故事。Ian Ellis 本来想到保护区观察鸟,结果通过望远镜意外发现一群奶牛围着一只陷在泥里的小海豹。他将小海豹送进了海豹避难所医治。小海豹在痊愈后被放归了大海。

- A. event B. rescue
C. ceremony D. get-together
B 后文提到,一只小海豹陷在泥里,Ian Ellis 参加了抢救(rescue)行动。
- A. scene B. conflict
C. animal D. accident
A 根据后文“A herd of cows surrounded something in the mud”可知,从望远镜里,Ian 看到了一个令人好奇的场景(scene)。
- A. wonder B. puzzle
C. joke D. shock
D 根据语境可知,他发现了一件完全令人震惊(shock)的事。
- A. excited B. trapped
C. satisfied D. injured
B 根据后文“in the mud”可知,小海豹陷在泥里。become trapped in 的意思是“被困在……”。
- A. modern B. convenient
C. safe D. nearby
D 根据常识可知,小海豹应该被送到附近的(nearby)海豹避难所。
- A. discovered B. proved
C. ignored D. judged
A 根据上文“At the shelter”及常识可知,来到避难所,工作人员会对小海豹做检查,结果发现(discovered)她受到好几种疾病的折磨。
- A. hoped B. learned
C. needed D. decided
C 根据前文“Celebration was right where”可知,避难所正是她康复所需要(needed)的地方。
- A. even B. still
C. never D. ever
A 根据后文“made some friends while she was there”可知,此处 even 表达强调,意思是“在避难所,她甚至还交了几个朋友”。

- A. actually B. finally
C. fully D. eventually
C 根据下文“recovered”可知,此处的意思是“当小海豹完全(fully)康复时”。
- A. tested B. deserted
C. encouraged D. driven
D 根据后文“to the seaside by a shelter staff member”可知,避难所的工作人员驱车(driven)把小海豹和她的朋友送到海边。
- A. held B. fed
C. met D. forced
C 根据后文“to say farewell to Celebration”可知,Ian 在海边会见(met)小海豹和她的新朋友,跟她告别。
- A. home B. wish
C. aim D. responsibility
A 大自然应该是小海豹真正的家(home)。
- A. protect B. join
C. leave D. appreciate
C 根据“a bit more hesitant to 13 the human friends”可知,离开(leave)她结交的人类朋友,小海豹有点儿犹豫。
- A. ringing B. turning
C. coming D. looking
B 根据后文“back to say goodbye one last time”可知,在游向大海之前,小海豹转过身来(turning)作最后一次告别。
- A. funny B. common
C. dangerous D. fantastic
D 最后一句的意思是“Ian 说,总的来说,这真的是一次美妙的(fantastic)经历”。

【微点写作】观察日志

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

- 向日葵在播种后的一个星期到十天内已经发芽了。

The sunflower has sprouted within a week to ten days of sowing the seed.

- 用藤条支撑它们可以让它们保持直立,直到它们足够大来支撑自己。

Supporting them with a cane will keep them upright until they are big enough to support themselves.

- 向日葵喜欢充足的阳光,但也喜欢保持潮湿。

Sunflowers like plenty of sunshine but also like to be kept moist.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握过去完成时的构成及用法,能够在真实的语境中灵活运用该时态;
2. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
3. 完成关于生物多样性的语篇活动,巩固词汇,并进一步了解自然界中生物的多样性;
4. 能听懂与生物多样性、自然界相关的话题内容,并能够恰当地运用所学表达询问信息、补充信息;
5. 运用多种方法查找信息,了解更多生物多样性的相关知识,并思考这些方法的有效性,提高信息搜集能力。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If anything goes wrong, don't **blame** me. 责怪
2. That is one small step for a man, but one **giant** leap for mankind. 巨大的
3. If something exists or happens **worldwide**, it exists or happens throughout the world. 遍及全世界
4. As is known to all, sheep and **goats** have a pair of horns (角). 山羊

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
characteristic <i>n.</i> 特征, 特性	character <i>n.</i> 特征; 人物, 角色; 汉字
decline <i>v.</i> 减少	declining <i>adj.</i> 下降的; 衰落的
primitive <i>adj.</i> 原始的, 低等的	primitively <i>adv.</i> 最初地
extinct <i>adj.</i> 灭绝的	extinction <i>n.</i> 灭绝
production <i>n.</i> 生产; 产量	produce <i>v.</i> 生产 <i>n.</i> 农产品
	product <i>n.</i> 产品

III. 补全短语

1. be native to 源于……的, 原产于……
2. in the end 最后, 终于

3. speaking of 谈到, 谈及
4. fight off 抵抗; 击退
5. by contrast 相比之下
6. so far 到目前为止
7. carry out 实施
8. be home to 是……的栖息地
9. be harmful to 对……有害

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: so... that...

Some can be very small, like bacteria and viruses, which are so small that we cannot see them with only our eyes.

有些可能非常小, 比如细菌和病毒, 以至于我们只用眼睛是看不见它们的。

2. 句型公式: 同位语从句

There is evidence that all the different iguanas have developed from more primitive ones and share a common ancestor.

有证据表明, 所有不同的鬣蜥都是从更原始的鬣蜥进化而来, 并有着共同的祖先。

3. 句型公式: 主语 + be + *adj.* (+ for sb.) + 不定式

Gregor Mendel chose to study pea plants because their characteristics were easy to control.

格雷戈尔·孟德尔选择研究豌豆植株是因为它们的性状易于控制。

任务型课堂

1. **blame** *v.* 责怪, 指责; 把……归咎于 *n.* (对错误或坏事应负的) 责任

(教材原文) The extinction of the Pinta Island tortoise is **blamed** on humans.

平塔岛象龟的灭绝归咎于人类。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The report **blames** poor safety standards **for** the accident.

报告把事故归咎于安全方面没有达标。

One of the computers is broken and she's **blaming** it **on** me.

其中一台电脑坏了,她怪罪于我。

Officials believe that more than one person may **be to blame for** the fire.

政府官员认为,这场火灾可能不止一个人负有责任。

You shouldn't **put/lay the blame for** the failure **on** John.

你们不应该把这次失败归咎于约翰。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) blame... for (doing) sth. 因(做)某事而指责……;把(做)某事归咎于…… blame sth. _____ sb. 将某事归咎于某人 sb. be _____ blame for (doing) sth. 某人因(做)某事而应该受到责备 (2) bear/take/shoulder the blame 承担责任 put/lay the blame (_____ sth.) on... (将某事)归咎于……
探究结论	(1) on; to (2) for

名师点拨

to blame 含有被动意义,不能用“to be blamed”结构。

He was blamed for the accident, but he blamed it on others. In fact, it is he, not others, that **is to blame** for it.

他因这起事故受到责备,但他把它归咎于别人。事实上,应该是他,而不是别人,对此负有责任。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Lots of people find it hard to get up in the morning, and put the blame on the alarm clock.

② —Do you know who left the computer on all night long?

—It seems that Tom is to blame (blame). He played computer games last night.

(2) 一句多译

就这起严重的交通事故来说,警方已经查明事情的起因,那位卡车司机应为此事负责。

① In terms of this severe traffic accident, the police had figured out the cause of the case and it was the truck driver that was to blame.

② In terms of this severe traffic accident, the police had figured out the cause of the case and it was the truck driver that should take/bear/shoulder the blame for it.

2. decline v. 减少;下降;衰退;谢绝;婉拒 n. 下降;衰落

(教材原文) After goats in particular had been brought to the island, the Pinta Island tortoise population **declined**.

特别是山羊被带到岛上之后,平塔岛象龟的数量下降了。

一感 读句子感悟用法

In spite of many invitations, he would always **decline to visit** Oxford University.

尽管多次受到邀请,他总是婉言谢绝参观牛津大学。

In Uganda, food prices **declined by** 23 percentage points over this period.

在乌干达,食品价格在这段时间下降了23%。

Thankfully the smoking of cigarettes is **on the decline**.

令人欣慰的是,吸烟量在逐渐下降。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) decline _____ ... 谢绝/拒绝做…… decline by... 下降了…… decline to 下降至…… (2) a decline in 在……方面下降 be in decline 处于下降/衰退中 be _____ the decline 在衰退;在没落中;在削减
探究结论	(1) to do (2) on

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① There has been a steady decline in poverty over recent years.

② The crime rate in this area is on the decline.

③ He declined to answer (answer) my questions.

④ There was a decline in holiday sales over the past five years.

⑤ Prices there are projected to decline by another 30 per cent or so.

3. “主语+be+adj.(+for sb.)+不定式”句型

(教材原文) Gregor Mendel chose to study pea plants because **their characteristics were easy to control**.

格雷戈尔·孟德尔选择研究豌豆植株是因为它们的性状易于控制。

一感 / 读句子感悟用法

This machine is very easy to operate. Anybody can learn to use it within a few minutes.

这种机器很容易操作。任何人都能在几分钟内学会使用它。

The room is comfortable to live in.

这个房间住起来舒适。

English is difficult to learn well in a short time.

=It is difficult to learn English well in a short time.

很难在短时间内把英语学好。

二探 / 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1)“主语+be+adj.(+for sb.)+不定式”是一个常用句型,其用法如下:</p> <p>①不定式中的动词和句子的主语之间存在逻辑上的_____关系,但在形式上用不定式的主动形式表示被动意义。不定式前面有时会通过介词 for 带上其逻辑主语。</p>
------	--

探究要点	<p>②若不定式中的动词是不及物动词,其后要加上结构或含义所需的_____。</p> <p>③此结构中的形容词多为表示主语性质、特征的词,如 difficult, hard, important, impossible, pleasant, comfortable, dangerous, heavy 等。</p> <p>(2)该句型可转换为“<u>It+be+adj.(+for sb.)+_____</u>”。</p>
探究结论	<p>(1)①动宾 ②介词</p> <p>(2)不定式</p>

三评 / 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I like getting up very early in summer. The morning air is so fresh to breathe (breathe).

② To their surprise, they found that the lecture given by the famous professor was easy to understand (understand).

③ It was only after he had read the papers that Mr Brown realised the task was extremely difficult to complete (complete).

(2) 一句多译

我的同班同学容易相处。

① My classmates are easy to get along with.

② It is easy to get along with my classmates.

语法探究

过去完成时

「语法感知」

① By the time he **was** 14, Mozart **had composed** many pieces for the harpsichord, piano and violin, as well as for orchestras.

② After they **had known** each other for many years, Beethoven said, “He is a good composer, but he **has taught** me nothing.”

③ Before they **visited** India, they **had recorded** seven albums.

1. 句子①中黑体部分使用的时态分别是一般过去时和过去完成时。

2. 句子②中黑体部分使用的时态分别是过去完成时

和现在完成时。

3. 句子③中黑体部分使用的时态分别是一般过去时和过去完成时。

「语法精讲」

一、构成

had+过去分词

二、功能

1. 表示在过去某一时刻或动作以前完成了的动作,也可以说是过去的过去;可以用 by, before 等引导的介词短语或时间状语从句表示,也可以用表示过去的动作表示,还可以通过上下文表示。

By nine o'clock last night, we **had got** 200 pictures from the spaceship.

到昨晚九点钟,我们已经收到两百张飞船发来的图片。

2. 表示从过去的某一时刻开始,一直延续到过去另一时间的动作或状态,常和 for, since 构成的时间状语连用。

I **had been** at the bus stop for 20 minutes when a bus finally came.

当公共汽车最终到来的时候,我在公交车站已经等了二十分钟。

He said he **had worked** in that factory since 1949.

他说自从 1949 年以来他就在那家工厂工作。

3. 过去完成时常常用在 told, said, knew, heard, thought 等动词后的宾语从句(或间接引语)中,这时从句中的动作发生在主句表示过去的动作之前。

He said that he **had known** her well.

他说他很了解她。

I thought I **had sent** the letter a week before.

我认为我一星期前就把信寄出去了。

4. 状语从句:在过去不同时间发生的两个动作中,发生在前的动作用过去完成时;发生在后的动作用一般过去时,如 when, before, after, as soon as, till/until 引导的复合句。

When I woke up, it **had** already **stopped** raining.

我醒来时雨已经停了。

She didn't go to bed until she **had finished** her work.

她直到把自己的工作做完之后才睡觉。

名师点拨 ■■■■

如果两个动作紧接着发生,则常常不用过去完成时,特别是在包含 before 和 after 的复合句中,因为从句的动作和主句的动作发生的先后顺序已经非常明确,所以可以用一般过去时代替过去完成时。

After he arrived in England, Marx **worked** hard to improve his English.

马克思到达英国之后,努力提高他的英语水平。

5. 动词 think, want, hope, mean, plan, intend 等可以用过去完成时表示过去未曾实现的想法、希望、打算或意图等。

They **had wanted** to help but could not get there in time.

他们本来打算去帮忙,但没有及时赶到那里。

We **had hoped** to be able to come and see you.

我们本来希望能来看看你。

6. 过去完成时还可以用在 hardly... when..., no sooner... than..., It was the first/second... time (that)... 等固定结构或句型中。

Hardly had he **begun** to speak **when** the audience interrupted him.

他刚开始演讲,听众就打断了他。

No sooner had he **arrived than** he went away again. 他刚到就又走了。

It was the third time that he **had been** out of work that year.

这是他那一年第三次失业了。

7. 在含有表示与过去事实相反的虚拟语气的 if 从句中,常用过去完成时。

If we **hadn't made** adequate preparations, the conference wouldn't have been so successful.

如果我们没有做充分准备的话,会议是不会开得这么成功的。

「语法冲关」

I. 单句语法填空

- I didn't know a thing about the verbs, for I had not studied (study) my lesson.
- She found the key that she had lost (lose).
- Did you have difficulty finding Ann's house?
—Not really. She had given (give) us clear directions and we were able to find it easily.
- It was the first time Jane and I had been (be) apart for more than a few days.
- We had hardly left (leave) the dormitory the next morning when we realised (realise) we had left (leave) our map in the room.
- I had intended (intend) to meet you at the airport, but someone came to see me just when I was about to leave.
- If you had taken (take) the medicine yesterday, you might be well now.
- Is Peter coming?
—No, he changed (change) his mind after a phone call at the last minute.

II. 完成句子

- Mr Smith died yesterday. He had been a good friend of mine.
史密斯先生昨天去世了。他一直是我的好朋友。
- I returned the book that I had borrowed.
我已归还了我借的书。
- No sooner had I seen him than I knew he was the man the police were looking for.
我一见到他就知道他是警察要找的人。
- It was the first time that he had taken the train to a distant place on his own since he was born!
这是他有生以来第一次独自一人乘坐火车到一个很远的地方去。
- He had thought to send for a doctor but he didn't.
他原本想去请医生来的,但是没去。

课后素养评价(二十三)

I. 选词(或短语)填空

characteristic; hear of; on the decline; by the way;
primitive; be native to; be to blame

- The only apple that is native to North America is the crabapple (红果).
- From the chart, we can see that the number of dolphins in China is on the decline.
- Primitive humans needed to be able to react like this to escape from dangerous animals.
- It's typical of him to forget. No wonder that he was to blame for not finishing the task on time.
- Genes determine the characteristics of every living thing.
- I've heard of this film, but never actually watched it.
- By the way, when did you say this photo was taken?

II. 单句语法填空

- The town government had to find a new place to rebuild it, for it had been ruined (ruin) by a strong earthquake.
- If it had not been (be) for his invitation the other day, I should not be here now.
- No sooner had the writer stepped (step) on the stage than the audience broke (break) into thunderous applause.
- I had thought (think) that he would give me some help but he didn't.
- I hear you worked very late yesterday.
—Yes, it had been (be) completely dark by the time I left (leave) the office.
- That was the first time I had been (be) to Beijing so I had great difficulty finding the hotel.
- The Smiths moved to Canada permanently in the 1980s, but before then they had visited (visit) it several times.
- I finally got first prize in the competition last week.
—You deserved it. You had worked (work) so hard for several weeks.
- In my opinion, Jack is a person who is easy to persuade (persuade).

- We expect him to carry out his promises.
- He tried various jobs and in the end became an accountant.
- I didn't fail the exam; in fact I did rather well!

III. 阅读理解

Scientists have found the world's biggest seagrass ecosystem in the Bahamas. Seagrass refers to dozens of different species of flowering plants that live entirely underwater, producing energy through photosynthesis (光合作用) by absorbing sunlight. Like their land-based relatives, seagrasses have roots and leaves and also produce seeds. Seagrasses grow in salty coastal waters around the world, usually in shallow waters where sunlight is more plentiful. Since seagrasses carry out the process of photosynthesis, they are known to be very effective at storing carbon dioxide, the greenhouse gas. This is because photosynthesis involves plants using sunlight to transform carbon dioxide into oxygen.

These underwater plants play an important role in carbon sequestration, in which carbon is stored in the environment rather than being allowed to float freely in the atmosphere where it can contribute to global warming. According to Gallagher, one of the new study's authors, carbon enters the ocean as part of the carbon cycle, and the seagrass takes in this carbon through photosynthesis via their leaves. This is part one. The second part is when the seagrass transports this carbon through itself, burying and storing it in its root system. Seagrass stores this carbon permanently.

The purpose of the study by Gallagher and his colleagues was to map seagrass in the Bahamas, using data from 15 tiger sharks equipped with tracking instruments that could also take images of the sea floor. That information was then combined with reports from 2,500 surveys by human divers.

Mark Huxham, professor of teaching and research in environmental biology, said, "This brilliant study uses imaginative and exciting new technology, in partnership with tiger sharks. We know seagrass is important for the health of our seas and our planet, but there are major gaps in our understanding about it."

【语篇解读】本文是一篇新闻报道。文章主要介绍了科学家们发现了有史以来最大的海草地,并解释了海草地的作用以及重要性。

1. What is Paragraph 1 mainly about?

- A. The cause of photosynthesis.
B. Living conditions for seagrass.
C. The environmental effect of seagrass.
D. The introduction of photosynthesis.

C 段落大意题。通读第一段的内容可知,本段主要介绍了海草对环境的影响。故选 C。

2. What does the underlined part “carbon sequestration” refer to in Paragraph 2?

- A. Absorbing carbon from the air.
B. Reducing carbon in the roots.
C. Releasing carbon into the air.
D. Keeping carbon in sea plants.

D 词义猜测题。根据第二段中的“These underwater plants play an important role in carbon sequestration, in which carbon is stored in the environment rather than being allowed to float freely in the atmosphere where it can contribute to global warming.”可知, carbon sequestration 是指水下植物把碳封存在水下,避免了这些碳进入大气,和选项 D 意思一致。故选 D。

3. What may Mark Huxham agree with?

- A. Scientists have fully studied seagrass.
B. The study contributes to a new technology.
C. There is still a lot of work to study seagrass.
D. Tiger sharks will be the focus of future studies.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,对海草的研究还需要很多努力。故选 C。

4. What is the purpose of the text?

- A. To inform. B. To criticise.
C. To advertise. D. To persuade.

A 写作意图题。根据第一段和第三段的内容可知,这篇文章是在告知读者海草的作用及重要性。故选 A。

【微点写作】观察日志

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 把花盆放在阳光充足的地方,定期浇水。

Put the flowerpot at a sunny spot and water it regularly.

2. 茎较粗,上面有十多片叶子。

The stem is thicker with over ten leaves on it.

3. 随着时间的推移,树叶变得越来越大。

The leaves are becoming bigger and bigger over time.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

- 识记本课时的重要语言点;
- 理解课文内容,并能够清晰地叙述课文介绍的自然界植物间的几种交流方式;
- 多角度了解自然界,储备相关词汇及知识,并能够恰当地运用所学表达讲述与自然相关的内容;
- 更深刻地认识人与自然的关系,理解人与自然和谐相处的重要意义。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇和表达

- detect *v.* 发现,察觉(尤指不易觉察到的事物)
- root *n.* 根

3. link *v.* 把……联系起来;连接

4. centimetre *n.* 厘米

5. after all 毕竟;终究

6. drive away 把……赶走

7. tiny amounts of 微量的

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. myth *n.* (古代的) 神话
2. legend *n.* 传说, 传奇(故事)
3. wasp *n.* 黄蜂
4. chilli *n.* 辣椒
5. fungus *n.* 真菌
fungal *adj.* 真菌的

6. cybercrime *n.* 网络犯罪
7. pesticide *n.* 杀虫剂, 农药
8. communicate with 和……交流
9. in some ways 在某些方面
10. steal... from 从……偷
11. call for help 呼救

「 课文速览 」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1—Para. 2	The introduction to talking plants.	Talking plants have long been a thing of 1. myths and legends. There are many stories of talking trees. New research has revealed that it appears that plants can 2. communicate after all.
Para. 3—Para. 5	Ways used by plants to communicate.	Plants use 3. chemicals to communicate. They release chemicals from the 4. leaves that are being eaten. Plants also use 5. sound to communicate. Some plants make noises with their 6. roots . Some trees make clicking noises when there is not enough water. Plants can share information with each other, and they can 7. steal food or spread poisons to attack other plants.
Para. 6	The future of the research.	Maybe one day we will know enough about plant 8. communication to be able to “talk” with them ourselves.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

1. Which plants communicate by making noises according to the passage?
A. Corn and wheat.
B. Corn and chilli.
C. Wheat and chilli.
D. Chilli and rice.
2. Scientists hope to learn more about plants releasing warning chemicals to _____.
A. produce them
B. promote them
C. grow crops without pesticides
D. analyse them
3. Which one is RIGHT about plants communicating using sound?
A. Sometimes people can hear the sounds produced by plants.
B. All plants can tell whether the sounds are helpful or unfriendly.

- C. When some trees make clicking noises, this indicates flood is approaching.
D. It is surprising that plants can use sound to communicate.
4. How does the fungal network connect?
A. By linking the roots of different plants to each other.
B. By linking the leaves of different plants to each other.
C. By linking the stems of different plants to each other.
D. By linking the fruit of different plants to each other.
5. What can be inferred from the text?
A. Talking trees are not legends but scientific facts.
B. There is no use learning about how plants communicate.

C. The wasps attracted by the chemicals are harmful to the plants.

D. The “wood wide web” is absolutely safe in the plant world.

答案:1~5 BCDA

II. 课文语法填空

We have had a belief that talking plants are fantasy, but new research has revealed something **1. amazing** (amaze): it appears that plants can communicate in three ways.

First, some plants use chemicals **2. to communicate** (communicate) with each other. For example, when a bean plant gets **3. attacked** (attack) by insects, it will release tiny amounts of chemicals from the leaves that **4. are being eaten** (eat). This is like a warning to other bean plants. More **5. surprisingly** (surprise), plants also use sound to communicate. Some plants also “listen” to the noises from other plants. A chilli plant can tell if a neighbouring plant is helpful **6. or** unfriendly. Most surprisingly of all, plants have **7. an** amazing system of communication called the “wood wide web”. Using the wood wide

web, plants can share information and even food with each other. **8. However**, the wood wide web has its own version of “cybercrime”. Plants can steal food **9. from** each other or spread poisons to attack other plants. Scientists will learn how to create a “firewall” to help prevent these attacks.

Scientists are learning more about the secret ways in **10. which** plants talk to each other. Maybe one day we will be able to “talk” with plants.

III. 阅读升华

1. What ways can plants use to communicate by modern research?

Chemicals, sound and the wood wide web.

2. What discoveries are described in the two reading passages in this unit and what their meanings have in common?

Passage 1 reveals the discovery of evolution and Passage 2 reveals the discovery of communication between plants. They all reflect that there are numerous secrets in nature that remain to be explored.

课后素养评价(二十四)

I. 单词拼写

- There is a famous Greek myth (神话) in which Icarus flew too near to the sun.
- She was a legend (传奇) in her own lifetime.
- The tests are designed to detect (发现) the disease early.
- These are vegetables grown without the use of pesticides (杀虫剂).
- I pulled the plant up by the roots (根).
- The video cameras are linked (连接) to a powerful computer.
- Cooperation is a key element in the fight against cybercrime (网络犯罪).
- A centimetre (厘米) can be infinitely divided into smaller units.

II. 短语填空

<p>tiny amounts of; blame... on; decline to; in some ways; be characteristic of; after all; drive away; be linked with</p>
--

- The wide use of computers is characteristic of the Information Age.
- Tom was in some ways a younger clone of his handsome and enthusiastic father.
- The number of staff in this factory has declined to 1,000.
- Why do you always blame your failure on others?
- These scientists find that the Martian atmosphere contains only tiny amounts of water.
- Television stations around the world are linked with each other by satellite.

7. Why are you so anxious? It isn't your problem after all.

8. I saw him drive away in the direction of the town.

III. 补全句子

1. 他总是强烈渴望学习如何飞行。(how to)

He always had a strong desire to learn how to fly.

2. 有些喜剧演员就人们的行为方式或日常生活开玩笑。(way)

Some comedians tell jokes about the way people behave or about daily life.

3. 要学好汉语,你最好住在一个中国家庭里。(不定式作目的状语)

To learn Chinese well, you'd better live with a Chinese family.

4. 玛丽和她的姐妹们正在中国学习汉语。(as well as)

Mary as well as her sisters is learning Chinese in China.

5. 去年在这座桥上花费了许多钱。(amount)

Large amounts of money were spent on the bridge last year.

IV. 七选五

Are plants intelligent? Science is beginning to think so. In 2013, *The New Yorker* published an article that set the plant science world on fire, forever changing the way both the public and researchers looked at and studied the plant kingdom. The "Intelligent Plant" was previously unheard of. 1 But fast forward to 2023, there are now dozens of research papers and hours of video prepared and published by plant biologists discussing so many facts of plant intelligence. 2

Communication: A lot of evidence suggests that plants, trees in particular, can communicate with one another. 3 It is in some ways similar to the Internet we use. The idea of plants forming such a relationship to interact is considered as an evolutionary outcome.

Learning: 4 What if plants can learn from experiences like the dogs? The scientists designed

experiments, whose goal was to prove whether plants could learn, an idea that seemed impossible. Ultimately, they succeeded in not only their experiments, but also in proving that plants can actually learn.

Memory: As research and experiments continue into the plant memory, people can't help but ask the question "how can something without a brain have memories?" Studies have determined that plants can indeed learn and create memories. 5

Figuring out the "plant brain" question is the logical next step. As more research comes in, the more it seems to indicate plant intelligence as a very real possibility.

A. Can plants be taught?

B. Can they remember things in general?

C. This communication occurs through underground networks.

D. It makes no sense to research plants communication methods.

E. They can display their memory recall through learned response.

F. The following behavioural characteristics are from the experiments.

G. Therefore, the plant biology community claimed it was completely baseless.

答案:1~5 GFCAE

【微点写作】观察日志

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 它的茎已经长到大约三米高,而且已经开出了花。

The stem has grown to around 3 metres tall and has produced a flower.

2. 这朵花是黄色的,形状像太阳。

The flower is yellow, and shaped like the sun.

3. 你的房间将被它们巨大的、引人注目的头和花瓣点亮。

Your room will be brightened up with their large, dramatic heads and petals.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点；
2. 掌握说明文的文体特征，并能够运用所学知识写观察日志；
3. 进一步了解自然，形成与自然和谐相处的积极的人生态度。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. **Pesticides** are chemicals that farmers put on their crops to kill harmful insects. 杀虫剂
2. Even if you plant the seeds upside down, the **roots** will still grow down. 根
3. Television stations around the world are **linked** by satellite to guarantee the quality of broadcast. 连接
4. The ants are no larger than one **centimetre** across but with awe-inspiring strength. 厘米

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>myth</u> <i>n.</i> (古代的)神话	mysterious <i>adj.</i> 神秘的
<u>legend</u> <i>n.</i> 传说, 传奇 (故事)	legendary <i>adj.</i> 传说中的
<u>detect</u> <i>v.</i> 发现, 察觉 (尤指不易觉察到的事物)	detection <i>n.</i> 发现, 察觉
	detective <i>n.</i> 侦探
<u>warning</u> <i>n.</i> 警示, 警告	warn <i>v.</i> 警告
<u>fantasy</u> <i>n.</i> 幻想, 想象	fantastic <i>adj.</i> 极好的; 幻想的

III. 补全短语

1. after all 毕竟; 终究
2. drive away 把……赶走
3. tiny amounts of 微量的
4. communicate with 和……交流
5. in some ways 在某些方面
6. steal... from 从……偷

7. call for help 呼救

8. serve as 用作; 充当

9. side by side 并肩

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: be said to...

Alexander the Great and Marco Polo were said to have visited such a tree in India.

据说亚历山大大帝和马可·波罗在印度曾参观过一棵这样的树。

2. 句型公式: with 复合结构

With us long believing that talking plants are fantasy, new research has revealed something amazing...

长期以来, 我们一直认为会说话的植物是幻想的产物, 但是新的研究展现了某些惊人的东西……

3. 句型公式: 现在分词作状语

Using the wood wide web, plants can share information and even food with each other.

利用树联网, 植物可以彼此共享信息甚至食物。

4. 句型公式: 以 way 作先行词的定语从句

Scientists are learning more every day about the secret ways in which plants talk to each other.

科学家们每天都在学习更多关于植物相互交流的秘密方式。

5. 句型公式: enough to do

Maybe one day we will know enough about plant communication to be able to “talk” with them ourselves.

也许有一天, 我们会对植物的交流有足够的了解, 能够亲自和它们“交谈”。

任务型课堂

1. link v. 把……联系起来; 连接 n. 环; 联系; 纽带

(教材原文) Most surprisingly of all, plants have an amazing system of communication that can **link** nearly every plant in a forest.

最令人惊讶的是, 植物有一套惊人的通信系统, 几乎可以连接森林中的每一种植物。

一感 读句子感悟用法

This old Silk Road **linked** China **with** the West in ancient times.

这条古老的丝绸之路在古代把中国和西方连接了起来。

The idea is to **link** the high-rise towers **together** with bridges.

这个想法是把高层塔楼用桥梁连接在一起。

We have decided to **link up with** the company.

我们已决定与那个公司携手合作。

There is convincing evidence of **a link between** exposure to the sun **and** skin cancer.

有可靠证据表明日光曝晒与皮肤癌之间有联系。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) link... to/with... 将……和……联系/连接起来 link... _____ 把……连接在一起 link _____ with... 与……联合; 使与……衔接 (2) a link between A and B A与B之间的联系
探究结论	(1) together; up

三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① A subway line will link the airport to/with the city centre.

一条地铁线将把机场和市中心连接起来。

② Is there a link between smoking and lung disease?

吸烟与肺部疾病之间有关系吗?

③ His heart is linked with the hearts of the masses.

他和群众心连心。

2. drive away 把……赶走

(教材原文) Some of these chemicals **drive** insects **away**. Others attract insects—the wasps!

其中一些化学物质会驱走昆虫。另外一些则会吸引昆虫——黄蜂!

一感 读句子感悟用法

After two and a half years, the mother **drove** the young panda **away**.

两年半后, 熊猫妈妈把小熊猫赶跑了。

As they **drove off**, the police arrived.

随着他们驾车离开, 警察也赶到了。

He was **driven out of** a side entrance with his hand covering his face.

他被从侧门赶了出来, 一只手还捂着脸。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) drive _____ 开车离开 drive sb. crazy/mad 把某人逼疯 drive sb./sth. _____ sth. 把某人/物赶出去 (2) go for a drive 开车去兜风
探究结论	(1) off; out of

三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① Someone drove the car away last night.

昨天夜里有人把车开走了。

② I watched several people go by, get into their cars and drive off.

我看着几个人走过, 上车然后开车离开。

③ Yesterday the children nearly drove her crazy/mad by making fun of her.

昨天孩子们取笑她, 这简直让她发疯。

3. be said to... 据说……

(教材原文) Alexander the Great and Marco Polo **were said to have visited** such a tree in India.

据说亚历山大大帝和马可·波罗在印度曾参观过一棵这样的树。

[句式分析] 本句属于“sb./sth. is said to do/to be...”句型, 意为“据说……”, 该句型可以改写为“It is said that...”或“People say that...”。

一感 读句子感悟用法

Our headmaster **is said to go to** New York next month.

据说我们校长下个月要去纽约。

It is reported that another meeting will be held between the two sides.

据报道,双方将会举行另外一次会议。

It is suggested that the English evening **(should) be held** on Saturday.

有人建议,英语晚会周六举行。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)在“It + is/was + 过去分词 + that...”句型中,It是形式主语,that引导的从句作真正的主语。该句型可以转化为“sb. + 谓语动词 + that...”或“sb./sth. + be + 过去分词 + _____ sth./ _____ sth./ _____ sth.”(根据不定式和谓语动词之间的关系确定使用不定式的一般现在时、现在进行时还是现在完成时)。”
	(2)常用于该结构的动词有 say, believe, report, suggest, know, hope, require, demand, hope, order 等,如: It is believed that... = sb./sth. is believed to do sth. 人们都相信……;人们都认为…… It is reported that... = sb./sth. is reported to... 据报道…… It is suggested that... = sb./sth. is suggested to... 有人建议…… It is thought that... = sb./sth. is thought to... 人们认为…… It is known that... = sb./sth. is known to... 众所周知……
探究结论	(3)在句型“It is suggested/required/demanded/ordered... + that 从句”中,that 从句中的谓语动词用“_____”,其中的 _____ 可以省略。
	(4)以上含有 hope, suggest, demand 等的复合句一般不可以转换为简单句。
探究结论	(1)to do; to be doing; to have done (3)should+动词原形; should

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

① He is thought to have acted (act) foolishly. Now he has no one but himself to blame for losing the job.

② It is believed that printing was first invented by

the Chinese.

(2)同义句转换

① He is often thought to help the people in need.
→ It is thought that he often helps the people in need.

② It is said that he is working in that big company.
→ He is said to be working in that big company.

③ It is reported that he has written a new book about workers.
→ He is reported to have written a new book about workers.

4. tiny amounts of 微量的

(教材原文) The plant releases **tiny amounts of** chemicals from the leaves that are being eaten.

这种植物从正遭受啃食的叶子中释放微量的化学物质。

一感 读句子感悟用法

A large amount of public funds is spent on road construction.

大量的公共资金被用在道路建设上。

Modern computers can organise **large amounts of** data very quickly.

现代计算机能迅速处理大量数据。

The visitors to the Palace Museum during National Day last year **amounted to** 650,000.

去年国庆节期间参观故宫的游客达到六十五万人。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) _____ small/large amount of + 名词 少量/大量的…… amounts of + 名词 大量的…… the amount of + 名词 ……的数量
	(2) amount _____ 合计;总计;相当于
探究结论	(1)a (2)to

名师点拨

a huge amount of 通常用来修饰不可数名词。“a huge amount of + 名词”作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式;“huge amounts of + 名词”作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

① It is reported that a large amount of money was spent (spend) on the bridge last year.

② It is reported that large amounts of money were

spent (spend) on the bridge last year.

(2)完成句子

At the start of the year, foreigners living in Italy amounted to 4.56 million.

该年年初,居住在意大利的外国人总计 456 万。

5. way 作先行词的定语从句

(教材原文) Scientists are learning more every day about the secret **ways in which plants talk to each other**.

科学家们每天都在学习更多关于植物相互交流的秘密方式。

[句式分析] 本句中含有定语从句 in which plants talk to each other, 修饰先行词 ways。

一感 读句子感悟用法

I really don't like **the way that he talks**.

我真的不喜欢他说话的方式。

That was **the way in which the old lady looked after us**.

那就是这位老妇人照顾我们的方法。

The way that/which you taught us was unpractical.

你教给我们的方法是不实用的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1)当 way 表示“方式,方法”时,其后常接 that 或 in which 引导的定语从句,也可以将关系词 that 或 in which 省略,此时先行词在从句中作 _____; (2)当 way 在定语从句中作主语、宾语或表语时,要用关系代词 that 或 which 引导定语从句,作宾语时关系代词可以省略; (3)当 way 表示“方式,方法”时,其后还可以接不定式或 of doing sth.。
探究结论	(1)状语

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

Don't give up; you are sure to find a better way to solve (solve) the problem.

(2)完成句子

① I don't like the way (that/in which) you talk to your parents.

我不喜欢你跟你父母说话的方式。

② The way that/which came up at the meeting was practical.

在会议上提出的方法是切实可行的。

写作探究

观察日志

一、写作指导

1. 确定观察对象。确定观察对象是一个事物、一个场景,还是一个过程。
2. 确定观察顺序。对一个事物或一个场景,可以采用从上到下,从前到后,从外部到内部等空间顺序观察。对于一个过程可以按照先后顺序(时间顺序)或逻辑顺序观察。
3. 写出事物的特点,或过程的特点。
4. 一般采用平实的语言。为了便于表达,可以运用对比、比喻等修辞手法。

二、典题示例

下面是一篇记录了制作绿豆芽的过程的观察日记。请根据所给内容用英语完成观察日记。

7月28日 星期六 雨 观察第一天

今天,我拿了十颗绿豆,找了一个空盒子,倒了些水,再把这十颗绿豆放进去。然后我把它放在了厨房的窗台上。

7月30日 星期一 晴 观察第三天

今天下午,我看到几颗绿豆发芽了;绿豆芽长到了1厘米。我往盒子里倒了一些水,把它们放在向阳处,希望它们在阳光的照射下快快成长。

8月1日 星期三 晴 观察第五天

下午我看到所有的绿豆都已经脱壳了,而且又长出了1厘米。我赶紧给它们换上新的水。

8月3日 星期五 晴 观察第七天

今天,在我给绿豆芽换水时,发现绿豆芽上的那条裂缝越来越大。我拿来尺子,量了量豆芽的长度,又长长了1厘米。

8月5日 星期日 晴 观察第九天

今天,我看见豆芽比昨天长了许多。我急忙拿来尺子(量一量),发现我的绿豆芽又长长了1厘米。我想如果我的豆芽每天都长一点的话,我很快就可以吃到自己种的豆芽了。

三、审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第一人称
要点	1. 种豆芽的准备工作 2. 观察过程

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇和表达

- ①pour some water 倒了些水
②come out/sprout 发芽
③grow rapidly 迅速成长
④in the sunshine 在阳光下
⑤change into new water 换新水
⑥measure the length of 测量……的长度
⑦in total/in all 总共

(二)完成句子

- ①I quickly pour some water (倒些水) into the box and put them in the sunny place.
②I hope that they will grow rapidly in the sunshine (在阳光下).
③All the mung beans have been shelled and have grown another centimetre (又长了1厘米).
④I see it (看见它).
⑤I am changing water (换水) for mung bean sprouts.
⑥I find that the crack on the mung bean sprouts is getting bigger and bigger (越来越大).

(三)句式升级

- ①用现在分词作状语连接(二)中的①②句

I quickly pour some water into the box and put them in the sunny place, hoping that they will grow rapidly in the sunshine.

- ②用宾语从句连接(二)中的③④句

I see that all the mung beans have been shelled and have grown another centimetre.

- ③用 when 引导的时间状语从句连接(二)中的⑤

- ⑥句

When I am changing water for mung bean sprouts, I find that the crack on the mung bean sprouts is getting bigger and bigger.

(四)连句成篇

Saturday, July 28th Rainy Observation Day 1

Today, I take ten mung beans, find an empty box, pour some water, and put these ten mung beans in.

Then I put it on the window sill of the kitchen.

Monday, July 30th Sunny Observation Day 3

This afternoon, I see a few mung beans coming out, and the sprouts grow to 1 cm. I quickly pour some water into the box and put them in the sunny place, hoping that they will grow rapidly in the sunshine.

Wednesday, August 1st Sunny Observation Day 5

In the afternoon, I see that all the mung beans have been shelled and have grown another centimetre. I quickly change the water for it.

Friday, August 3rd Sunny Observation Day 7

Today, when I am changing water for mung bean sprouts, I find that the crack on the mung bean sprouts is getting bigger and bigger. I take a ruler and measure the length of the mung bean sprouts. It is another centimetre long.

Sunday, August 5th Sunny Observation Day 9

Today, I think the mung bean sprouts are much longer than yesterday. I quickly take a ruler and find that my mung bean sprouts have grown by 1 cm. I think if they grow a little every day, I can quickly eat my mung bean sprouts.

五、学以致用

下面是一篇记录了葱的成长过程的观察日记。请根据所给内容用英语完成观察日记。

4月12日 星期四 阴有小雨

我拿着葱头到阳台上, 找了一个有土的空花盆。我把土松开, 再把葱头放进去, 然后培土, 最后浇水。

4月18日 星期三 晴

我坚持每天给它浇水。我到阳台上去看我的葱, 发现它居然长高了一点。

4月26日 星期四 晴

我跑到阳台上去看我的葱。让我开心的是葱长高了, 而且变得粗壮了。我真期望我的葱能茁壮成长。

5月2日 星期三 晴

我发现我种的葱长高了许多, 连嫩绿色的叶子也变成深绿色了。

5月7日 星期一 晴

我去看葱, 发现它长高了许多、粗了一点。我真期望它能够继续快速长大。

【参考范文】

Thursday, April 12th Cloudy with light rain

I take the green onion to the balcony and find an empty flowerpot with soil. I loosen the soil, put the green onion in, then cultivate the soil, and finally water it.

Wednesday, April 18th Sunny

I insist on watering it every day. I go to the balcony

to see my green onion, and find that it actually grows a little higher.

Thursday, April 26th Sunny

I run to the balcony to see my green onion. What makes me happy is that the green onion is growing high and thick. I really hope that my green onion can grow well.

Wednesday, May 2nd Sunny

I find that the green onion I plant grows so much that even the green leaves turn dark green.

Monday, May 7th Sunny

I go to see my green onion and find that it grows a lot higher and a little thicker. I really hope it can continue to grow rapidly.

课后素养评价(二十五)

I. 单句语法填空

- Most of us are in favour of his plan for tiny amounts of water are wasted (waste) during the production.
- They point out that this plant sends out some chemical to drive the insect away.
- Officials believe that more than one person may be to blame (blame) for the fire.
- The number of robberies in this area is on the decline.
- Last year the detection (detect) rate for car theft was just 13%.
- It has a lot of words that are similar to words in Spanish.
- She is said to have studied (study) abroad, but I don't know which country she studied in.
- For example, you shouldn't put your bread on your plate.

II. 完成句子

- It's obvious that this man is linked to this accident.
很明显这个人与此次事故有关。
- It is hoped that the terrible disease will soon be controlled.
人们希望这种可怕的疾病能迅速得到控制。
- When he goes out, he often wears sunglasses so that/in order that nobody/no one can recognise him.
他外出时经常戴着太阳镜,这样就没人能认出他了。
- They went home happily, talking and laughing all the way.
他们高高兴兴地回家了,一路上有说有笑。
- The boy was lucky enough to escape being

punished for telling a lie.

这个男孩足够幸运,逃脱了说谎的惩罚。

III. 语法填空

Malaindrano is a giant baobab (猴面包树) tree that is hollowed out (使成中空) for the storage of water, **1. existing** (exist) in the village of Ampotaka in Madagascar. Malaindrano means "he who hates water", **2. but** this baobab doesn't hate water at all. It is so big that many people believe it has never been **3. completely** (complete) filled. Even semi-full, the trees are vital for storing water in one of Madagascar's driest regions. Also known **4. as** bottle trees because of their unique thick trunks, such baobab trees form a network of **5. natural** (nature) water tanks. Using them has allowed people to live in a place where rain is rare, and where the little rain that falls **6. is absorbed** (absorb) quickly by the soil.

Lack of rain can lead to a lack of food. In the 1920s and 1930s, thousands of people **7. died** (die) because of extreme drought. This forced the locals to come up with an idea: hollowing out baobabs **8. to store** (store) water when it is abundant. A large baobab has the **9. ability** (able) to store about 14,000 litres of water. Today, some 20,000 people live in the region, many of **10. whom** rely on the tree water for around a third of the year.

IV. 写作

第一节 书面表达

假定你随一个中学生代表团前往了英国。在这

期间你们参观了英国伦敦郊区的一个名叫 Camden Town 的地方。请你根据参观过程写一篇日记。内容包括:

1. 到达小镇的时间;
2. 你对小镇的印象;
3. 小镇的建筑物;
4. 你们第二天的计划。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The big Town Hall clock was striking midnight when Frank began to cross the bridge. The dark night air was cold and a little wet, and the street lamp gave little light. Frank was anxious to get home and his footsteps rang loudly on the silent night.

When he reached the middle of the bridge, he thought he could hear someone coming near behind him. He looked back but could see no one. However, the sound continued and Frank began to walk more quickly. Then he slowed down again, thinking there was nothing to fear in a town as quiet as this.

Just then, he heard short, quick steps closely behind him. By the time he reached the other side of the bridge, he could almost feel someone at his heels. He turned round and there stood a man in a large coat. A hat was pulled down over his eyes and very little of his face could be seen.

Frank said something about the weather in an effort to be friendly. The man did not answer but asked roughly where Oakfield House was. Frank pointed to a big house in the distance and the stranger continued his way.

Then Frank wondered why the stranger had wanted to go to Oakfield House at such a late hour. He knew that the people who lived there were very rich. Almost without realising what he was doing, he began following the stranger quickly.

The man was soon outside the house and Frank saw him look up at the windows. A light was still on and the man waited until it went out. When about

half an hour had passed, Frank saw him climb noiselessly over the wall and heard him drop on the ground at the other side.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

Now Frank knew what the man wanted to do.

Frank couldn't just stand in the dark and wait. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

April 14th, Thursday

Fine

We had a wonderful time today. Camden Town left a deep impression on me.

It was eight o'clock when we arrived. The town was quite different from what I had seen in other places before. After a short break, we paid a visit to the town. The architecture is astonishing. There are both high buildings and old-style houses. Strangely enough, they match each other so well that you even feel they make a beautiful picture.

Tomorrow we are to visit a local middle school, where we'll have a party with the students. I think it will be another pleasant day for all of us.

第二节 读后续写

Now Frank knew what the man wanted to do.

Everyone knew that Oakfield House was filled with artworks worth millions of dollars. It was clear to Frank that the family inside was in danger. Would the man have a weapon? Would he be strong enough to overpower him before he could harm the people inside? Frank's heart was racing with fear. He reached for his cellphone to call the police, but found it out of power. If only he had charged his phone before leaving the office, but it was too late.

Frank couldn't just stand in the dark and wait.

He had to do something, even if it meant risking his own life. At his feet he silently found several good-sized stones, and he threw them with all his strength right at the windows of the house. The clatter woke up the people inside the house and a light came on upstairs. The man froze, not quite knowing what had just happened. Lights came on everywhere in the house and within a minute the night was filled with sounds of police sirens screaming towards Oakfield House.

读后续写技能养成 || 场景描写——受困脱险

「技能概述」

1. 场景描写——受困脱险

是指对人物在家中、社区或野外等地点活动时遇到险情得到别人的救助或者展开自救的场景描写,如山中遇险得救、落水得救、火灾中得救或逃生、活动中受困得救等。

2. 续写技巧

同学们可以根据不同的地点、不同的险情对遇险或受困人、施救者等的行为和心理特征展开详细描写。

「范例体悟」

Suddenly, he was stuck in the mud and couldn't get out. He struggled hard but he was still trapped. He screamed for help, but all in vain. The boys who had called Henry a coward got out of the water as fast as they could. They were so scared and did not even try to help him.

找出文中有关受困脱险的场景描写。

was stuck in the mud and couldn't get out;
struggled hard; trapped; screamed for help; got
out of the water; scared; did not even try to
help him

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. panic *v.* 惊慌失措
2. struggle *v.* 挣扎
3. quarrel *v.* 争吵
4. rescue *v.* 救援
5. stuck *adj.* 卡住的
6. scream *v.* 尖叫
7. howl *v.* 嚎叫
8. grab *v.* 抓住
9. instinctively *adv.* 本能地
10. abruptly *adv.* 突然
11. well up 涌出
12. drown out 淹没
13. regain one's calm 恢复平静
14. as night set in 当夜幕降临

15. as darkness thickened 当夜色渐浓
16. come into our sight 进入我们的视野
17. fear and despair 恐惧和绝望
18. safe and sound 安全无恙
19. trembling and breathless 颤抖且喘不过气来

II. 佳句背诵

1. Then without waiting a second, he threw the curtain over the snake.
然后不到一秒钟,他就把帘子扔到蛇身上。
2. Mum was shaking like a leaf and the kids were sweating hard.
妈妈抖得像一片叶子,孩子们则冒了很多汗。
3. As soon as the rescue team arrived, they caught the snake and took it along with them.
救援队一到,就抓住了蛇,把它带走了。
4. Mum got back to normal once the snake was caught, but the kids were still scared.
蛇被抓住后,妈妈恢复了正常,但孩子们仍然很害怕。
5. Shocked and dumb, Grady was rooted onto the ground for seconds, and then dashed to their camp desperately, shouting for help in the meantime.
格雷迪惊讶得说不出话来,待在原地愣了几秒钟,然后一边拼命地往营地跑,一边大喊救命。
6. I'd been trapped for such a long time that I no longer expected to make it out alive.
我被困在里面太久了,已经不希望能活着出来了。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. When I was released, I was truly pleased with freedom.
被救出时,我真的为自由感到高兴。
2. He waved wildly and shouted loudly but with no reply from any car.
他疯狂地挥手,大声喊叫,但没有得到任何汽车的回应。
3. Gathering all his strength, he waved his hands again.
他集中所有的力气,又挥了挥手。

4. After realising Richard's situation, the driver got off and assisted Richard onto the back seat with Richard's dogs.

意识到理查德的情况后,司机下了车,和理查德的狗一起把理查德弄到后座上。

5. Richard, whose tears welled up in his eyes, extended his heartfelt gratitude in a weak voice.

理查德热泪盈眶,用微弱的声音表达了他衷心的感谢之情。

II. 用场景描写——受困脱险的方法完成语段

He heard the screams and ran to the river as

soon as possible. 1. Seeing Ronny was almost drowned (看到罗尼快淹死了), Henry took off his clothes immediately and 2. jumped into the water without any hesitation (毫不犹豫地跳进水里). He reached Ronny just 3. as he was sinking the last time (当他正最后一次下沉时). With great effort, and with much danger to himself, he 4. brought Ronny to the shore in time (把罗尼及时带到岸边). Henry was happy to help his friend, 5. though he was extremely tired (尽管他特别地累).

第五单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Are you seeking wildlife volunteer opportunities to support animal conservation efforts? If you are, Animal Care and Wildlife Conservation volunteer abroad projects of International Volunteer HQ (IVHQ) are good choices for you. You'll have the unique chance to support the protection of natural habitats, learn about wildlife conservation techniques and study and monitor animal behaviour.

IVHQ has over 13-year experience working with responsible and trusted wildlife conservation organisations, animal sanctuaries (保护区) and animal shelters around the world. This means you can volunteer abroad with confidence, knowing that your volunteer work with animals and other like-minded travellers will be rewarding and life-changing.

● Our wildlife volunteer opportunities, such as wild elephant conservation in Sri Lanka or wolf conservation in Portugal, are popular options for animal volunteering. Also, you can join one of our animal volunteer work projects in South America or Central America. Here you'll be volunteering in animal shelters and dog rescue centres, providing support in feeding, caring for and playing with domestic animals.

● If you're looking for marine (海洋的) and sea turtle conservation or diving volunteer opportunities, IVHQ offers marine conservation volunteer opportunities across a wide range of destinations including Belize, Costa Rica, Spain and more!

● You don't need to have experience in conservation or animal rescue to make a difference to IVHQ's animal volunteer programmes. With IVHQ, you can volunteer abroad with animals for one week or 24 weeks at any time of the year.

How to get started:

▲ Pick a destination and a project and apply for free.

▲ Meet your personal volunteer travel expert.

▲ Pay the registration fee to secure your place and upgrade your MyIVHQ account.

▲ Get ready to volunteer abroad and we'll support you every step of the way!

Contact:

info@volunteerhq.org

+64-6-758-7949/International

【语篇解读】文章介绍了一个志愿者服务机构。这个机构可以给想参与志愿者活动的人提供多种多样的机会。

1. What do we know about IVHQ?

A. It was founded over two decades ago.

B. It aims to build a wildlife conservation organisation.

- C. It can provide high-quality volunteer projects.
D. It has more volunteer projects at home than it does abroad.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容可知,IVHQ 可以为人们提供优质的、有意义的志愿者项目。故选 C。

2. Which is a suitable destination for participants to help little pet animals?

- A. Portugal. B. South America.
C. Sri Lanka. D. North America.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Also, you can join one of our animal volunteer work projects in South America or Central America. Here you'll be volunteering in animal shelters and dog rescue centres, providing support in feeding, caring for and playing with domestic animals.”可知,如果想帮助一些小宠物,可以选择去南美洲。故选 B。

3. What is a requirement for the programme?

- A. Paying a fee for registration.
B. Having some related experience.
C. Working for at least 24 weeks.
D. Applying for a project one week in advance.

A 细节理解题。根据 How to get started 部分中的“▲Pay the registration fee to secure your place and upgrade your MyIVHQ account.”可知,这个项目的要求是支付注册费用。故选 A。

B

When Johnny, a homeless man, spent his last \$ 20, he wasn't looking at it as an investment—but it's about to pay him huge profits. After he helped a woman who ran out of gas, she returned the favour by raising a lot more on the Internet.

Kate McClure, 27, was driving to visit a friend when she ran out of gas halfway. “He saw me pull over and knew something was wrong,” she wrote. “He told me to get back in the car and lock the doors. A few minutes later, he came back with a red gas can, using his last 20 dollars to make sure I could get home safe.”

She couldn't repay him at that time because she had no cash with her. “I have been stopping by his spot for the past few weeks. I repaid him for the gas and gave him some clothes.” Kate decided to do more for him, so she started a crowdfunding (众筹) campaign on a website, and it quickly gained far beyond its initial \$ 10,000 goal. When it reached \$ 100,000, the fundraising page was shut down for a time at Johnny's request. Because he didn't want to seem like he was taking advantage of the situation. Finally, Kate said that she restarted it

because the public interest had not decreased. She also added that Johnny planned to donate the rest to a good cause.

According to the *New York Post*, Johnny wants to get a job at an Amazon warehouse and a department manager from the tech company has already reached out, saying he wants to help Johnny.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了一位流浪汉拿自己最后的二十美元帮助一名女子,而该女子为感谢他给他筹款的故事。

4. What did Johnny do with his last \$ 20?

- A. He bought Kate some gas.
B. He bought Kate a can of food.
C. He bought Kate some clothes.
D. He rented a car for Kate to visit her friend.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“A few minutes later, he came back with a red gas can, using his last 20 dollars to make sure I could get home safe.”可知,约翰尼用他最后的二十美元给凯特买了汽油。故选 A。

5. Why was the fundraising page closed for a time?

- A. Because people had no more interest in donation.
B. Because Kate was too busy to make efforts for it.
C. Because the goal to raise \$ 10,000 had been achieved.
D. Because Johnny was unwilling to be considered greedy.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“When it reached \$ 100,000, the fundraising page was shut down for a time at Johnny's request. Because he didn't want to seem like he was taking advantage of the situation.”可知,应约翰尼的要求,筹款页面一度关闭,因为他不想让人觉得他是在利用这一形势,从而可以推断出,约翰尼不愿意被认为是贪婪的。故选 D。

6. Which of the following best describes Johnny?

- A. Homeless and hopeless.
B. Lucky and popular.
C. Kind and helpful.
D. Honest and strict.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“A few minutes later, he came back with a red gas can, using his last 20 dollars to make sure I could get home safe.”可知,约翰尼用他最后的二十美元给凯特买汽油,让她能安全到家。再根据第三段中的“*She*

also added that Johnny planned to donate the rest to a good cause.”可知,约翰尼打算把剩下的钱捐给慈善事业。综上可以推断出,约翰尼善良且乐于助人。故选 C。

7. What does the author want to tell us from the text?

- A. Practice makes perfect.
- B. Well begun is half done.
- C. Do good and good will come to you.
- D. Little investments produce huge profits.

C 写作意图题。根据文章大意可以推断出,作者想要通过此文告诉我们:Do good and good will come to you.(善有善报)。故选 C。

C

For many of us, our workplace can be dark, depressing and dull. Windowless rooms and airless open-plan floors can kill motivation and cause a loss to worker performance, possibly even their health.

But a refreshing trend is taking root in workplace design: nature. There's growing evidence showing that workplaces which include natural elements, such as plants, light, colours and shapes, have noticeable and measurable benefits for both companies and their employees.

The positive effects touch on everything from worker happiness and creativity to increased productivity, improved profits, and the improved ability to attract the best workers. It's all based on the principle of biophilia (亲生命性)—the born relationship between humans and the natural world and other living systems. And it's easier to achieve at the office than you think.

“People just don't like using lights in a building with no plants, no views, no natural light,” says Sir Cary Cooper CBE, professor at Lancaster University in the UK. He led a 2015 study on the impact of biophilia in the workplace that surveyed 7,600 workers in 16 countries and found that even small nature-inspired changes can have a great effect.

Responding to the Human Spaces Global Report, those who worked in environments with natural elements reported a 15% higher level of well-being, a 6% higher level of productivity and a 15% higher level of creativity. One third of them said the design of an office would affect their decisions to work for a company. Even so, 58% said there were no live plants at their workplaces and

47% reported having no natural light.

An earlier, 2014 study by Cardiff University in Wales also showed that plants in the office make people happier and more productive. But more research is needed into biophilia, experts say.

【语篇解读】一项研究表明,办公室里的自然元素能让人更快乐、更有效率地工作。

8. What's the purpose of the first paragraph?

- A. To compare different ideas.
- B. To express the author's worry.
- C. To introduce the topic of the text.
- D. To describe the conditions of the workplace.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,本段主要陈述了很多人的工作场所的弊端,扼杀员工的工作积极性,并影响员工的健康,为下文做了铺垫。从而推断出,第一段引出文章的主题。故选 C。

9. What does the underlined word “well-being” mean in Paragraph 5?

- A. Welfare.
- B. Happiness.
- C. Richness.
- D. Honour.

B 词义猜测题。根据第五段中的“those who worked in environments with natural elements reported a 15% higher level of well-being, a 6% higher level of productivity and a 15% higher level of creativity”可知,那些在有自然元素的环境中工作的人的幸福感提高了 15%。故选 B。

10. What can we infer from the text?

- A. Experts will do research in biophilia further.
- B. It's very easy to be successful in a natural workplace.
- C. Over 50% workers are not satisfied with their workplaces.
- D. People will not work for a company without a good environment.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“*But more research is needed into biophilia, experts say.*”可推断出,专家们将进一步开展亲生命性的研究。故选 A。

11. What's the main idea of the text?

- A. People like working in the office with lights.
- B. Natural elements can bring health to the people in the office.
- C. Companies should offer a better environment to their employees.
- D. Natural elements can make people work happily and efficiently.

D 主旨大意题。根据第二段中的“*There's growing evidence showing that workplaces which include natural elements, such as plants, light, colours and shapes, have noticeable and*

measurable benefits for both companies and their employees.”及全文内容可知,文章主要介绍了一项研究,其结果表明办公室里的自然元素能让人更快乐、更有效率地工作。故选 D。

D

In the children's story *Alice in Wonderland*, a character known simply as the Dormouse (睡鼠) keeps napping during the Mad Hatter's tea party, waking occasionally to utter a nonsensical remark. This species, the largest at six inches long, can sleep for more than 11 months of the year; that makes it the longest known hibernator (冬眠动物) on Earth.

However, dormice prefer to sleep in the holes of old trees and centuries of timber harvesting (森林伐木) has highly endangered this kind of animals which play an important role in ecological balance.

So Neris Regional Park's dormouse nest box and conservation programme began in 2005 as part of a sustainable forestry certification with the Forest Stewardship Council, based in Bonn, Germany. So far, park staff has installed 250 nest boxes throughout the park's thick, old-growth oak forests. A dormouse nest box resembles a standard birdhouse spun around backward and tied to a tree trunk. There's enough space between the trunk and the entrance hole for dormice to squeeze in and out of their artificial nest, but so little that it's difficult for predators such as owls to attack. Best of all, nest boxes bring the otherwise mysterious creatures within reach for scientists.

Dormice usually spend around seven months out of the year sleeping in underground holes and venture (冒险) from their holes for a few hours each night to eat. This means opportunities to observe the animals are basically nonexistent. But by placing cameras in nest boxes or just peeking inside, researchers can check in on the animals whenever they want.

In addition to monitoring nest boxes, scientists are seeking out and protecting individual trees that can provide habitat for dormice, which will actually benefit a broad range of other species.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了科学家保护对生态平衡有重要意义的濒危物种睡鼠所做的努力。

12. What made dormice in danger of extinction?

- A. The popularity of the fairy tale.
- B. Outdoor activities of human beings.
- C. The loss of their natural habitat.
- D. Their inability to adapt to the surroundings.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段的内容可知,人类采伐木材,睡鼠就失去了自然栖息地,从而导致其濒危。故选 C。

13. What has Neris Regional Park done to protect dormice?

- A. Drive away owls.
- B. Plant more oak trees.
- C. Put up nest boxes.
- D. Set up an organisation.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*So Neris Regional Park's dormouse nest box and conservation programme began in 2005 as part of a sustainable forestry certification with the Forest Stewardship Council, based in Bonn, Germany.*”可知,Neris 地区公园使用睡鼠巢箱保护睡鼠。故选 C。

14. Why is a dormouse nest box designed like a birdhouse spun around backward the tree trunk?

- A. To make it easy for scientists to observe them.
- B. To protect dormice from the attack of predators.
- C. To beautify the dormice nest box in a unique way.
- D. To make dormice get in and out of the nest more conveniently.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*A dormouse nest box resembles a standard birdhouse spun around backward and tied to a tree trunk. There's enough space between the trunk and the entrance hole for dormice to squeeze in and out of their artificial nest, but so little that it's difficult for predators such as owls to attack.*”可知,睡鼠的巢箱被设计得像一个鸟窝,会绕着树干转,这是为了防止捕食者的攻击。故选 B。

15. What can we learn about dormice in the last two paragraphs?

- A. Dormice seldom get out of the nest for food during daytime.
- B. Dormice can be easily spotted by the scientists in the forest.
- C. Individual trees have been protected as the habitat for dormice.
- D. Cameras put in the nest boxes may influence the life of dormice.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“*Dormice usually spend around seven months out of the year sleeping in underground holes and venture (冒险) from their holes for a few hours each night to eat. This means opportunities to*

知,说的话不那么友好。一个会说一些粗鲁的话,另一个会反击。故选 A。

22. A. meant B. deserved
C. studied D. started
D 根据后文“I'm only doing what he does”可知,这是孩子们的申辩,指责是对方先开始的。故选 D。
23. A. work B. control
C. breath D. curiosity
B 根据上文内容可知,他们处于一个恶性循环中,而且这种循环持续的时间越长,失控的情况就越多。故选 B。
24. A. pay B. help
C. share D. park
A 一天在超市里,正当“我”要付钱的时候,“我”看到一个管状的容器,里面装着小巧别致的巧克力。故选 A。
25. A. hands B. eyes
C. budget D. pocket
C 根据前文“One day in the supermarket”及后文“but I bought them anyway”可知,巧克力不在作者购物的预算中。故选 C。
26. A. awarded B. offered
C. showed D. gave
C 在家里,“我”把孩子们召集在一起,给他们看巧克力。故选 C。
27. A. like B. buy
C. need D. make
B 大儿子问妈妈为什么买巧克力。故选 B。
28. A. masters B. stoppers
C. friends D. designers
B 作者告诉孩子们它们是让争吵停止的东西。故选 B。
29. A. surprised B. upset
C. content D. bored
A 根据上文“They are argument 28”和之后作者的解释可知,孩子们对妈妈说的话不理解,且感到惊讶。故选 A。
30. A. frowned B. whispered
C. admitted D. agreed
D 根据后文“and I gave them each a piece of chocolate”可知,孩子们表示同意,愿意品尝。故选 D。
31. A. example B. rule
C. news D. result
B 根据“Whoever stops an argument 32 one, even though mother stops it.”可知,这是作者提出的规则。故选 B。
32. A. gets B. finds
C. uses D. buys

A 无论谁停止了争吵,都会得到一块巧克力。故选 A。

33. A. place B. reason
C. way D. meaning
C 在接下来的几天里,“我”用了一种不同的方式来停止他们之间的争吵。故选 C。
34. A. came down B. made up
C. set out D. broke out
D 每当口角爆发。故选 D。
35. A. selfless B. silent
C. cautious D. mad
B 根据上文“Who's going to stop this argument?”可知,每个人就都沉默了。故选 B。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

The silent killer—air pollution causes seven million premature (过早的) **36. deaths** (death) a year, not just in **37. developing** (develop) countries but also in the UK and the USA as well. In China, people are well aware of the health problems it brings.

I check every part every day. If it has heavy air pollution, I will prepare masks for my family. I dislike **38. it** when the air is bad. Because bad air makes it difficult for me to breathe. I think it does influence my **39. performance** (perform) at work. A new research in China has also found a link between air quality and levels of intelligence. In the study, 25,000 people living across China **40. were tested** (test) in language and maths skills last year. They found the results of those **41. who** lived in more polluted areas were **42. negatively** (negative) impacted, especially in languages. It adds to a growing body of evidence that air pollution has an effect not just on the lungs and heart **43. but** on the brain.

This research shows that the longer we are exposed to air pollution, the **44. more** (many) problems we're storing up for later life. Campaigners hope this study will persuade the British government **45. to think** (think) hard before it publishes its clean air strategy next year.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 书面表达(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,你作为学校的一位学生代表参加“国际中学生交流营”活动。请用英语写一篇演讲稿,呼吁人们共同应对自然灾害,保护地球家园。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

“I’m going to school today!” announced my little brother, Trevor, bouncing to the breakfast table.

Mum looked at me. “Isn’t it great, Annie? You’ll both be at the same school! And I can’t help remembering your first day to school when I had to calm you down by blowing kisses.”

Actually, it was not great at all. School used to feel like my thing. But now he would sit in my old classroom, with my old teacher. Enough! I hated to see the naughty Trevor as part of my school life.

As we arrived at the school gate, Trevor turned to me and asked whether he could play with me during the break, worried and hesitant. I shook my head and reminded him of the school rules: You small kids play in the kindergarten area. I stay in the big playground!

I pulled Trevor forward and led him to his classroom, where he was greeted by his teacher, Mrs Morena, “Hello, Trevor! Want to come and meet the other kids?”

Trevor nodded and let go of my hand. I disappeared in a flash, excited to join my friends. When the bell rang, I was given a seat by an open window where I could see the kindergarten room if I looked outside. I faced forward, trying to focus on what the teacher was saying. For no reason, a question continuously crossed my mind: How was Trevor?

During the break, I forgot all about Trevor. It was great to be back at school! I was running to the slide when a loud cry rang out across the playground. It sounded familiar.

I looked to the kindergarten area. There was Trevor sitting in the sandbox, tears on his face.

“I want to go home!” he howled. Mrs Morena was talking to him, but he was still crying.

I took another step towards the slide. Then Trevor cried again. My feet turned, and I was running towards him. But there was a fence between the kindergarten area and the big playground, and I couldn’t go where he was.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

Then, I did the best thing I could think of. _____

Soon the bell rang and the school was over. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear friends,

I am very honoured to be here to give you a speech.

As we all know, with global warming becoming more and more serious, various natural disasters occur frequently, which cause thousands of people to lose their lives and leave more people homeless. What’s worse, many people haven’t realised that it is human activities that contribute to the disasters. What really shocks me is that people don’t stop doing damage to the Earth.

Only when people take effective measures can some natural disasters be prevented. Let’s work together and make the Earth a better place to live in.

Thank you!

第二节 读后续写

Then, I did the best thing I could think of. I stood on the very edge of my playground and called, “Trevor!” He looked up and ran to the fence. I blew him a kiss. He stopped crying. I blew another one, and he began to smile. “What are you doing?” Lisa asked. “When my mum used to drop Trevor off at daycare, she’d calm him down by blowing kisses like this,” I explained. “Can I try?” she asked. “Yes,” I said, and she blew Trevor a kiss. Soon Emma and Grace were blowing kisses, too. Trevor just smiled.

Soon the bell rang and the school was over. Mrs Morena came to get him, and he pulled a long face again. I had an idea. “Trevor! I’ll be in that window over there.” I pointed. “I’ll blow kisses through your window, OK?” As Mrs Morena led him inside, she lowered herself so Trevor could whisper in her ear. I ran to my classroom and looked out to see her opening the kindergarten window. I blew a kiss. Trevor was inside his classroom. He blew a kiss back and smiled.

Unit 6

Nurturing nature

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 略读课文，体会“天路”对作者的特殊意义，并把握作者的写作意图；
3. 了解世界自然文化遗产，初步思考人类在发展经济的同时如何保护自然文化遗产。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇和表达

1. wander *v.* 徘徊
2. steadily *adv.* 平稳地
3. leisure *n.* 空闲, 闲暇
4. scenery *n.* 风景, 景色
5. splendid *adj.* 壮丽的
6. massive *adj.* 巨大的
7. delicate *adj.* 脆弱的
8. at one's leisure 空闲时
9. put... into operation 使开动; 使运转; 使……实施; 使……生效
10. pass by 经过

11. work on 致力于; 忙于
12. bring... to life 使苏醒, 使复活

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. landmark *n.* 地标
2. antelope *n.* 羚羊
3. plateau *n.* 高原
4. radiation *n.* 辐射
5. mirror-like *adj.* 如镜面般的
6. wetland *n.* 湿地
7. permafrost *n.* 永久冻土层
8. Tibetan *adj.* 西藏的
9. grassland *n.* 草原
10. catch one's eye 引起某人的注意, 吸引某人的视线
11. overcome the challenges 攻克难题
12. among the top concerns 高度重视的问题之一

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1—Para. 2	The beginning of my journey.	I am travelling along the Qinghai-Xizang Railway, during which time, the song “Sky Railway” has been 1. <u>playing</u> inside my head. Taking years to complete, the railway is a record of all of our efforts to overcome the most difficult 2. <u>engineering</u> challenges. How to protect the delicate ecosystem was among the top 3. <u>concerns</u> .
Para. 3—Para. 6	The landmarks I see.	The first landmark to catch my eye is the 4. <u>splendid</u> Qingshuihe Bridge, which is the world's longest bridge built over permafrost with some passages under the railway for animals to move safely and 5. <u>freely</u> . We built 675 6. <u>bridges</u> and even moved 140,000 square metres of wetland to a new area to prevent 7. <u>damage</u> to wetlands and grasslands. At last, we reach Tanggula Station and pass Cuona Lake, whose pale blue mirror-like 8. <u>surface</u> is very beautiful.

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 7	My feeling about the Qinghai-Xizang Railway.	Thanks 9. <u>to</u> our efforts, passengers from all over the country have been enjoying these 10. <u>magical</u> landscapes.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- What was the author concerned about most?
 - The cost of the railway.
 - The possibility of success.
 - The efforts to get rid of difficulties.
 - The way to protect the ecosystem.
- According to the third paragraph, what are the passages used for?
 - To make the bridge strong.
 - To let the wildlife eat grass.
 - To protect the safety of the wildlife.
 - To make sure the train passes quickly.
- What can we know from the fifth paragraph?
 - It takes much time to travel to the highest station.
 - The conditions at the station are very tough.
 - Workers often have a rest in higher areas.
 - Measures are taken to ensure workers' health.
- How did the author feel about the Qinghai-Xizang Railway?
 - Proud.
 - Curious.
 - Regretful.
 - Annoyed.
- Why is the Qinghai-Xizang Railway called the "Sky Railway"?
 - Because of its location.
 - Because of so many challenges.
 - Because of the magical landscape.
 - Because of people's admiration.

答案: 1~5 DCDAB

II. 课文语法填空

I am travelling along the Qinghai-Xizang

Railway, during which time, the song "Sky Railway" has been playing inside my head.

1. Taking (take) years to complete, the railway is a record of all of our efforts to overcome the most difficult engineering challenges. How to protect the delicate ecosystem was among the top **2.** concerns (concern). The splendid Qingshuihe Bridge is the first landmark **3.** that catches my eye. It is the world's longest bridge built over permafrost. A group of Tibetan antelopes is moving safely and **4.** freely (free) through the passages. **5.** To prevent (prevent) damage to wetlands and grasslands, we even moved 140,000 square metres of wetland to a new area. **6.** Before I know it, we have reached Tanggula Station **7.** located (locate) at over 5,000 metres above sea level. To make sure we stayed healthy, several oxygen-making stations **8.** were constructed (construct). As we pass Cuona Lake, I feel a sense of pride and **9.** achievement (achieve). We used thousands and thousands of sandbags to build a twenty-kilometre wall to protect the lake from construction waste. Thanks **10.** to our efforts, passengers from all over the country have been enjoying these magical landscapes.

III. 阅读升华

- What did the author do?

A railway worker.

- Use your own words to describe the Qinghai-Xizang Railway.

It's a miracle and a great achievement by Chinese people.

课后素养评价(二十六)

I. 阅读理解

Most gardeners spend the winter eagerly waiting for the return of warm weather when they can get back outside, digging in the dirt and growing things. Brighten the holidays for the gardeners in your life (yourself included!) by giving them the perfect garden gift.

Best Gardening Gift for Houseplants: Brass Watering Can (\$ 42)

Make watering houseplants easier with this watering can that looks like an antique (古董) from Grandma's house. It holds a litre of water and is small enough to reach beneath the leaves and put water directly on the soil, avoiding waste of water.

Best Outdoor Gardening Gift: Fiskars Pruning Shears (\$ 13)

Pruners are important garden tools. Just as cooks need a range of knives for cutting different foods, gardeners need various pruning shears for cutting different sizes of branches and stems. It's perfect for harvesting tomatoes, cutting flowers or deadheading faded blooms.

Best Eco-Friendly Gardening Gift: Behrens Compost(堆肥) Can (\$ 30)

When you have a compost pile outside, it's super handy to have a convenient container to keep food wastes inside. This steel compost can provides a stylish place to temporarily store those potato peels and eggshells. Best of all, it comes with a special design that will trap bad smell.

Best Organising Gardening Gift: Canvas Garden Utility Bag (\$ 30)

Give the gift of organisation with this canvas bag that keeps a gardener's hand tools in one convenient place. The bag has lots of pockets, so your gardener friend has room for all their garden tools. They can carry it out to the garden and have their tools close at hand.

【语篇解读】文章主要向读者介绍了几款适合送给园丁们的礼物。

1. Why is the Brass Watering Can a good gift for gardeners?

A. Because it looks very attractive.

B. Because it prevents leaves from dying.

C. Because it enables gardeners to use water efficiently.

D. Because it holds enough water for all garden plants.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*It holds a litre of water and is small enough to reach beneath the leaves and put water directly on the soil, avoiding waste of water.*”可知,Brass Watering Can 可以避免水浪费,能更有效地利用水。故选 C。

2. Why does the writer mention cooks and knives in the fifth paragraph?

A. To stress the importance of pruning shears.

B. To explain the use of pruners in helping cooks.

C. To show the advantages of pruning shears over knives.

D. To tell readers to choose pruning shears of the suitable size.

A 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“*Pruners are important garden tools. Just as cooks need a range of knives for cutting different foods, gardeners need various pruning shears for cutting different sizes of branches and stems.*”可知,作者以厨师和刀举例是说明修剪机对园丁来说也很重要。故选 A。

3. Which is the best gift for a gardener who wants to keep his tools in an orderly way?

A. Brass Watering Can.

B. Fiskars Pruning Shears.

C. Behrens Compost Can.

D. Canvas Garden Utility Bag.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*The bag has lots of pockets, so your gardener friend has room for all their garden tools. They can carry it out to the garden and have their tools close at hand.*”可知,Canvas Garden Utility Bag 有很多口袋,这能让使用者有序地放园艺工具。故选 D。

II. 七选五

People may appreciate the mighty sea and those deep, dark lakes when it comes to waters. 1 However, ponds are an important body of water as they fight climate change, improve biodiversity and help conservation, according to The Revelator Organization. So if you are thinking about creating a beautiful and enriching element to your garden this

spring, consider a pond.

2 In Switzerland, less than ten percent of the ponds from the last 200 years remain. And in the UK, less than a quarter of the ponds that existed at the start of the 20th century are still around.

Nowadays, a European organization called PONDERFUL is trying to give ponds power by increasing awareness of their importance. They are the unsung heroes of the natural world and are in the front line of climate action, supporting wildlife and capturing harmful emissions.

Adding even a tiny pond in your garden can achieve natural wonders and will actually better all other ecosystems, according to Pond Informer, an online guide about ponds. 3 For example, ponds are a shelter for frogs that eat insects and keep the ecosystem balanced.

They also offer a space for birds to bathe, cool off and drink. 4 They help with pollination, spread seeds, and control insects. Swallows can eat hundreds of thousands of insects each night, bugs that may just munch on your garden during the day!

With help now on the way, Switzerland has made hundreds of new ponds thus increasing the population of birds and frogs, including the endangered European tree frog. 5

- A. Ponds are simply disappearing.
- B. Tiny ponds are usually ignored.
- C. In turn, these birds can benefit your garden.
- D. Your pond can play a part in your community.
- E. People can have a great time by creating the ponds.
- F. A pond becomes home to many plants and animals.
- G. Small, shallow ponds are being restored on former golf courses in the UK.

答案:1~5 BAFCG

【微点写作】招聘广告

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 校报正在为英文版寻找一名编辑。

The school newspaper is looking for an editor for its English edition.

2. 这份工作主要包括两个部分:一是编辑新闻故事,设计标题和安排照片。

The job mainly involves two parts: one is editing news stories, designing headlines and arranging photographs.

3. 二是挑选学生投稿的文章,并将其润色以供实际应用。

The other is selecting articles contributed by students and polishing them for practical use.

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 精读课文,找出青藏铁路建设者们在建设过程中遇到的种种困难以及解决这些困难的方法,感受他们的伟大,激发民族自豪感;
3. 阅读课文,感知其语言特点;
4. 学习并掌握与话题相关的词汇和表达,并能够运用所学语言介绍青藏铁路。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. There are efforts under way to designate the bridge a historic **landmark**. 地标
2. An **antelope** is an animal like a deer, with long legs and horns, which lives in Africa or Asia. 羚羊

3. There is good **grassland** here for your cattle and horses to graze on. 草原
4. **Wandering** in the street, I caught sight of a tailor's shop. 徘徊
5. A **plateau** is a large area of high and fairly flat land. 高原

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
steadily <i>adv.</i> 平稳地	steady <i>adj.</i> 平稳的
leisure <i>n.</i> 空闲, 闲暇	leisured <i>adj.</i> 有空闲的; 悠闲自在的
	leisurely <i>adj.</i> 慢悠悠的; 不慌不忙的 <i>adv.</i> 悠闲地
splendid <i>adj.</i> 壮丽的	splendidly <i>adv.</i> 壮丽地
radiation <i>n.</i> 辐射	radiate <i>v.</i> 辐射; 发射
massive <i>adj.</i> 巨大的	massively <i>adv.</i> 大量地; 大规模地
	massiveness <i>n.</i> 巨大; 大量
delicate <i>adj.</i> 脆弱的	delicately <i>adv.</i> 脆弱地
scenery <i>n.</i> 风景, 景色	scene <i>n.</i> 情景; 场景

III. 补全短语

1. put into operation 投入运行; 使实施
2. among the top concerns 高度重视的事情之一
3. catch one's eye 引起某人的注意, 吸引某人的视线
4. at one's leisure 空闲时
5. bring... to life 使苏醒; 使复活
6. reach out 伸出; 伸手拿……
7. thanks to 多亏; 由于

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 不定式作后置定语

The first landmark to catch my eye is the splendid Qingshuihe Bridge, the world's longest bridge built over permafrost.

第一个吸引我眼球的地标是壮观的清水河大桥, 它是世界上最长的高原冻土铁路桥。

2. 句型公式: with 复合结构

A group of Tibetan antelopes is moving under the bridge, with some stopping to eat grass at their leisure.

一群藏羚羊正从桥下走过, 有的则停下来悠闲地吃草。

3. 句型公式: before sb. know(s) sth.

The journey has been flying by, and before I know it, we have reached Tanggula Station.

旅途一瞬即逝, 不知不觉, 我们就到了唐古拉站。

4. 句型公式: 形容词作状语

Located at over 5,000 metres above sea level, this is the highest railway station in the world.

它位于海拔五千多米的地方, 是世界上海拔最高的火车站。

5. 句型公式: as 引导时间状语从句

As we pass Cuona Lake, I feel a sense of pride and achievement.

当经过错那湖时, 一股自豪感和成就感在我心中油然而生。

6. 句型公式: “疑问词+不定式”结构

How to protect the delicate ecosystem was among the top concerns.

如何保护脆弱的生态系统是需要我们高度重视的问题之一。

任务型课堂

1. put... into operation 投入运行; 使实施

(教材原文) In which year was the completed Qinghai-Xizang Railway **put into operation**?
青藏铁路是哪一年建成通车的?

一感 读句子感悟用法

We must **put** the plan **into operation** as soon as possible.

我们必须尽快实施计划。

When the machine **is in operation**, keep away from it.

当机器运转时, 请勿靠近。

She was very anxious while her husband was being **operated on**.

彼时她丈夫正在接受手术治疗, 她焦虑万分。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) operation <i>n.</i> 行动; 手术 _____ in operation 在运转; 在工作中; 在使用中
	come into operation 开始工作; 开始生效
	(2) operate <i>v.</i> 操作; 起作用; 动手术 operate _____ 给……动手术
	(3) operator <i>n.</i> 电话员; 操作员; 经营者
探究结论	(1) be (2) on

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Until the rail links are in operation, passengers can only travel through the tunnel by coach.

② In the good care of the nurses, the boy is gradually recovering from his heart operation (operate).

③ He dialed the operator (operate) and put in a call for Rome.

(2) 完成句子

① When does this new law come into operation?
这项新法规何时开始生效?

② The doctors decided to operate on the patient at once.

医生们决定立刻给这个病人动手术。

2. overcome v. 克服

(教材原文) Taking years to complete, the Qinghai-Xizang Railway is a record of all of our efforts to **overcome** the most difficult engineering challenges.

青藏铁路用了多年的时间才建成,它记录了我们为克服最困难的工程挑战所做的一切努力。

一感 读句子感悟用法

How can I **overcome my fear** of speaking in public?
我怎么克服在公共场合讲话的恐惧呢?

Can you **overcome your shortcomings**?
你可以克服你的缺点吗?

They **overcame the enemy** after a long battle.
经过一场漫长的战斗,他们战胜了敌人。

In the final game he easily **overcame his opponent**.
在决赛中,他轻而易举地战胜了他的对手。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	overcome _____ /difficulties 克服恐惧/困难 overcome one's shyness/shortcomings 克服羞怯/缺点 overcome the enemy/one's opponent 战胜敌人/对手
探究结论	fear

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

My parents always tell me that any difficulty can be overcome (overcome) with determination.

(2) 完成句子

I am sure he has enough courage to overcome the difficulty.

我相信他有足够的勇气克服这个困难。

3. catch one's eye 引起某人的注意,吸引某人的视线

(教材原文) The first landmark to **catch my eye** is the splendid Qingshuihe Bridge, the world's longest bridge built over permafrost.

第一个吸引我眼球的地标是壮观的清水河大桥,它是世界上最长的高原冻土铁路桥。

一感 读句子感悟用法

The police have been instructed to **keep an eye out for** pickpockets at the fair.

警察奉命监视交易会里的扒手。

She **has an eye for** fashion.

她对时尚很有鉴赏力。

When he turned to **look it in the eye**, the little thing had disappeared.

当他转过去直视它时,那个小东西便不见了。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	常见的由 eye 构成的短语: fix one's eyes on 注视;盯着看 keep an eye on 照看;留意 keep an eye out for 密切注意;提防 have an eye _____ ... 对……有鉴赏力 look sb. in the eye(s) 直视某人,正视某人 in one's eyes 在某人的眼里,依某人看
探究结论	for

三评 多维度评价测试

单句语法填空

① I was cleaning out an old box when an old card caught my eye (eye).

② He sat there, fixing his eyes on the famous picture.

③ Have you forgotten anything? I can keep an eye on your kids if you want to go and get it.

④ As is known to all, in her teacher's eyes (eye), Linda has an eye for art.

4. leisure n. 空闲, 闲暇

(教材原文) A group of Tibetan antelopes is moving under the bridge, with some stopping to eat grass at their **leisure**.

一群藏羚羊正从桥下走过,有的则停下来悠闲地吃草。

一感 读句子感悟用法

These days people have more money and more **leisure** to enjoy it.

如今人们有更多的钱和空闲时间来享受了。

Let's have lunch so we can talk **at leisure**.

咱们吃午饭吧, 这样我们可以慢慢聊。

Take the leaflets home and read them **at your leisure**.

把这些宣传册带回家, 然后闲暇时慢慢看。

I **have no leisure to do** such things.

我没有空闲时间做那样的事。

They set off at a **leisurely** pace.

他们步态悠闲地出发了。

The design has presented **leisured**, fashionable and ecological living concepts.

这一设计主要体现了一种休闲、时尚、生态的人居生活思想。

Walk the scene that surrounds you **leisurely**; it's incredible.

从容地在风景中漫步, 这是非常美好的。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) at leisure 有空; 清闲; 不慌不忙 _____ one's leisure 在某人空闲时 have no leisure to do... 没有空做…… (2) leisured <i>adj.</i> 有空闲的 (3) _____ <i>adv.</i> 悠闲地; 从容不迫地 <i>adj.</i> 慢悠悠的, 不慌不忙的
探究结论	(1) at (3) leisurely

名师点拨

leisure 可用于名词前作定语, 意为“空闲的”, 如 leisure time, 意为“空闲时间”。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① I'm now at leisure to visit my friends.

② The boy sat there, playing with his toy leisurely (leisure).

(2) 完成句子

① On the whole, people miss the opportunity to enjoy leisure.

总的来说, 人们怀念享受闲暇的机会。

② He has no leisure to do some reading these days.

最近他没有空闲时间读书。

5. bring... (back) to life 使复活; 使苏醒

(教材原文) Water birds playing in the lake, and cattle and sheep wandering the grasslands **bring** the scenery **to life**.

湖中水鸟嬉戏, 草原上牛羊漫步, 使景色充满生机。

一感 读句子感悟用法

They **brought** the drowned swimmer **back to life**.

他们使溺水的游泳者苏醒了过来。

They have very definite ideas on how to **bring up** children.

关于如何养育孩子, 他们有非常明确的想法。

I have three part-time jobs, which **bring in** about \$24,000 a year.

我有三份兼职工作, 一年能赚大约 24 000 美元。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	bring about 引起, 导致 bring _____ 提起; 教养; 养育; 呕吐 bring out 出版, 生产; 使显现 bring _____ 引入, 推行; 使赚到 come back to life 恢复健康; 复活; 苏醒过来
探究结论	up; in

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① What brought about the change in his attitude?

② The firm decided to bring in a new management team.

③ That dress really brings out the colour of your eyes.

(2) 完成句子

① It is said that she is a doctor who can bring the dying to life.

据说她是一位妙手回春的医生。

② They come back to life when exposed to freshwater.

当暴露在淡水中时, 它们会复活。

6. “疑问词+不定式”结构

(教材原文) **How to protect** the delicate ecosystem was among the top concerns.

如何保护脆弱的生态系统是需要我们高度重视的问题之一。

[句式分析] How to protect the delicate ecosystem 为“疑问词+不定式”结构, 在句子中作主语。

一感 读句子感悟用法

When to hold the meeting has not yet been decided.

什么时候举行会议还没有决定。

We must know **what to say** at a meeting.

我们必须知道在会议上要说什么。

“**Why not have** a walk?” he said.

他说：“为什么不散散步呢？”

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>“疑问词+不定式”结构可以在句子中作主语、宾语、表语、宾语补足语等句子成分；在作主语时，谓语动词常用单数形式。</p> <p>(1)在“疑问词+不定式”结构中，不定式必须用主动式而不能被动式。</p> <p>(2)“_____+不定式”结构可以转换为从句。</p> <p>(3)在 why 或 why not 后加不定式时，不定式省略介词 to。</p> <p>(4)whether 后可以接不定式，而 if 不可以。</p>
探究结论	(2)疑问词

三评 多维度评价测试

(1)单句语法填空

①What to do is (be) not decided yet.

②The problem is how to put (put) the plan into practice.

③We discussed what to do and where we should go.

(2)同义句转换

①I could not decide which dictionary to buy.

→I could not decide which dictionary I should buy.

②Jack did not know where he could find such a good teacher.

→Jack did not know where to find such a good teacher.

课后素养评价(二十七)

I. 单词拼写

1. What do you think of the scenery (景色) there?
2. She wandered (徘徊) aimlessly around the streets.
3. They suffer from health problems and fear the long-term effects of radiation (辐射).
4. There's nothing splendid (壮丽的) in our marriage. We just enjoy being together.
5. Every city has its own landmarks (地标), representing the city's history and tradition, the city's quality and image.
6. The eye is one of the most delicate (脆弱的) organs of the body.
7. We have massive (巨大的) renewable energy potential but we use only a fraction of it.
8. We know that only good quality and best service will make a company grow steadily (平稳地).
9. Failures can help us learn and overcome (克服) our fears.

II. 短语填空

bring... to life; such as; put... into operation; find out; at one's leisure; work on; make sure; catch one's eye

1. For some reason, the word caught my eye, and I spent some time looking up its meaning.
2. She made sure that the child took the medicine on time.

3. I suggest you take the magazines away and read them at your leisure.
4. A trial (试验) run is needed before the machine is put into operation.
5. Every art and craft requires different techniques to bring the materials to life.
6. In this paragraph there are many nouns, such as boy, girl and book.
7. Students can gain valuable experience by working on the campus radio or magazine.
8. What have researchers found out about people's earnings?

III. 完成句子

1. He rushed out of the room before I could say a word.
我还没来得及说一句话他就冲出了房间。
2. The problem is where to find the financial aid.
问题是要到什么地方寻求经济援助。
3. Satisfied with what he did, the teacher praised him in class.
老师对他所做的事情很满意,因此在班上表扬了他。
4. As the time went on, the weather got worse.
随着时间的推移,天气更加糟糕了。

IV. 完形填空

My father was born in a small town in the US. He wasn't sure what he wanted from 1, but something told him to 2 and begin a new adventure.

He began that adventure travelling to cities in the US before going on to Australia, New Zealand and the Philippines. He took my mother and us three daughters with him and went wherever the road 3 him.

It's easy to feel 4 when you're on the road. We made lots of new friends on our trip—most of them are mechanics, since we often spent hours in repair shops. But that was a way much 5 than sitting by the roadside while waiting for the engine to 6 when it was 40°C outside.

Getting along well sometimes seemed 7. There were always a lot of arguments, especially among us back seat passengers about who had to 8 in the middle. But even if it was hard, we learned a lot about 9. When we were travelling in the Philippines, we drove to Quezon City one day. It should have been an hour's drive but was nearly three thanks to bad roads and heavy traffic. "Did you put our suitcases in the car?" my father asked my mother as we arrived there. From the back seat, we saw her 10 turn towards my father. "No," she said. "I thought you did." That was how a seven-hour car trip turned into a 16-hour one, which was mostly spent in 11.

On occasions like that, we had to learn to let go of our anger because we were 12 in a rolling box with the same people for the rest of the journey. Even if I sometimes felt like opening the car door and 13 one of my sisters out, I kept my feelings to myself.

This is why road trips were like 14 universities to us. We earned our PhDs (博士学位) in how to get along with other people just by travelling in our old car.

If we were 15 given a second chance at life, we would do it all over again. Only this time would I put the suitcases in the car myself.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了小时候“我”随父亲和母亲以及“我”的姐妹开车旅行,在此过程中,“我们”学会了忍让以及和别人相处。这个颠簸的旅程是一所移动的大学,让“我”受益匪浅。

1. A. move B. life
C. experience D. belief

B 根据上文内容可知,“我”的父亲出生在美国的一个小镇上;结合该句中的“He wasn't sure what

he wanted”以及下文叙述他带着全家开车旅行可推知,那时他不确定想从生活中要些什么。故选 B。

2. A. live up B. struggle on
C. get out D. walk around

C 根据该句中的“begin a new adventure”可推知,他得到启示:他要走出去,去开启新的冒险经历。get out 意为“离开,从……出来”。故选 C。

3. A. took B. drove
C. served D. controlled

A 根据该句中的“wherever the road”并结合语境可知,他带着(took)妈妈和“我们”这三个女儿,沿路旅行。故选 A。

4. A. anxious B. upset
C. helpless D. lonely

D 根据该句中的“when you're on the road”和下文介绍的沿路交朋友可推知,当在路上时,很容易感到孤独(lonely)。故选 D。

5. A. better B. easier
C. safer D. cleverer

A 由于外面的温度达到 40 摄氏度,所以去修理店要比坐在马路边等候好得多。故选 A。

6. A. break down B. cool off
C. clear up D. turn over

B 根据该句中的“when it was 40°C outside”可知,外面气温高达 40 摄氏度;据此可推知,该处指等待发动机冷却下来;B 项意为“使冷却下来”。故选 B。

7. A. available B. alternative
C. necessary D. impossible

D 根据下文中的“it was hard”并结合语境可知,友好相处有时似乎是不可能的(impossible)。故选 D。

8. A. settle B. rest
C. sit D. watch

C 根据上下文内容可知,三姐妹关于谁坐在中间有很多争吵。故选 C。

9. A. sharing B. respect
C. communication D. tolerance

D 根据该句中的“But”表达的意思可知,尽管这很难解决,但是“我们”学会了忍耐(tolerance)。故选 D。

10. A. suddenly B. sensitively
C. calmly D. slowly

D 根据语境可知,“我们”在后座看到母亲慢慢地转过头对父亲说:“没有,我还以为你放了”。故选 D。

11. A. silence B. vain
C. panic D. disappointment
A 根据上文内容可知,母亲忘记将手提箱放进车里了;结合该句和下文中的“we had to learn to let go of our anger”可知,“我们”学会了控制自己的怒气,这个七小时的行程最终变成了十六小时的行程,“我们”的大部分时间都在沉默。故选 A。
12. A. buried B. crazy
C. stuck D. impatient
C 根据语境可知,在像上文提到的情况下,“我们”必须控制自己的怒气,因为“我们”被困在同一辆车里。be stuck in 为固定搭配,意为“被困在……”。故选 C。
13. A. dragging B. pushing
C. helping D. sending
B 根据后文中的“I kept my feelings to myself”可知,“我”控制住了自己的情绪;据此可推知,此处表示有时“我”想要打开车门将“我”的一个姐妹推(push)出车外。故选 B。
14. A. unusual B. common
C. free D. mobile

D 根据该句中的“road trips”以及下文中的“We earned our PhDs (博士学位)”可知,对于“我们”来说,公路旅行就如同可移动的(mobile)大学。故选 D。

15. A. somewhere B. anytime
C. somehow D. anyway
C 根据语境可知,如果“我们”能以某种方式(somehow)在人生中获得第二次机会的话,“我们”还是会去旅行。故选 C。

【微点写作】招聘广告

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 基本要求如下。

The following requirements are basically needed.

2. 首先,申请人必须愿意为学生服务,并对报纸编辑有强烈的热情。

First and foremost, it's essential that the applicant should be willing to serve the students and has strong enthusiasm for newspaper editing.

Section III Using language

学习任务及目标

- 通过观察例句,归纳现在完成进行时的概念及用法,理解这种时态的功能,并能够在真实语境中应用;
- 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
- 通过听力对话的学习,掌握说服他人的表达方式,以及在有意见分歧时如何表达折中、妥协,以形成一致的看法;
- 通过完成听力活动,思考如何在发展经济的同时保护自然环境。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- A **jungle** is a forest in a tropical country where large numbers of tall trees and plants grow very close together. 丛林
- What I mean is that it sends fewer **emissions** into the atmosphere when burned. 排放物
- I heard a lion **roar**. 吼叫
- The last thing you'd want is a constant **reminder** of a bad experience. 提醒人的事物
- Something that is **appropriate** is suitable or acceptable for a particular situation. 合适的;适合的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>economy</u> <i>n.</i> 经济	economic <i>adj.</i> 经济的;经济学的
	economical <i>adj.</i> 经济的;节约的;合算的
<u>disturb</u> <i>v.</i> 干扰,扰乱	disturbing <i>adj.</i> 引起烦恼的;令人不安的
	disturbed <i>adj.</i> 心神不安的;烦恼的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>operator</u> <i>n.</i> 经营者	<u>operate</u> <i>v.</i> 操作; 运转; 做手术
	<u>operation</u> <i>n.</i> 运转; 手术
<u>conservationist</u> <i>n.</i> (动植物或古旧建筑的) 保护工作者; 环境保护主义者	<u>conservation</u> <i>n.</i> 保存; 保护

III. 补全短语

1. in turn 依次, 轮流; 反之; 反过来
2. brush off 擦掉
3. bat away 击打; 甩掉
4. pull off 脱掉; 摘掉
5. in harmony with 与……和谐相处
6. use up 用完; 耗尽
7. reach an agreement 达成协议
8. provide... for ... 为……提供

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 现在完成进行时

I try to bat away the huge insects, which have been flying around my head in a black cloud for quite a while.

我试图赶走这些巨大的昆虫, 它们已经在我的头上以一团乌云状盘旋了很长一段时间。

2. 句型公式: do all one can to do sth.

We must do all we can to protect it.
我们必须尽我们所能保护它。

3. 句型公式: as 引导时间状语从句

As tourism develops, people are becoming increasingly concerned about the environment.
随着旅游业的发展, 人们越来越关注环境。

4. 句型公式: 介词+宾语从句

Here in our city, there is a heated discussion about whether a hotel should be built at White Beach.

在我们的城市里, 有一个关于是否应该在白沙滩上建一个旅馆的热烈讨论。

5. 句型公式: even though 引导让步状语从句

Even though the owner of the company guarantees that the design will be in harmony with its beautiful surroundings, the local people are still concerned that...

尽管公司的所有者保证设计与优美的环境相协调, 当地人还是担心……

任务型课堂

disturb *v.* 干扰, 扰乱

(教材原文) **disturb** the wildlife

干扰野生动物

一感 读句子感悟用法

I'm sorry to **disturb** you **with** this question.

对不起, 打扰你了, 我有一个问题想请教。

It disturbs her to realise that she was alone.

她意识到自己孤单一人, 心里感到不安。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) disturb sb. _____ sth. 用某事打扰某人 It disturbs sb. to do... 做……打扰某人/使某人焦虑。 (2) disturbing <i>adj.</i> 引起烦恼的; 令人不安的 (3) disturbed <i>adj.</i> 心神不安的; 烦恼的 be disturbed by/about/at 因……而感到心神不安 (4) disturbance <i>n.</i> (受) 干扰; 骚乱
探究结论	(1) with

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① It's very disturbing (disturb) that there has been an increase in crime in the last six months.

② He was disturbed (disturb) to hear of your illness.

③ A lot of people wake up every day with a sense of being disturbed (disturb).

④ Then came the disturbing (disturb) news that Dolly had become seriously ill.

(2) 完成句子

① It disturbed her to realise that her son was addicted to playing computer games.

她意识到儿子沉迷于打电脑游戏, 心里感到很不安。

② I am very disturbed by/about/at the complaints that have been made against you.

有些人对你很不满, 为此我深感忧虑。

语法探究

现在完成进行时

「语法感知」

- ① The train **has been racing** along steadily since it left Xining.
- ② All this time, the song “Sky Railway” **has been playing** inside my head.
- ③ Wild animals such as these Tibetan antelopes **have** now **been using** these passages for years.
- ④ The journey **has been flying** by, and before I know it, we have reached Tanggula Station.
- ⑤ The Qinghai-Tibet Plateau **has been attracting** people's admiration for centuries.

1. 现在完成进行时的构成

现在完成进行时是由“have/has been + 现在分词”构成的。

2. 现在完成进行时的用法

(1) 表示动作从过去某时开始,一直持续到现在。

现在完成进行时常和 all this time, this week, this month, all night, all morning, recently 等状语以及 since 和 for 引导的状语连用。

(2) 表示一个近期内时断时续、重复发生的动作。

「语法精讲」

一、构成

have/has been doing

二、用法

1. 表示从过去某时开始一直持续到现在的动作,并且还将持续下去。

The Chinese **have been making** paper for two thousand years.

中国有两千年的造纸历史。(动作还将继续下去)

I **have been learning** English since three years ago.

三年以来我一直在学英语。(动作还将继续下去)

2. 表示在说话时刻之前到现在正在进行的动作。

We **have been waiting for** you for half an hour.

我们已经等你半个小时了。(人还没到,还会继续等)

3. 表示某种感情色彩。

Too much **has been happening** these days.

这几天发生的事情太多了。

4. 表示一个重复的动作。

I **have been bidding** goodbye to some friends today.

我今天和几个朋友告了别。

三、现在完成进行时和现在完成时的区别

1. 现在完成时强调的是某个刚刚完成的动作,或某个过去的动作对现在的影响或产生的结果,也可以表示延续性;现在完成进行时则强调动作的延续性,有时表示性质。

I **have thought** it over.

我已经考虑过这件事了。

I **have been thinking** it over.

我一直在考虑这件事。

She **has put** coal on the fire.

她已经往火里加了煤。(这件事已结束)

She **has been putting** coal on the fire.

她一直在往火里加煤。(一直在做这件事)

Her father **has taught** maths for ten years.

她的父亲教数学已经十年了。(是否延续下去,视上下文而定)

Her father **has been teaching** maths for ten years.

十年来她父亲一直在教数学。(将延续下去)

2. 现在完成进行时可以表示动作的重复,现在完成时一般不表示动作的重复。

Have you been meeting him recently?

你最近经常见到他吗?

Have you met him recently?

你最近见到他了吗?

3. 现在完成进行时有时带有感情色彩,而现在完成时一般则平铺直叙。

What **have you been doing**?

你最近做了什么?(惊异)

What **have you done**?

你最近做什么了?(仅是一个问题,让对方回答)

4. 有些现在完成进行时的句子等同于现在完成时的句子。

They **have been living in** this city for ten years.

= They **have lived in** this city for ten years.

他们已经在这个城市住了十年了。

「语法闯关」

I. 单句语法填空

1. All these years they have been contributing (contribute) articles to our magazine.
2. I have drunk (drink) five cups of coffee this afternoon.

3. It's a long time since you came (come) to see me.
4. Alice hasn't seen (not see) much of Henry lately.
5. I'm glad to tell you that you have passed (pass) the exam.
6. You know, I have been looking (look) for a job for three months, and this is my first formal interview.
7. My sister stayed (stay) in Beijing for three months last year.
8. The little boy is dirty all over because he has been playing/has played (play) in the mud all morning.
9. I wondered (wonder) if you were free this afternoon.
10. Here he is! We have been waiting (wait) anxiously for him since last night.

II. 语法填空

My wish is **1.** to go (go) to a key university. I **2.** have been studying (study) for many years. But I am poor **3.** at English since I went to junior school. My English teacher told me to insist **4.** on listening and writing. I **5.** have been listening (listen) to English every morning to improve it. Because I **6.** have wasted (waste) a lot of time, it was hard to catch up with other students. After **7.** going (go) to high school, I **8.** have been staying (stay) up late into the night and **9.** have been getting (get) up early in the morning. I **10.** have been writing (write) two compositions every day. I think I should spare no effort to improve my English and fulfil my dream.

课后素养评价(二十八)

I. 选词(或短语)填空

operator; conservationist; disturb; be concerned about; even if

1. It is about time our operators respected the law and their own code of conduct.
2. Although he was busy calculating (计算) a problem, his sister disturbed him occasionally.
3. There have been so many conflicts in the world recently. As a result, people are concerned about the world peace.
4. He is so busy. He cannot afford enough time with his son even if he wants to.
5. John, a conservationist, says India will have 300 to 400 tigers in four years.

II. 单句语法填空

1. Since the time humankind started gardening, we have been trying (try) to make our environment more beautiful.
2. —Excuse me, which movie are you waiting for?
—The new *Star Wars*. We have been waiting (wait) here for more than two hours.
3. No doubt the theatre had contributed to the area's development and economic (economy) growth.
4. Their savings had been used up to pay lawyers' fees.
5. These behavioural changes may in turn be harmful to the health.

6. Despite the previous rounds of talks, no agreement has been reached (reach) so far by the two sides.
7. After a short rest, we went on a trip to the mountains.
8. When he awoke, he found himself being looked after by an old woman.

III. 阅读理解

A

No sooner had my husband, Jimmy, and I found coverage of the tornado (龙卷风) from the TV than it was on top of us. It was the loudest thing I have ever heard. The wind began to roar (咆哮) through the house. We had three flights of steps (三段楼梯) to get to the first floor. The closet down there was underneath a brick staircase, which seemed like the strongest place in our house to wait things out.

It felt as if there were no floor underneath me as the wind lifted me off my feet. As we finally reached the last flight of steps, our front door blew out. Glass flew everywhere. Suddenly, a three-foot-long tree branch hit the doorframe. It flew over our heads, missing us by inches. Had we been one step up, it would have killed us.

We got close to the staircase only to hear the loud sound of our garage door coming off. The back

wall of the house followed and was torn off into the darkness outside. By the time I reached the closet, the tornado had been over us for about a minute. Jimmy pushed me down to the closet floor, but he couldn't get inside himself because of the wind. I got Jimmy's arm and tried to bring Jimmy with it. My knees were full of glass, but at that moment, I felt no pain. If I had let go, Jimmy would have flown right out the back of the house and into the bay. All of a sudden, Jimmy lifted off his feet like people in tornadoes do in the movies. I thought he was gone. And then everything stopped. He landed on his feet. In those first quiet moments, I couldn't believe it was over.

The tornado lasted four minutes. To us, it felt like a lifetime. In that time, four of the twelve town houses in our unit were completely destroyed. Of the houses left standing, ours suffered the most damage. Amazingly, none of us were severely injured.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和丈夫经历龙卷风而幸存下来的故事。龙卷风虽然只持续了四分钟,却让作者感觉像是一生那么长。

1. What do we know from the text?

- A. Their house was one of the houses in the unit that were completely destroyed.
- B. It was hard to make it to the first floor because there was no floor underneath them.
- C. They decided to hide in the brick staircase because it was the strongest place to hide.
- D. If the tornado hadn't stopped in time, Jimmy would have been blown away into the darkness.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“If I had let go, Jimmy would have flown right out the back of the house and into the bay. All of a sudden, Jimmy lifted off his feet like people in tornadoes do in the movies. I thought he was gone. And then everything stopped.”可知,如果龙卷风没有及时停止的话,Jimmy 就会被刮走。故选 D。

2. What happened first when they got close to the staircase?

- A. They heard that the garage door came off.
- B. The author was pushed down to the closet by Jimmy.
- C. A tree branch hit the doorframe and flew over their heads.
- D. The back wall of the house tore off into the darkness outside.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“We got close

to the staircase only to hear the loud sound of our garage door coming off. The back wall of the house followed and was torn off into the darkness outside. By the time I reached the closet, the tornado had been over us for about a minute. Jimmy pushed me down to the closet floor, but he couldn't get inside himself because of the wind.”可知,“我们”靠近楼梯时,只听到车库门掉了下来,紧接着就是后面的墙不知道被吹到了哪里。当“我”挣扎到小房间时,龙卷风已过境一分多钟了。Jimmy把“我”推了进来,自己却进不来。故选 A。

3. Which of the following words can best describe their experience?

- A. Thrilling but smooth.
- B. Frightening but lucky.
- C. Suffering and miserable.
- D. Painful and unfortunate.

B 推理判断题。根据作者对这次龙卷风的描述可知,这次的龙卷风非常令人恐惧,而根据最后一段中的“Amazingly, none of us were severely injured.”可知,他们也很幸运。故选 B。

4. Which of the following might be the best title for the text?

- A. Love Defeats Everything
- B. A Tornado on the Way
- C. An Unforgettable Experience
- D. The Lifelong 4 Minutes

D 标题归纳题。文章主要讲述了作者和丈夫经历龙卷风而幸存下来的故事。龙卷风虽然只持续了四分钟,却让作者感觉像是一生那么长。根据最后一段中的“The tornado lasted four minutes. To us, it felt like a lifetime.”可知,“The Lifelong 4 Minutes”作标题最为贴切。故选 D。

B

Much of the Amazon's biodiversity (生物多样性) is under fire—literally. In the last two decades, deforestation (滥伐) and forest fire ate into the ranges of thousands of plant and animal species in the Amazon rainforest.

The extent of the damage is closely tied to the practice of laws in Brazil aimed at protecting the forest from widespread logging (伐木). The findings illustrate the key role that forest use laws have in the fortune of the Amazon rainforest.

Threats to the survival of this biodiversity could have long-term effects. Biodiversity promotes a forest's resistance to drought. If the fire-impacted area continues to rise, not only does the Amazon lose forest cover, but also some of its capacity to

deal with the changing climate.

“With fires advancing deeper into the rainforest, more species will experience fire for the first time. These species have not evolved (进化) under conditions with regular fires, so the consequences for those species, like increased risk of population declines or extinction, can be severe,” says Xiao Feng, a biogeographer at Florida State University.

“But we don’t know how fires are impacting the biodiversity across the Amazon basin,” says Xiao Feng. The Amazon is a huge area. It’s generally impossible to go there and count the number of species before the fire and after it. So Xiao Feng and his team instead investigated how Amazonian plant and animal species’ geographic ranges have been affected by recent fires. The team gathered range maps of 11,514 plant and 3,079 animal species and compared these maps with satellite images of Amazon forest cover from 2001 to 2019. Those images let the team track how logging and fires have led to the reduction of rainforest.

Starting in 2009, when a series of rules aimed at reducing deforestation started being performed, the extent of fires generally decreased. Then in 2019, fires rose back up again, co-occurring with a relaxation of rules. Much of the fire-driven forest loss was concentrated along the more intensely logged southern reaches of the rainforest.

The change suggests effective forest protection laws can slow this trend of destruction and are essential for preventing the region from reaching a tipping point.

【语篇解读】森林大火会导致亚马逊热带雨林的生物多样性遭到严重破坏。研究表明,森林保护法可以延缓这种破坏。

5. What does Xiao Feng mean based on Paragraph 4?
- Not all species will survive the fire.
 - The forest badly needs regular fires.
 - All species will die out after the fire.
 - The fire will change survival skills of species.
- A 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可推知,不是所有的物种都能在火灾中幸存。故选 A。
6. How did Xiao Feng’s team draw the conclusion about fires’ effect on biodiversity?
- By taking field trips.
 - By doing experiments.
 - By referring to geography books.
 - By making comparisons.
- D 细节理解题。根据第五段中的“The team

gathered range maps of 11,514 plant and 3,079 animal species and compared these maps with satellite images of Amazon forest cover from 2001 to 2019.”中的“compared”可知,Xiao Feng 的团队是通过作比较得出结论的。故选 D。

7. Why did fires occur more frequently in the Amazon forest in 2019?
- Because severe drought kept on striking.
 - Because the new species had no time to evolve.
 - Because rules of controlling logging weren’t strictly carried out.
 - Because the rainforest’s resistance to the changing climate weakened.
- C 细节理解题。根据第六段中的“Starting in 2009, when a series of rules aimed at reducing deforestation started being performed, the extent of fires generally decreased. Then in 2019, fires rose back up again, co-occurring with a relaxation of rules.”可知,2019 年亚马逊热带雨林的森林火灾更频繁的原因是控制伐木的规则没有被严格执行。故选 C。
8. Where is this text most likely from?
- A science magazine.
 - A personal diary.
 - A travel brochure.
 - A research plan.

A 文章出处题。通读全文,尤其是根据第一段的内容可知,文章主要介绍了森林大火对亚马逊热带雨林生物多样性的影响,因此可推测这篇文章很可能来自一本科学杂志。故选 A。

IV. 完形填空

One of my favourite family photographs was taken last year at Disneyland. We were at the 1 of a ride called Splash Mountain and the picture was taken just as we were starting to 2 down. Disneyland cleverly designed an automatic camera, 3 at the most frightening part of the ride to take photos of the riders. These 4 pictures are then displayed at the exit of Splash Mountain and are available to 5. They are not expensive.

I love this photograph because it’s so real. Usually, when you are going to take pictures, you tidy your hair and 6 a pretty smile, wanting to look best. This picture is natural, showing a perfect mixture of 7 and terror on our faces. My husband’s mouth is open in a scream as he hangs on to me. My son is 8 his baseball cap backwards so it won’t fly off.

Every time I look at that photograph, I feel 9.

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Comprehending

学习任务及目标

1. 识记本课时的重要语言点；
2. 理解课文内容，为课文的段落找到主题句，并观察课文中过渡句的使用，理解其承上启下、增强课文逻辑的作用；
3. 深入理解如何保护自然遗产；
4. 探究开放与保护自然遗产之间的平衡，培养发现问题及解决问题的能力。

自主式预习

「基础预习」

写出下列词汇和表达的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇和表达

1. applicant *n.* 申请人
2. favour *n.* 支持, 赞同
3. advertise *v.* (为……) 做广告(宣传)
4. preference *n.* 优先(权)
5. qualification *n.* 技能条件, 资格
6. genuine *adj.* 真的, 真正的
7. salary *n.* 薪金, 工资
8. negotiable *adj.* 可协商的
9. candidate *n.* 申请者

10. in favour of 支持, 赞同
11. be made up of 由……组成
12. in addition to 除……以外
13. a number of 很多, 大量
14. become/be aware of 明白; 了解
15. relate to 与……有关; 理解

(二) 阅读词汇和表达

1. via *prep.* 通过(某人、某机器等) 传送(某物); 借助于
2. waist *n.* 腰, 腰部
3. take/make notes 做笔记
4. under threat 遭受威胁
5. highlight the importance of 突出……的重要性

「课文速览」

表格填空

Parts	Main ideas	Details
Para. 1—Para. 2	An interesting job recruitment.	There is a call for an island caretaker to highlight the importance of the Great Barrier Reef. The working hours are 1. flexible and accommodation is provided. Key duties include exploring the islands and 2. promoting the islands through media.
Para. 3	The general situation of the Great Barrier Reef.	3. Located off the coast of North-east Australia, the Great Barrier Reef is the largest living thing on the planet. But it is now under 4. threat from pollution and climate change.
Para. 4—Para. 5	What Ben did as an island caretaker.	Out of the thousands of 5. applicants , eleven were selected. Eventually, the job was offered to Ben Southall from the UK. In addition to blogging, taking photos and writing 6. articles about the reef, Ben made a number of appearances on television to argue in favour of its defence. He also worked as a 7. presenter and wrote a book about his experiences.
Para. 6	Environmental protection awareness.	The most important thing was that people all over the world became 8. aware of the beauty of the ocean in the area.

任务型课堂

I. 根据课文内容选择正确答案

- How would you report back about the Great Barrier Reef?
 - Weekly blogs.
 - Photo diaries.
 - Video updates.
 - All the above.
- Which statement is RIGHT according to the text?
 - The Great Barrier Reef cannot be seen from outer space.
 - This job is not attractive at all.
 - This job requires you to stay on the islands for six months.
 - Nowadays, the Great Barrier Reef is very safe.
- What must the candidates do to get this job?
 - Have similar work experience.
 - Prove themselves qualified.
 - Major in this field.
 - Be healthy.
- Which of the following doesn't Ben have to do as an island caretaker?
 - Making samples.
 - Taking photos.
 - Appearing on TV.
 - Writing a book.
- What can we infer from the text?
 - If we protect it, the Great Barrier Reef will remain a safe habitat for wildlife.
 - Long ago, people knew the importance of protecting the Great Barrier Reef.
 - To protect the Great Barrier Reef, people don't have to do a lot of things.
 - The Chinese didn't compete for the job.

答案: 1~5 DCBAA

II. 课文语法填空

There is a call for an island caretaker to highlight the **1. importance** (important) of the Great Barrier Reef. The working hours are flexible and accommodation **2. is** (be) provided. Key duties include **3. exploring** (explore) the islands and

promoting the islands through media. **4. Located** (locate) off the coast of North-east Australia, the Great Barrier Reef is the **5. largest** (large) living thing on the planet, which is made up of living coral growing on dead coral. But it is now under threat from **6. pollution** (pollute) and climate change.

Out of the thousands of applicants, eleven were selected. Eventually, the job **7. was offered** (offer) to Ben Southall from the UK. In addition to blogging, taking photos and writing articles about the reef, Ben made **8. a** number of appearances on television to argue in favour **9. of** its defence. He also worked as a presenter and wrote a book about his experiences. This event made people all over the world become aware of the beauty of the ocean and understand the delicate balance of the environment. If so, it will remain a safe habitat for wildlife, as well as a dream destination for the millions of **10. tourists** (tour) who visit it each year.

III. 阅读升华

- What did the applicants have to do to prove that they were qualified for the job?

The candidates had to make a short video showing how much they knew about the reef.
- How is the theme of nurturing nature presented differently in the two reading passages of this unit?

In the first reading passage, the author uses his own experience to describe the challenges of building the railway and the solutions to these problems. In this way, the author wants to tell us that we should protect nature while constructing and developing human society. In the second reading passage, the author explains the best job in the world, its requirements and its duty to raise the public awareness of the beauty of nature, and to understand the delicate balance of nature.

课后素养评价(二十九)

I. 单词拼写

1. Compared with the former candidate (候选人), the latter is more fluent in oral English.
2. He did all he could to win his favour (支持;赞同;帮助).
3. I would like to apply for the position advertised (广告招聘) in yesterday's newspaper.
4. On closer examination it was found that the signature was not genuine (真的,真正的).
5. You pay income tax on all your earnings, not just your salary (工资).
6. The terms of employment are negotiable (可协商的).
7. Through DNA tests, we can know people's food preferences (优先权).
8. In this job, experience counts for more than some paper qualifications (技能条件).
9. Her hair hung down to her waist (腰,腰部).

II. 短语填空

relate to; under threat; in defence of; in favour of; be qualified for; have a preference for; apply oneself to; be made up of

1. My diet is made up of meat, fish, vegetables, fruit, water and milk.
2. Over the years, he has applied himself to improving the living conditions of the migrant workers.
3. Many of my friends enjoy dancing, but I have a preference for singing.
4. There is no doubt that he is qualified for the work.
5. The leader of the group spoke in favour of the proposal.
6. During a war, all people will fight with enemies in defence of our own home.
7. The second paragraph relates to the situation in Scotland.
8. These ancient woodlands (林地) are under threat from new road developments.

III. 完成句子

1. Whether she comes or not makes no difference to me.

她来不来对我来说都没有影响。

2. When we got a call saying she was short-listed, we thought it was a joke.

当我们接到电话说她入围了时,我们以为这是一个玩笑。

3. I should have helped Peter with his work, but I had a lot of things to do myself.

我本应该帮助彼得工作的,但是我自己有很多事情要做。

4. My decision is that all of us are to start at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.

我的决定是我们所有人于明天早上六点出发。

5. With all the things she needed bought, she went home happily.

带着她买的所有她需要的东西,她高兴地回家了。

IV. 七选五

We shouldn't judge a person by their appearance but we do. In fact, the experts say that when we meet someone for the first time we make a decision about what that person is like in three seconds. 1 One of the most important things we look at is clothes, but it isn't the brand of clothes that people wear that is important. The important thing is to wear the right clothes for the right places.

Schools have always understood this and a lot of them ask their students to wear a uniform. Why? A lot of teachers think a uniform makes students feel that they are part of their school and that their form helps them to be serious about their studies. 2 If all the students wear uniforms, they can't judge each other because of their clothes. It also stops gossips about who or what is fashionable.

3 We all have fixed ideas about what the people in a certain job should wear. If we visit a doctor, we hope to see respectable clothes under the doctor's white coat. 4 Police officers wear uniforms to make themselves easily identifiable to non-police officers. In fact, a lot of companies have dress codes for their staff because they know that the customers hope to see them dressed in certain types of clothes.

But can our clothes really tell people what we are like? 5 When people see us in the right

clothes, they think we are serious about what we are doing. Furthermore, if we are clean, smart and polite, people will believe us a lot.

- A. Maybe not, but they can show our attitude to what we are doing at the moment.
 B. Some of the teachers hold different opinions.
 C. But what do we look at?
 D. Teachers say that uniforms can help in other ways too.
 E. Our clothes stand for our attitude.
 F. However, it is not only schools that want people to dress in a certain way.

G. When we go into a bank we expect the staff to wear suits or dresses.

答案: 1~5 CDFGA

【微点写作】招聘广告

根据汉语提示补全所给的英文句子

1. 如果你对这份工作感兴趣,请在本周内尽早将申请邮件发送到 *englishtec@qq.com*。

If you are interested in the job, please send an application email at your earliest convenience to *englishtec@qq.com* within this week.

2. 我们热切期待您的参与。

We are eagerly expecting your participation.

Section V Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection—Language points

学习任务及目标

1. 掌握并能灵活运用本课时的重要语言点;
2. 掌握招聘广告的基本要素,并根据所给内容仿写招聘广告;
3. 理解课文内容,联系自己的学习与生活,培养热爱自然、保护环境、与自然和谐共处的意识。

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中**黑体**单词的汉语意思

1. The applicants can fill in the application form and send to us **via** email.

通过(某人、某机器等)传送(某物);借助于

2. The **candidate** must meet the following qualifications: a diploma and work experience. **申请者**

3. The word “**genuine**” is used to describe people and things that are exactly what they appear to be, and are not false or an imitation. **真的,真正的**

4. The employer offers an annual **salary** of \$40,000 to the employee. **薪金,工资**

5. Before climbing the cliff (悬崖), he tied the rope around his **waist**. **腰,腰部**

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>applicant</u> <i>n.</i> 申请人	<u>apply</u> <i>v.</i> 申请;使用;应用
	<u>application</u> <i>n.</i> 申请

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>favour</u> <i>n.</i> 支持,赞同;喜爱;恩惠 <i>v.</i> 喜爱;偏袒	<u>favourable</u> <i>adj.</i> 赞成的;有利的
	<u>favourite</u> <i>adj.</i> 最喜爱的
<u>advertise</u> <i>v.</i> (为……)做广告(宣传)	<u>advertisement</u> <i>n.</i> 广告
	<u>advertiser</u> <i>n.</i> 广告人
<u>negotiable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可协商的	<u>negotiate</u> <i>v.</i> 谈判;协商
	<u>negotiation</u> <i>n.</i> 谈判;转让
<u>preference</u> <i>n.</i> 优先(权)	<u>prefer</u> <i>v.</i> 更喜欢;偏爱
<u>qualification</u> <i>n.</i> 技能条件,资格	<u>qualified</u> <i>adj.</i> 有资格的
	<u>qualify</u> <i>v.</i> 限制;使……具有资格

III. 补全短语

1. in favour of 支持; 赞同
2. in addition to 除……之外
3. be made up of 由……组成
4. under threat 遭受威胁
5. a number of 一些, 若干, 许多
6. become/be aware of 意识到; 明白, 理解
7. relate to 与……有关; 认同, 理解
8. remove... from 从……中除去……
9. be open to 对……开放
10. know about 了解, 知道……的情况

IV. 重点句式补全

1. 句型公式: 过去分词作状语

Located off the coast of North-east Australia, the Great Barrier Reef is the largest living thing on the planet.

大堡礁位于澳大利亚东北部近海处, 是地球上最大的生物体。

2. 句型公式: 现在分词作定语

To get this job, the candidates had to make a short video showing how much they knew about the reef.

要想得到这份工作, 申请者需要制作一个短片, 展示他们对大堡礁的了解程度。

3. 句型公式: should have done

Ben later joked that the job should have been advertised not as the “best”, but the “busiest job in the world”!

本后来开玩笑说, 这份工作不应该被宣传为“最棒的”, 而应该是“世界上最忙的工作”!

4. 句型公式: whether... or... 引导主语从句

Whether it was a genuine job offer or an eye-catching marketing event isn't really important.

无论这是一个真正的工作机会还是一场吸引眼球的营销活动, 其实都不重要。

任务型课堂

1. applicant n. 申请人

(教材原文) Out of the thousands of **applicants**, eleven were selected, including a young woman from China.

在数千名申请者中, 有十一人被选中, 其中还包括一个年轻的中国女性。

一感 读句子感悟用法

They **applied to** the government **for** financial help.
他们向政府申请经济援助。

In this way we can better **apply** theory **to** practice.
这样我们就能更好地把理论运用到实践中去。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>(1) apply <i>v.</i> 申请; 应用; 使用; 涂 apply (to sb.) _____ ... (向某人) 申请…… apply to do sth. 申请去做某事 apply... _____ ... 把……运用于…… apply to 适用于……(to 为介词) apply oneself to 致力于, 集中精力于</p> <p>(2) application <i>n.</i> 申请; 申请书; 运用</p> <p>(3) applied <i>adj.</i> (尤指学科) 应用的</p>
探究结论	(1) for; to

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Over the next months, he applied himself to improving (improve) the technique.

② The new technology, if applied to farming, will help increase the grain output.

③ They applied for permission to use the meeting room.

④ As the wages were low, there were few applicants (apply) for the job.

(2) 完成句子

① The rule doesn't only apply to seniors, but to the school as a whole.

整体来看这条规则不但适用于高年级学生, 而且适用于全校。

② He applied himself to his new duties with great energy yesterday.

他昨天以极大的干劲投入到自己的新任务中。

③ I would appreciate it if you could take my application into consideration.

如果你能考虑我的申请, 我将不胜感激。

2. requirement n. 要求; 必要条件; 需要的东西

(教材原文) What are the **requirements** of the job?
这份工作的要求是什么?

一感 读句子感悟用法

The new computer system will **meet/satisfy** all our **requirements**.

新计算机系统将满足我们的全部要求。

All the students **are required to attend** the meeting to be held tomorrow on time.

所有学生被要求准时参加明天举行的会议。

The expert said that these temples **required repairing**.

这位专家说这些庙宇需要修缮。

Regulations **require that** students (should) attend at least 90% of the lectures.

规定要求学生上课节数不得低于90%。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) _____ one's requirements 满足某人的要求
	(2) require v. 需要; 要求
探究结论	require sb. _____ sth. 要求某人做某事
	require _____ } 需要被做(用法同
	require to be done } need, want)
探究结论	require+that... 要求……
	It's required that... 有人要求…… } (从句用虚拟语气)
探究结论	(1) meet/satisfy
探究结论	(2) to do; doing

名师点拨

(1) requirement 后接同位语从句或表语从句时,从句应用虚拟语气,即从句中的谓语动词形式用“should+动词原形”,should 可以省略。

(2) require 表示“要求”时,其后的宾语从句要用虚拟语气,即从句中的谓语动词形式用“should+动词原形”,should 可以省略。

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① One of the requirements (require) for being admitted to the university is that you (should) pass (pass) the English test organised by it.

② It is required that drivers (should) wear (wear) the safety belts while driving a car.

③ Some social apps were popular among the children even though they supposedly require users to be (be) at least 13.

④ Relearning the art of seeing the world around us is quite simple, although it takes practice and requires breaking (break) some bad habits.

(2) 一句多译

学校要求所有的学生在校穿校服。

① The school requires all the students to wear school uniforms at school.

② All the students are required to wear school uniforms at school.

③ The school requires that all the students (should) wear school uniforms at school.

④ It's required that all the students wear school uniforms at school.

3. qualification n. 技能条件, 资格

(教材原文) All applications welcome, but preference will be given to those with diving **qualifications**.

欢迎所有申请,但优先考虑那些具有潜水资格的人。

一感 读句子感悟用法

To join the Navy, you must meet certain **qualifications**.

要加入海军,你必须符合一定的条件。

Will our team **qualify for** the second round of the competition?

我们队有资格进入第二轮比赛吗?

The guides **are qualified to lead** groups into the mountains.

这些导游有资格带团进山。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	(1) qualify v. (使)具有资格;(使)合格
	qualify (sb.) as (使某人)有资格做……
	qualify (sb.) _____ (使某人)有……资格
探究结论	(2) qualified adj. 具备……的知识(或技能);有资格的;有条件的
	be qualified for 有……的资格;适于担任……;胜任……
	be qualified _____ sth. 有资格做某事
探究结论	(1) for (2) to do

三评 多维度评价测试

(1) 单句语法填空

① Why do you think you are qualified for this position?

② This exam will give me the qualification (qualify) to be a lawyer.

③ At the end of the third year, my son hopes to qualify as a lawyer.

(2)完成句子

① He took all kinds of tests to prove he was qualified for this important task.

他参加各种各样的测试,以证明他胜任这项重要的任务。

② Your scores in this term will qualify you for the next class.

这学期的分数使你有资格升级。

4. “should have done”结构

(教材原文) Ben later joked that the job **should have been advertised** not as the “best”, but the “busiest job in the world”!

本后来开玩笑说,这份工作不应该被宣传为“最棒的”,而应该是“世界上最忙的工作”!

一感 读句子感悟用法

(2023·新高考 I 卷改编) Melanie Bailey **should have finished** the course earlier than she did.

Melanie Bailey 本应该比实际更早完成比赛。

—My cat is really fat.

—You **should have given** her less food.

——我的猫真胖。

——你本应该少给它点吃的。

You **shouldn't have entered** the teachers' office without permission.

没有经过允许,你们本不该进老师的办公室。

It was an easy test. I'm surprised that he **shouldn't have passed** it.

那是一场简单的测试。我很惊讶他竟然没有通过。

二探 抓要点探究归纳

探究要点	<p>“should have done”结构的用法:</p> <p>(1)表示根据一般的规律而做出的判断,翻译为“_____”。</p> <p>(2)表示过去应该做的事情却没有做,翻译为“本应该做……”。其否定式 should not have done 翻译为“本来不应该……却……”。</p> <p>(3)用来谈论与预期不符的事实,并且表达惊讶的情绪,翻译为“_____”。</p>
探究结论	<p>(1)应该(已经)……</p> <p>(3)竟然……</p>

三评 多维度评价测试

完成句子

① I told your friend how to get to the hotel, but perhaps I should have driven her there.

我已经告诉了你的朋友如何到达旅馆,但可能我本应该开车载她去那里的。

② I should have gone to the lecture this afternoon, but I was a bit ill.

我本应该今天下午去听讲座的,但我有点不舒服。

③ He should have arrived at the office by now. Let's try ringing him.

他现在应该已经到办公室了。我们试着给他打一个电话吧。

④ To everyone's surprise, our unbeatable school team should have lost the game.

让每个人惊讶的是,我们一向无敌的校队竟然在这场比赛中失利了。

写作探究

招聘广告

一、写作指导

1. 标题

英语招聘广告的首行应居中且要写上... needed 或... wanted。标题要简洁、醒目,让人一目了然。

2. 正文

要有对招聘单位或个人的简要介绍、招聘职位的描述以及工作职责、应聘资格、待遇、应聘方法的描述。

3. 广告的语言应简明易懂,尽量使用短语、短句,使读者一目了然。同时注意语言要有渲染力。

二、典题示例

假设你是在中国留学的美国留学生 Tom。请你根据所给的信息,在你所在的国际学校的校内贴吧上发布一则广告,寻找周末能帮助你学习书法(calligraphy)的

校友。

要点:1. 你是本校一名高一美国留学生,酷爱中国书法艺术;

2. 已练习一年多,想找一位擅长书法的同学帮助自己;

3. 男女不限,希望在周末能抽出时间对自己进行指导;

4. 有意者请向 *tom@hotmail.com* 回复邮件。

注意:80 词左右。

三、审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第一人称
要点	1. 自我介绍 2. 招聘对象和要求 3. 应聘方式

四、遣词造句

(一)核心词汇和表达

- ① practising Chinese calligraphy 练习中国书法
 ② be experienced at 在……方面有经验
 ③ no matter whether... or... 无论是否
 ④ as long as 只要
 ⑤ have spare time 有业余时间

(二)完成句子

- ① I am Tom, a Senior 1 student (高一的学生) of our school who is from America.
 ② I have been practising Chinese calligraphy (一直练中国书法) for more than one year.
 ③ And now I want to find a schoolmate (想找一位校友).
 ④ The schoolmate is experienced at (有经验) calligraphy.
 ⑤ No matter whether (无论是) you are a boy or a girl.
 ⑥ You are expert at (擅长) calligraphy and have spare time on weekends (周末), and you can be my teacher.
 ⑦ Anyone may send your email to (发送电子邮件至) the following address tom@hotmail.com, if you would like to help me.

(三)句式升级

- ① 用定语从句合并(二)中的③④句
And now I want to find a schoolmate who is experienced at calligraphy.
 ② 用条件状语从句改写(二)中的⑤⑥句
No matter whether you are a boy or a girl, as long as you are expert at calligraphy and have spare time on weekends, you can be my teacher.
 ③ 用定语从句改写(二)中的⑦句
Anyone who would like to help me may send your email to the following address tom@hotmail.com.

(四)连句成篇

A Calligraphy Teacher Wanted

Hello! I am Tom, a Senior 1 student of our school who is from America, and I'm a calligraphy fan. I have been practising Chinese calligraphy for more than one year. And now I want to find a schoolmate who is experienced at calligraphy. No matter whether you are a boy or a girl, as long as you are expert at calligraphy and have spare time on weekends, you can be my teacher. Anyone who would like to help me may send your email to the following address tom@hotmail.com. I am looking forward to your reply.

五、学以致用

一家电脑公司拟招聘两名英语翻译。请你用英语写一份 80 词左右的招聘启事。应聘条件：

1. 男女不限,年龄在 25 岁以下;
2. 本省居民;
3. 能熟练运用英语;
4. 熟悉电脑操作。

请有意者在这两个月内将中英文简历、近照两张邮寄给 BNA 电脑公司的 Mary 女士。

【参考范文】

Translators Wanted

Our company wants two English translators who can meet the following requirements. No matter whether you are male or female, if you, under 25 years old, are living in this province, and able to use English expertly and operate computers, you can apply for it. Anyone who is willing to, please send your resume in Chinese and English within two months, including two recent photos, to Ms Mary of BNA Computer Company.

课后素养评价(三十)

I. 单句语法填空

1. She has met the minimum educational requirements for qualification (qualify).
2. Many people expressed a strong preference (prefer) for the original plan.
3. While I was looking through the news online, up came an advertisement (advertise) for cars.
4. You will surely pass the final exam if you really apply yourself (you) to your study.
5. It strikes me that nobody is really in favour of the changes.
6. The academic committee is made up of professors from five departments.
7. In your opinion, can the skills of negotiation (negotiate) be taught?
8. In addition to these arrangements, extra ambulances will be on duty until midnight.

II. 完成句子

1. It is not the words he says but the things he does are unforgettable.
不是他说的话而是他做的事令人难忘。
2. With tears of joy in her eyes, she saw her daughter married.
看着女儿结婚,她的眼里噙着高兴的泪水。
3. Furthermore, you should have finished your homework today.
而且,你本应该今天完成家庭作业的。
4. Surrounded by his students, the teacher went into the lab, carrying a book in his hand.
这个老师被学生们环绕着走进了实验室,手里拿着一本书。
5. He required that we should leave things as they are until the police arrived.
他要求我们在警察到来之前让现场保持原样。

III. 语法填空

Unlike fossil-fuel power plants, solar and wind power plants only generate electricity when the sun shines and the wind blows. Now the batteries

1. needed (need) to store power for the cloudy day arise. However, they are still not cheap enough or

able to store power for long enough periods 2. to rely (rely) heavily on. A breakthrough in battery technology is of great practical 3. worth (worthy) for solar and wind energy to become the main part of electric grids (电网). Geothermal (地热的) energy, however, does not require battery storage to ensure a reliable supply and 4. has (have) enormous potential instead.

The US leads the world in the process 5. where the heat is mined from Earth's crust (地壳) to produce electricity. 6. Although/Though/While it accounts for only 0.4 percent of total US electricity production, the technology could someday provide almost limitless amounts of power. Geothermal power plants situated near hot spots in Earth's crust could get the intense heat and steam 7. by drilling down 1 or 2 miles. The geothermal company Alta Rock Energy estimates that 8. approximately (approximate) 0.1 percent of the heat content of Earth could supply humanity's total energy needs for 2 million years. Jamie Beard, who runs the Geothermal Entrepreneurship Organization, ranked among the 9. highest (high) at the University of Texas at Austin, called 10. it an "engineering problem that, when solved, solves energy."

IV. 写作

第一节 书面表达

你校学生会需要招聘一名留学生作英语学习顾问。请你以短文的形式写一则招聘广告。要点如下:

1. 母语是英语,汉语流利者优先;
2. 解答英语学习问题,协助组织英语活动;
3. 每周工作四个小时,报酬面议;
4. 联系人:李华(Tel:1122-3344)。

注意:1. 80词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

第二节 读后续写

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jim slumped on the couch. Mother's Day was coming up, and he didn't have a present. "How can I buy a present without any money?" he thought.

Jim picked up the newspaper that was lying on the couch. He noticed a large advertisement on the front page. The local department store was sponsoring a contest. "Tell us why your mum is special and win a shopping spree (疯狂购物) for her," said the ad.

"This is perfect!" thought Jim. He ran to his room with the newspaper. Taking a pencil and a blank piece of paper from his desk, he started to write.

"My mum is the best mother in the world. She always cooks lunch for me to take to school, and she never forgets my dessert. She reads as many books to me before bed as I want. She always remembers to check under the bed for monsters..."

Jim liked what he had written. He copied it neatly and got an envelope and a stamp from his dad. He ran to the mailbox with his entry (参赛作品). "Mum will love having a shopping spree," he thought.

Jim checked the mailbox every day for his prize. Days passed by, and then weeks. Soon it was the day before Mother's Day. Jim still hadn't heard anything about the contest.

"What am I going to do now?" he wondered. He didn't have a present or a shopping spree, and he still didn't have any money. He had to think of something. Jim closed his eyes and curled up, and thought hard.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

Suddenly he had an idea. _____

The next morning Jim handed his present to

his mum. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

English Advisor Wanted

The responsibilities of the advisor include helping students to practise their oral English, answering their questions and helping organise activities such as singing English songs, English evenings or lectures on interesting topics.

The applicant should be a native speaker of English. Fluency in Chinese is preferred. The advisor is expected to work 4 hours per week.

If you are interested in the job, please call Li Hua at 1122-3344 for an interview. Payment for the service will be discussed during the interview.

The Students' Union

第二节 读后续写

Suddenly he had an idea. He fumbled in his drawers and fortunately found a piece of delicate and fragrant paper. He sat down straight on his chair, and began to write a letter in his best handwriting as a Mother's Day present. "Dear Mum, I'm writing this to tell you that you are the best mother in the world..." With a sincere heart, Jim finished the letter and sealed it in an envelope, his lips curving into a smile.

The next morning Jim handed his present to his mum. Finishing reading the letter, his mum swept him into her arms with her eyes wet as if she wanted to squeeze the breath out of him. "Thank you, my dear!" she sniffled, hugging Jim more tightly. Leaning against his mum's shoulder, Jim slowly explained why he chose to write a letter as a gift. After hearing the reason, his mum gently combed her fingers through his hair, saying, "To me, your letter is better than a thousand shopping sprees." Indeed, love should be made known to loved ones.

读后续写技能养成 || 场景描写——救助动物

「技能概述」

1. 场景描写——救助动物

是指对动物在家中、社区或野外等地点活动时遇到险情并得到人类救助的场景描写,如救助狗、猫、牛、羊、狼、鹿等动物。

2. 续写技巧

同学们可以根据不同动物在不同的地点所遇到的不同险情对动物的外貌、动作和习性等特征展开详细描述;同时,对施救的人进行动作和心理描写

「范例体悟」

Seeing this, the neighbours came to Hank's rescue. One neighbour donated a can of sardines, hoping it might attract the hungry cat to come down. Another neighbour brought a tall ladder, which unfortunately proved still too short. With Hank stuck in the tree for a prolonged time, Bushong's worries mounted.

找出文中有关救助动物的人物动作和心理描写。

came to Hank's rescue; donated a can of sardines; hoping it might attract the hungry cat to come down; brought a tall ladder; worries mounted

「词句储备」

I. 好词积累

1. smell/sniff *v.* 嗅
2. bark *v.* 狗吠
3. lick *v.* 舔
4. a pair of large watery eyes 一双水汪汪的大眼睛
5. two big round eyes 两只圆溜溜的大眼睛
6. sparkling/twinkling eyes 亮晶晶的/闪闪发亮的眼睛
7. a nose like a black gem 一颗黑宝石般的鼻子
8. muscular/skinny legs 肌肉发达的/皮包骨的腿
9. as white as snow 像雪一样洁白
10. a long little tail 一条长长的小尾巴

11. wag the tail 摇尾巴
12. put the ears up 把耳朵竖起来
13. shake the whole body 抖动全身
14. bite the corner of the coat 咬住衣角
15. rest the nose in its paws 把鼻子搁在爪子里
16. keep its forelegs doubled up 保持前腿弯曲

II. 佳句背诵

1. I focused on digging out her back legs.
我集中精力挖出她的后腿。
2. And the more she struggled to get free, the more stuck she became.
她越挣扎着出来,陷得就越深。
3. The guys massaged her legs to get the blood flowing.
那些人给她的腿按摩让血液流动起来。
4. Brian cleaned the wound and then gave him careful treatment.
布莱恩清洗了伤口,然后对他进行了仔细的治疗。
5. So, we quickened our steps, approached the baby monkey cautiously, and attempted to rescue it.
因此,我们加快脚步,小心翼翼地接近小猴子,试图营救它。
6. We were relieved that the baby monkey got rescued with our joint efforts.
在我们的共同努力下,小猴子获救了,真是令人欣慰。

「技能达标」

I. 完成句子

1. Using a rock as the supporting point, I unlocked the chain and set the cat free.
我用一块石头作为支撑点,解开锁链,把猫放了出来。
2. I went near the innocent puppy and held it in my hand and wiped it until it had become dry.
我走近那只无辜的小狗,把它捧在手里,擦了擦小狗直到它变干。
3. The poor creature, apparently in desperate need of water, licked it up quickly with its shell-pink

tongue.

这个可怜的家伙显然非常需要水,它用那贝壳般粉红色的舌头很快地把水舔干净了。

4. Nick stayed with the little elephant every night and he changed his bandages several times a day to help it recover as quickly as possible.

尼克每晚都和小象待在一起,而且他每天给小象换几次绷带,以帮助其尽快康复。

II. 用场景描写——救助动物的方法完成语段

There, behind my mother, was our lovely dog
1. looking up at me eagerly (抬头热切地看着我). Upon seeing me, it 2. raced towards me (迅速跑向我). I couldn't hold my tears. "It just came back by itself," my mother said gently. 3. Hugging the dog with relief (欣慰地拥抱着狗), I apologised to my mother sincerely.

第六单元质量评估

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

What's On?

Electric Underground

7:30 p.m.—1:00 a.m. Free at the Cyclops Theatre

Do you know who's playing in your area? We're bringing you an exciting evening of live rock and pop music from the best local bands. Are you interested in becoming a musician and getting a recording contract (合同)? If so, come early to the talk at 7:30 p.m. by Jules Skye, a successful record producer. He's going to talk about how you can find the right person to produce your music.

Gee Whizz

8:30 p.m.—10:30 p.m. Comedy at Kaleidoscope

Come and see Gee Whizz perform. He's the funniest stand-up comedian on the comedy scene. This joyful show will please everyone, from the youngest to the oldest. Gee Whizz really knows how to make you laugh! Our bar is open from 7:00 p.m. for drinks and snacks (快餐).

Simon's Workshop

5:00 p.m.—7:30 p.m. Wednesdays at Victoria Stage

This is a good chance for anyone who wants to learn how to do comedy. The workshop looks at every kind of comedy, and practises many different ways of making people laugh. Simon is a comedian and actor who has 10 years' experience of teaching

comedy. His workshops are exciting and fun. An evening with Simon will give you the confidence to be funny.

Charlotte Stone

8:00 p.m.—11:00 p.m. Pizza World

Fine food with beautiful jazz music; this is a great evening out. Charlotte Stone will perform songs from her new best-selling CD, with James Pickering on the piano. The menu is Italian, with excellent meat and fresh fish, pizzas and pasta (意大利面食). Book early to get a table. Our bar is open all day, and serves cocktails, coffee, beer and white wine.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章是四则广告:一个讲座广告、一个喜剧演员的演出广告、一个喜剧演员的工作室广告以及一个有爵士乐和美食的好去处的广告。

1. Who can help you if you want to have your music produced?

- A. Jules Skye.
B. Gee Whizz.
C. Charlotte Stone.
D. James Pickering.

A 细节理解题。从题干的 have your music produced 判断本题的答案出处在第一则广告。该广告说,“你是否有兴趣成为音乐人,得到录制唱片的合同?”,然后说晚上七点半有 Jules Skye 的讲座,因此选 A 项 Jules Skye。根据本广告最后一句

话也可得出答案。

2. At which place can people of different ages enjoy a good laugh?

- A. The Cyclops Theatre.
- B. Kaleidoscope.
- C. Victoria Stage.
- D. Pizza World.

B 细节理解题。带着题干的“不同年龄的人欢笑”这个信息,我们去这几则广告中寻找相关信息。答案在第二则广告里。该广告说,Gee Whizz是最滑稽的单口喜剧演员(stand-up comedian),他的表演能够让所有人快乐,下至孩童上到老人(from the youngest to the oldest)。表演的地点是Kaleidoscope。故选B。

3. What do we know about Simon's Workshop?

- A. It requires membership status.
- B. It lasts three hours each time.
- C. It is run by a comedy club.
- D. It is held every Wednesday.

D 细节理解题。本题涉及第三则广告的相关信息。从“5:00 p. m.—7:30 p. m. Wednesdays at Victoria Stage”可以判断,该活动每个星期三举办。故选D。

B

Two pig farmers in Suffolk, East England have succeeded in feeding one million bees after participating in a project that saw them turn over half of their land to wildflowers. Four years ago, brothers Mark and Paul Hayward decided to fill 81 acres of their farmland with wildflowers. This week, a study was carried out monitoring insect activity on the flower-covered land, which found they were feeding one million bees at any time.

“This was our target when we started, to grow enough flowers to feed a million bees on a single day,” Mark said. “We are acutely aware that bees are under threat from modern farming methods and that East England is one of the worst places where bees are seriously suffering from lack of foraging diversity (觅食多样性),” he continued.

“Every third bite of food you eat can come from

bees and we wanted to create an operation on our farm that did not push nature out but rather hugged it—as a central part of our ecology system and our food cycle,” he said.

The farm uses all kinds of seeds which can produce many different wild plants and of course, the bees can get food from different wildflowers.

“We are taking a very small role in helping society restore a balance and this starts with plant diversity to encourage insects, bees, small mammals (哺乳动物) and birds,” said Paul. “At the end of the day, we see ourselves as caretakers of this land. Between us we have six children and we owe it to them to farm sustainability (持续性) and set an example for the generations to come,” added Paul.

According to the Bee Conservation Trust, many types of bees have seen their populations decline by 70%, and two species have become extinct in the last century.

Gill Perkins, CEO of the Bee Conservation Trust said, “Thanks to Mark and Paul, at least here, 1 million bees can keep living, which is of great significance for ourselves now and future.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了英国两位农民种植野花,希望可以帮助蜜蜂生存的故事。

4. What can we know about the brothers from the first two paragraphs?

- A. They have about 162 acres of land.
- B. They grow wildflowers for pigs.
- C. They are not good at growing wildflowers.
- D. They have to support 1,000,000 bees in their land.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“Two pig farmers in Suffolk, East England have succeeded in feeding one million bees after participating in a project that saw them turn over half of their land to wildflowers. Four years ago, brothers Mark and Paul Hayward decided to fill 81 acres of their farmland with wildflowers.”可知,马克和保罗将

81 英亩的土地用来种植野花,而这些土地是两兄弟所拥有的超过一半的土地, $81 \times 2 = 162$, 即他们拥有的土地为 162 英亩左右。故选 A。

5. Why are bees under threat in East England?

- A. There is not enough food for bees.
- B. Bees are not used to the modern society.
- C. There are too many animals eating bees.
- D. Bees cannot find different wildflowers.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“‘We are acutely aware that bees are under threat from modern farming methods and that East England is one of the worst places where bees are seriously suffering from lack of foraging diversity (觅食多样性),’ he continued.”可知,蜜蜂受到的威胁有两种:一是现代农业方法,二是缺乏觅食多样性,即蜜蜂需要多种不同的花作为食物。由此可知,蜜蜂找不到不同的野花。故选 D。

6. What is the Gill Perkins' attitude to the action?

- A. Opposed.
- B. Doubtful.
- C. Supportive.
- D. Disappointed.

C 观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可推知, Gill Perkins 对这样的行为持肯定态度,表示支持。故选 C。

7. What is the best title for the text?

- A. The Bees Are in Danger Now
- B. Two Brothers Feed a Million Bees
- C. One Million Bees Are Surviving in East England
- D. Two Brothers Love Wildflowers in East England

B 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“Two pig farmers in Suffolk, East England have succeeded in feeding one million bees after participating in a project that saw them turn over half of their land to wildflowers.”可知,本文主要讲述了两位兄弟通过种植野花,为一百万只蜜蜂提供了食物,从而实现生态平衡的事迹。由此可知, B 项 Two Brothers Feed a Million Bees 适合作文章标题。故选 B。

C

It's shocking that countless species become extinct every year and such extinction means forever. To change the situation, scientists are now

on their way to bringing back extinct species.

DNA is the chemical that carries the structure of a living thing, which is needed by researchers to bring back a species. Dinosaurs have been gone too long for any of their DNA to remain in fossils. However, it seems possible to bring back more recently extinct species such as the Ice Age animal, the woolly mammoth (长毛象). In 2015, a team of Spanish and French scientists re-created the Pyrenean ibex, which had gone extinct three years earlier. The new animal didn't survive long, but scientific advances should improve the success rate. In January, Australian scientists announced that they were trying to restore the brooding frog.

That we can bring species back doesn't mean that we should. There may be benefits to bring back a species. But there's no way to know how it will turn out. For example, would a passenger pigeon fit into its old habitat? Or might it crowd out existing species?

Environmentalists worry that our ability to bring species back might cut down support for the hard work of traditional conservation. Why bother to preserve a wildlife habitat or fight poachers (偷猎者) if we know we can make up for our mistakes?

But those extinctions are our mistakes to correct. As environmentalist Stewart Brand put it, “Humans have the ability to repair some of that damage.”

We would do well to remember the lesson of *Jurassic Park*: Continue with caution.

【语篇解读】文章介绍的是灭绝物种的回归。令人震惊的是,每年都有无数的物种灭绝,而这样的灭绝意味着永远。为了改变这种情况,科学家们现在正着手让灭绝的物种复活。

8. What can we know from Paragraph 2?

- A. Scientists have successfully brought back some dinosaurs.
- B. It's likely for scientists to bring back recently extinct animals.
- C. Scientists have discovered DNA of all Ice Age

species in fossils.

D. Ice Age animals live longer than before after being brought back to life.

B 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“However, it seems possible to bring back more recently extinct species such as the Ice Age animal, the woolly mammoth (长毛象).”可知,科学家很可能会让最近灭绝的动物复活。故选 B。

9. What's the result of bringing back extinct species according to Paragraph 3?

- A. Harmful. B. Realistic.
C. Helpful. D. Double-edged.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段的内容可知,让灭绝的物种复活是一把双刃剑。故选 D。

10. What makes environmentalists worried according to the passage?

- A. Scientists cannot make up for the mistakes they made in DNA research.
B. Scientists still lack technical support to bring back extinct species to life.
C. Traditional conservation seems useless when restoring species is available.
D. Species that will be brought back to life after distinction will not survive long.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段的内容可知,当恢复物种的方式可行时,传统的保护似乎毫无用处。故选 C。

11. What is the probable attitude of Stewart Brand towards bringing extinct species back to life?

- A. Critical. B. Worried.
C. Disapproving. D. Supportive.

D 观点态度题。根据倒数第二段的内容可知,斯图尔特·布兰德对于让灭绝的物种复活支持的态度。故选 D。

D

City air is in a sorry state. It is dirty and hot. Outdoor pollution kills 4.2 million people a year, according to the World Health Organization. Concrete and blacktop, meanwhile, absorb the sun's rays rather than reflecting them back into space, and also take the place of plants which would

otherwise cool things down by transpiration. The never-ending spread of buildings and roads thus turns urban areas into heat islands, discomforting residents and worsening dangerous heatwaves, which are in any case likely to become more frequent as the planet warms.

A possible answer to the twin problems is trees. Their leaves may destroy at least some chemical pollutants and they certainly trap airborne particulate matter, which is then washed to the ground by rain. And trees cool things down. Besides transpiration, they provide shade. Their leaves have, after all, developed to block sunlight.

To cool an area effectively, though, trees must be planted in quantity. In 2009, researchers at the University of Wisconsin found that American cities need 40% tree coverage to cut urban heat back meaningfully. Unfortunately, not all cities—and especially not those now springing up in the world's poor and middle-income countries—are blessed with parks, private gardens or even decorative street trees in sufficient numbers. And the problem is likely to get worse. At the moment, 55% of people live in cities. By 2050 that share is expected to reach 68%.

Some botanists believe they have at least a partial solution to this lack of urban vegetation. It is to plant very small simulacra of natural forests, ecologically engineered for rapid growth. Over the course of a career that began in the 1950s, Akira Miyawaki, the team leader and plant ecologist at Yokohama National University in Japan, has developed a way to do this starting with even the most unpromising and in-bad-condition areas.

The method originated in Japan and was later introduced to other Asian countries. As it has become known, the Miyawaki method is finding increasing prevalence around the world. In Europe, Belgium, France and the Netherlands are all home to Miyawaki forests. Dr Miyawaki's insight was to deconstruct and rebuild the process of ecological

succession, by which bare lands develop naturally into mature forests.

【语篇解读】城市的空气质量不好,而且建筑物和道路无休止地扩建将城区变成热岛。增加植被覆盖率是解决城市空气污染和缓解城市热岛效应的有效方式。

12. What are the twin problems in the text?

- A. Air pollution and heatwaves.
- B. Lack of water and green space.
- C. Bad weather and road conditions.
- D. High-rise buildings and traffic jams.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“City air is in a sorry state. It is dirty and hot. Outdoor pollution kills 4.2 million people a year, according to the World Health Organization.”以及“The never-ending spread of buildings and roads thus turns urban areas into heat islands, discomforting residents and worsening dangerous heatwaves, which are in any case likely to become more frequent as the planet warms.”可知,这两个问题分别指空气污染和热浪。故选A。

13. Which paragraph stresses the need to increase the coverage of forest?

- A. Paragraph 2.
- B. Paragraph 3.
- C. Paragraph 4.
- D. Paragraph 5.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知,第三段强调了增加森林覆盖率的必要性。故选B。

14. What's the underlined word “prevalence” in the last paragraph probably mean?

- A. Return.
- B. Threat.
- C. Trade.
- D. Favour.

D 词义猜测题。根据最后一段中的“The method originated in Japan and was later introduced to other Asian countries.”以及“In Europe, Belgium, France and the Netherlands are all home to Miyawaki forests.”可知,Miyawaki方法受到世界各地的人喜爱。由此推知,画线词prevalence的意思是“喜爱”。故选D。

15. What is probably to be discussed next?

- A. What mature forests are.
- B. How bare land comes into being.

C. How the Miyawaki method works.

D. Why the Miyawaki method is popular.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Dr Miyawaki's insight was to deconstruct and rebuild the process of ecological succession, by which bare lands develop naturally into mature forests.”可推知,接下来最有可能介绍Miyawaki方法是如何起作用的。故选C。

II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

The key to dealing with test-day jitters (紧张不安) is through preparation! 16 It is important to prepare your mind and body before the test for the experience of working under pressure.

Get some sleep.

I know you've heard this before, but it's often repeated because it's so important. Get plenty of sleep the night before the test! If you don't have enough rest, you'll end up with less concentration. 17

Leave early.

Be sure to leave earlier than normal on the day of a test to avoid the added fear of arriving late. 18 The embarrassment will cause you to be distracted and lose valuable time.

19

Once you arrive at school or at the testing centre, find a quiet space where you can be all alone. You can use your car if you drive, or you can find an empty locker room or office (ask a teacher). Once you locate a cozy nest in a quiet place, do a relaxation session (一段时间). Close your eyes and try to relax completely. Take deep breaths and remain calm.

20

It's possible that some students start to stress out as other students discuss the material. When you hear others chatting, it might sound like you ignored something important or you misunderstood a concept (概念). It's probably not even true—but it can seem like it!

A. Take a quiet moment.

- B. A sleepy brain is a foggy brain.
 C. Watch out for chatting with others after a test.
 D. Attending an exam late is the last thing you need.
 E. You can eat some snacks during a break.
 F. Don't talk with other students in the minutes before a test.
 G. But full preparation means more than knowing the test material.

答案:16~20 GBDAF

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

I was in the kitchen making lunch when I saw my six-year-old son, Billy, walking towards the woods. I could only see his back. He 21 to be walking with a great effort, trying to be as 22 as possible.

A few minutes after he disappeared into the 23, he came running towards the house again. I went back to making sandwiches, 24 that whatever task he had been doing was completed. Moments later, 25, he was once again walking slowly towards the woods.

26 curiosity, I walked out and followed him on his journey. He was 27 both hands in front of him as he walked, being 28 not to spill the water he held in them. I secretly walked 29 behind him as he went into the woods and I saw the most amazing 30.

Several large deer loomed (出现) in front of him. Billy walked right up to them. I almost 31 at him to get away. A huge male deer with elaborate (精美的) antlers (鹿角) was 32 close. But they didn't even move as Billy 33. And I saw a small deer lying on the ground, obviously suffering from 34 and extreme heat, lift its head 35 to drink the water cupped in my beautiful boy's hands.

It was on this day that I learned the true lesson of sharing.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了在酷热天气下,儿子捧水去救一头小鹿,作者为之感动的故事。

21. A. happened B. seemed
 C. managed D. meant

B 句意:他似乎走得很吃力,尽量小心翼翼地。seem to be doing sth.“看起来正在做某事”符合句义。故选 B。

22. A. quickly B. secret
 C. smoothly D. careful

D 根据后文内容可知,小男孩是捧着水去救小鹿,所以走起路来非常小心。故选 D。

23. A. distance B. yard
 C. woods D. park

C 根据后文中的“he was once again walking slowly towards the woods”可知,他又一次慢慢地朝着树林走去。故选 C。

24. A. wondering B. thinking
 C. studying D. doubting

B 句意:我回去做三明治了,以为他做的事情都已经完成了。thinking 表示作者的想法。故选 B。

25. A. eventually B. actually
 C. however D. therefore

C 根据前文内容可知,作者认为他做的事情已经完成了,然而却没有完成。所以前后句子表示转折。故选 C。

26. A. Within B. Out of
 C. Beyond D. In spite of

B 根据后文“I walked out and followed him on his journey”可知,出于好奇作者走了出去,跟在他的后面。out of curiosity “出于好奇”。故选 B。

27. A. holding B. waving
 C. surrounding D. cupping

D 句意:他走路时双手捧在胸前,小心翼翼地不让手里的水洒出来。故选 D。

28. A. careful B. worried
 C. eager D. prepared

A 句意:他走路时双手捧在胸前,小心翼翼地不让手里的水洒出来。故选 A。

29. A. away B. close
 C. out D. off

B 句意:当他走进树林时,我偷偷地紧跟在他后面走,我看到了最令人惊奇的一幕。故选 B。

30. A. scene B. story
C. view D. game

A 根据下文对于小男孩捧着水喂鹿的描述可知,作者看到了最令人惊奇的一幕。故选 A。

31. A. fought B. signed
C. screamed D. waited

C 句意:我差点对他尖叫,要他离远点。故选 C。

32. A. hardly B. dangerously
C. easily D. nearly

B 句意:靠近一只长着精致鹿角的雄鹿很危险。故选 B。

33. A. ran away B. turned out
C. knelt down D. settled down

C 根据后文中的“I saw a small deer lying on the ground”可知,作者看见一只小鹿躺在地上。所以比利得双膝跪下,才能使小鹿喝到水。故选 C。

34. A. hunger B. disease
C. thirst D. injury

C 根据“extreme heat”可知,小鹿口渴得厉害。故选 C。

35. A. in turn B. in silence
C. with appreciation D. with difficulty

D 根据语境可知,酷热天气下,小鹿遭受着缺水的痛苦,所以抬起头喝水是很吃力的。故选 D。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

A young man, while **36. travelling** (travel) through a desert, came across a spring of clear water. The water was sweet. He filled his leather container so that he could bring some back to an elder **37. who/that** had been his teacher. After a four-day journey, the young man **38. presented** (present) the water to the old man. His teacher took a deep drink, smiled **39. warmly** (warm), and thanked his student very much for the sweet water. The young man went home **40. with** a happy heart.

After the student left, the teacher let **41. another** student taste the water. He spat it out, **42. saying** (say) it was awful. Apparently, it was no longer fresh because of the old leather container. He

asked his teacher, “Sir, the water was awful. Why did you pretend to like **43. it?**”

The teacher replied, “You tasted the water. I tasted the gift. The water was simply the container for an act of kindness and love. Nothing could be **44. sweeter** (sweet).”

We learn this lesson best when we receive gifts of love from children. Whether it is a cheap pipe or a diamond necklace, the proper response is **45. appreciation** (appreciate). We love the idea within the gift rather than the thing.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 书面表达(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,得知学校手语社(the School Sign Language Club)正在招收新成员,你想邀请在中国作交换生的美国好友 Henry 加入该社团。请用英语给 Henry 写一封信,邀请他加入。内容包括:

1. 邀请加入的理由(如学习手语可以帮助他人;可以结交新朋友等);
2. 报名方式及截止日期。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;

3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Henry,

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The eight-year-old Carol lived with her father David, mother May and elder brother Rob. The family happily lived in a beautiful village surrounded with beautiful nature. The village was at the foot of a mountain, with beautiful views of the snowy mountain. The family survived on growing seasonal plants and trees. Their life is totally surrounded by nature and beauty.

While they lived a very happy life, Carol did

not love the beautiful atmosphere of the village. She really wanted to move into the city and enjoy the city life. She wanted to shop, move around the city, watch movies and eat in fantastic restaurants and cafés, etc.

However, there was hardly any chance that Carol's family moved to the city as they had everything in the village.

One day, Carol fell asleep early and she had a sound sleep. Of course, she had a strange dream. She saw her grandmother in her dream as a fairy and her deceased (已故的) grandmother granted her a wish. Carol requested her that she should love to enjoy the city life as she always desired.

Grandmother understood the desire of Carol, but still wanted to convince her that the peaceful village life is better than the city life.

She told Carol, "Baby, you cannot have access to fresh fruit and vegetables from plants as you have at your home. You cannot breathe fresh air. You cannot play with animals. You can hardly find any trees. You will not find peace as you see here! Do you still want to go to the city?"

Without hearing the concerns, Carol asked her grandmother to grant the wish. Grandmother granted her wish, but with a condition. Carol was told that she would only have 6 hours to spend in the city. Later, she would return to the village. Carol agreed.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

Carol then found herself in the city with her friends. _____

Carol's brother Rob was calling her for breakfast and Carol woke up. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear Henry,

Is everything going well recently? The School Sign Language Club which I belong to is taking on new members. I hope you can grasp the precious opportunity to be a member of it. The reasons are as follows.

First of all, the School Sign Language Club is a great club and often offers the members opportunities to attend various activities. Meanwhile, you can make more friends. Besides, you can use sign language to help those who are in need. If you would like to join us, you can fill the application form and send it to *signlanguageclub@123.com* before 15th, May.

I hope you can take my advice into consideration.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

Carol then found herself in the city with her friends. Carol and her friends went to watch movies. After that they ate delicious food in a restaurant and shopped in a huge mall. Carol was happy that she had the chance to experience the life in the city. Yet at the same time, she understood that everything told by her grandmother was true in the city. There was no peace and no silence; the city life was fast and rushing. The air quality is not satisfying. She could hardly find any animal or even a tree.

Carol's brother Rob was calling her for breakfast and Carol woke up. She recalled what happened in her dream and realised that her life in the village with her family was far more wonderful than the city life. Carol understood that she was having a more joyful life. She shared her dream with her family while enjoying the fresh fruit and vegetables, and they laughed together. Carol also developed love for plants, animals and beautiful nature.

综合检测(一)

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

Canadian Music Festivals to Let Your Hair Down at Osheaga—Quebec

This 3-day local favourite is one of Canada's biggest festivals, having a line-up of indie, rap and pop moguls. The festival is divided into six main stages: Mountain, River, Tree, Green, Valley and Zone Piknic Electronik—each featuring a different type of music.

Ottawa Bluesfest—Ontario

This music festival will celebrate its 25th birthday with hundreds of world-class shows. Taking place in the LeBreton Flats along the Ottawa River, the festival will run across five stages over 10 exciting days. The star-studded line-up is full of local and international talents. Household names include alt-J, Alexisonfire, Chvrches, Jessie Reyez, Kygo, Logic, Shakey Graves, and many, many, many more.

Montreal Jazz Festival—Quebec

Founded in 1979, this jazz festival will celebrate its 40th anniversary this year by hosting more than 600 concerts across 20 stages. Held in the heart of downtown and kicking off at the end of June, this year's line-up is a mix of artists from around the world. This festival attracts more than 2.5 million music fans during 10 days, and is world-famous in the jazz community. Most shows are free but some can cost up to \$40 per person.

Festival d'été—Quebec

Established in 1908, the Festival d'été is an all-out 11-day musical feast that takes place in downtown Quebec City annually. Its main stage is one of the biggest in North America and is found in the historic Plains of Abraham. There are also hundreds of smaller performances spreading across a

dozen venues in the city. The best part is that tickets are super cheap!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了加拿大的四个音乐节。

1. Where will the Montreal Jazz Festival be held?

- A. On the Ottawa River.
B. In a village.
C. In the city centre.
D. On a plain.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Montreal Jazz Festival—Quebec** 部分中的“Held in the heart of downtown and kicking off at the end of June, this year's line-up is a mix of artists from around the world.”可知,蒙特利尔爵士音乐节在市中心举行。故选 C。

2. Who are the intended readers of the passage?

- A. Thrill-seekers. B. Foodies.
C. Party-planners. D. Concert-goers.

D 推理判断题。根据标题 **Canadian Music Festivals to Let Your Hair Down at** 及全文内容可知,本文主要介绍了加拿大的音乐节,是写给常去音乐节的乐迷朋友的。故选 D。

3. What do the four festivals have in common?

- A. All of them are held in Quebec.
B. All of them are multi-stage festivals.
C. All of their performers are from Canada.
D. All of their shows are ticketed.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Osheaga—Quebec** 部分中的“The festival is divided into six main stages: Mountain, River, Tree, Green, Valley and Zone Piknic Electronik—each featuring a different type of music.”, **Ottawa Bluesfest—Ontario** 部分中的“Taking place in the LeBreton Flats along the Ottawa River, the festival will run across five stages over 10 exciting days.”, **Montreal Jazz Festival—Quebec** 部分中的“Founded in 1979, this jazz festival will celebrate its 40th anniversary

this year by hosting more than 600 concerts across 20 stages.”, 以及 **Festival d'été—Quebec** 部分中的 “Its main stage is one of the biggest in North America and is found in the historic Plains of Abraham. There are also hundreds of smaller performances spreading across a dozen venues in the city.”可知, 这四个音乐节的共同点是: 它们都是多舞台的节日。故选 B。

B

When Kirk Alexander went missing for 11 days, an unlikely savior came to his rescue: his neighbourhood pizza store.

Almost every night for more than ten years, Alexander ordered a late dinner from his local Domino's pizza store. Until suddenly, for nearly two weeks, he didn't.

It was a Saturday night when Domino's general manager Fuller felt she could no longer ignore Alexander's recent absence.

Fuller had known Alexander since 2009, when she started at the Domino's store as a delivery driver and regularly made the short trip to Alexander's home about six minutes away. She knew Alexander worked from home, and neighbours said he rarely left. She also knew that he had suffered some health issues in the past. Something, Fuller worried, was wrong.

On Sunday, Fuller sent her coworker Hamblen to stop by Alexander's home. Hamblen approached Alexander's door and knocked. He could plainly see that Alexander's TV set was on, as were his lights; but after several minutes, Alexander still didn't answer the door. Seriously worried now, Hamblen called Alexander directly. His phone went straight to voicemail.

Hamblen called to relay the upsetting developments to Fuller. She dialed 911. Soon, officers were on their way.

When deputies (警官) arrived at Alexander's house, they broke the door down and found Alexander on the floor “in need of immediate medical attention”. Alexander was rushed to the hospital, where he was listed in stable condition shortly after the dramatic rescue. In the following

weeks, Fuller and the other employees went to visit him with flowers and cards, noting that Alexander greeted them with knowing smiles. Their role in his rescue did not seem lost on Alexander, though to Fuller, it was all just part of the job.

Fuller and her coworkers' heroism did not go unnoticed. After their story went viral, they received invitations—and free flights to a Domino's corporate rally in Las Vegas as a nod to their status as real-life superheroes.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Kirk Alexander 生病时被他经常点餐的比萨饼店工作人员及时发现并救助的感人故事。

4. How did Fuller get to know Alexander?

- A. By going on a trip.
- B. By delivering dinner to him.
- C. By Hamblen's introduction.
- D. By working as Domino's general manager.

B 细节理解题。根据第四段第一句可知, 2009 年 Fuller 在比萨饼店当送餐司机给 Kirk Alexander 送餐时与他结识。

5. What is the meaning of the underlined part in Paragraph 7?

- A. Alexander knew he was safe.
- B. Alexander was in stable condition.
- C. Alexander was happy to see his friends.
- D. Alexander was aware of what had happened to him.

D 推理判断题。根据第七段画线句的后面 “Their role in his rescue did not seem lost on Alexander...” 可以推断出选 D。

6. Why did Fuller and her workmates go to a corporate rally?

- A. Because that was part of their job.
- B. Because they were offered free flights.
- C. Because they were rewarded for their kind act.
- D. Because they wanted to be superheroes.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的 “as a nod to their status as real-life superheroes” 可知选 C。

7. Which of the following can be used to describe Fuller?

- A. Attentive and helpful.
- B. Hard-working and honest.

- C. Careful and brave.
D. Reliable and powerful.

A 推理判断题。通读全文可知, Fuller 注意到 Kirk Alexander 较长时间没有点餐而关注他, 也记得他的身体和生活状态, 因此及时派人查看并救助, 所以 A 项更合适。

C

Now is the time to act on climate change. We need to cut carbon emissions (排放), and knowing this, it is easy to be pessimistic. Strangely, I'm feeling the opposite. And that's mostly because of one factor: Batteries. It isn't obvious but over the last decade or so, just as we've watched our computers get faster and screens get thinner, batteries have greatly improved too.

According to the European Patent Office, the number of battery patents filed grew by an average of 14 percent every year between 2005 and 2018. Energy storage is getting better and better, as more companies are discovering new chemistry and processes to make them work more efficiently.

And the results of all of this work are astonishing. Energy density—the amount of power that can be stored in the same sized battery—has doubled in the last decade. And the costs of batteries have fallen a lot too.

Brilliantly, because electric batteries are improving so noticeably, we can already see the results. Last September, 15 percent of all new vehicle registrations were pure electric vehicles. So the change is starting to happen.

It's conceivable that in the not-too-distant future, alongside other essentials in our homes like a boiler and a fusebox, we might also have an enormous battery in the garage. This would take power from the grid (电网) or maybe even solar panels on the roof, and power appliances and lights in our homes at the times when demand for electricity is high.

So, given how much technology has improved batteries over the last decade, I can't help but be strangely optimistic about the future. Batteries may not be as flashy (显眼的) as phones, rockets or

other new technologies, but when it comes to technology to fight climate change, they're definitely leading the charge.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了在目前碳排放量极高的情况下, 电池的快速发展使得作者对于减少碳排放充满信心。

8. What is the author's attitude towards cutting carbon emissions?

- A. Doubtful. B. Favourable.
C. Unclear. D. Anxious.

B 观点态度题。根据第一段中的“Now is the time to act on climate change. We need to cut carbon emissions (排放), and knowing this, it is easy to be pessimistic.”可推断, 作者认为应该减少碳排放, 也就是说作者支持减少碳排放。故选 B。

9. What is the possible result of batteries' great improvement?

- A. It'll make them more environment-friendly.
B. It'll make people use electricity at will.
C. It will slow the development of pure electric vehicles.
D. It'll cause the prices of batteries to rise.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Batteries may not be as flashy (显眼的) as phones, rockets or other new technologies, but when it comes to technology to fight climate change, they're definitely leading the charge.”可推知, 电池的巨大改进有利于应对气候变化, 这说明电池的巨大改进让电池更环保。故选 A。

10. What does the underlined word “conceivable” in Paragraph 5 mean?

- A. Unacceptable. B. Astonishing.
C. Possible. D. Unreliable.

C 词义猜测题。根据第五段画线词后面的“in the not-too-distant future, alongside other essentials in our homes like a boiler and a fusebox, we might also have an enormous battery in the garage”可知, 由于电池的快速发展, 这些都是可能发生的。所以 conceivable 表示“可能的”之意。故选 C。

11. Which of the following is a suitable title for the text?

- A. Carbon Emissions Result in Climate Change
- B. Now Is the Time to Act on Climate Change
- C. How Battery Technology Can Save the Planet
- D. How Much Technology Has Improved Batteries

C 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“*We need to cut carbon emissions (排放), and knowing this, it is easy to be pessimistic. Strangely, I'm feeling the opposite. And that's mostly because of one factor: Batteries.*”及全文内容可知,文章主要介绍了在目前碳排放量极高的情况下,电池快速发展使得作者对于减少碳排放充满乐观。所以 C 项最适合作文章标题。故选 C。

D

It is no accident that many films and shows open with a crazy, action-packed scene that drives viewers to ask: “*What's going on here, who are these people and what do they want?*” These scenes are designed to keep us watching.

A scientist who explores climate history by analysing stalagmites (石笋) held a lecture. At the beginning of her talk, she showed a photo of herself crawling through a cave to collect samples. The audience immediately perked up. Starting with that image, we couldn't wait to ask why this scientist was crawling around in a dangerous cave, which might have attracted the audience more strongly from the beginning.

However, this particular storytelling technique is perhaps the most appropriate in presentations; research papers typically demand more straightforward reporting of results in the form of a clear abstract. When scientists describe their research to audiences outside their professional field, they often avoid discussing personal trials and sufferings. Instead, they focus only on positive, published results. No one wants to look like a failure, even if such experiences can be vastly valuable. But hiding the hardships might cut out some of your best story material. The research

process lends itself perfectly to this narrative concept (叙事概念); it can be described as a winding road of plot twists that reshapes the lives of scientists and our understanding of the world. Invite others to join you for the ups and downs of your research. Instead of just presenting your findings, describe how you reacted to those discoveries. What was the most exciting? How did you get wrong? As Emma Coats, a former Pixar storyboard artist, noted in a list of storytelling principles she posted on a website: “*You admire a character for trying more than for their successes.*”

Try to apply screenwriting strategies to your presentation. After all, as the character Tyrion Lannister states in the television series *Game of Thrones*, “*There's nothing in the world more powerful than a good story.*”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了讲故事的技巧在演讲中的重要性,并建议在演讲中正确运用故事。

12. What is the common feature of a film and a lecture mentioned in the first two paragraphs?

- A. They start with a story.
- B. They both focus on technical details.
- C. They reflect the same background.
- D. They both arouse audiences' curiosity.

D 细节理解题。根据第一段的内容和第二段中的“*At the beginning of her talk, she showed a photo of herself crawling through a cave to collect samples. The audience immediately perked up. Starting with that image, we couldn't wait to ask why this scientist was crawling around in a dangerous cave, which might have attracted the audience more strongly from the beginning.*”可知,它们都能激起观众的好奇心。故选 D。

13. Which can best replace the underlined phrase “perked up” in Paragraph 2?

- A. Became active.
- B. Got shocked.
- C. Became embarrassed.
- D. Got lost.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线词后面的“Starting with that image, we couldn't wait to ask why this scientist was crawling around in a dangerous cave, which might have attracted the audience more strongly from the beginning.”可知,这张照片一开始就吸引了观众,使观众积极思考。由此可知,画线短语应为“被吸引,感兴趣,积极”的意思,选项A“变得积极起来”与之意义最为接近。故选A。

14. How do the researchers typically present their findings?

- A. By using a storytelling technique.
- B. By outlining the results in brief.
- C. By describing their report in detail.
- D. By focusing only on valuable experiences.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“When scientists describe their research to audiences outside their professional field, they often avoid discussing personal trials and sufferings. Instead, they focus only on positive, published results.”可知,研究人员通常只是通过简要地概述结果来展示他们的发现。故选B。

15. What is this text mainly about?

- A. The power of a good story.
- B. The advice on research papers.
- C. The techniques to attract audience.
- D. The storytelling technique in presentations.

D 主旨大意题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段中的“Try to apply screenwriting strategies to your presentation.”以及“There's nothing in the world more powerful than a good story.”可知,本文主要论述了在演讲中讲故事的技巧。故选D。

II. 七选五(共5小题;每小题2.5分,满分12.5分)

Humour is a phenomenon influenced by culture. It can be difficult to determine what aspects form a certain sense of humour. How funny somebody finds a certain incident depends on many aspects including ages, personal experiences, levels of education and geographical locations. A nation's sense of humour is linked to the historical development of the country. 16

But what about when both countries speak the same mother tongue? Will they then share the same sense of humour or can differences still occur? Let's take the example of Britain and America. 17 To what degree is this true, if at all?

Recent research proves that there are two major differences between British and American sense of humour. 18 However, it's not shared by Americans. For example, if a British man lost his new and favourite mobile phone in the toilet, he just said, “Well done! That's just what I need.”

19 And that kind of jokes is called negative humour by researchers. British men and women use it on a daily basis, while it is not the case of American humour. What Americans don't understand is the need to use it so frequently. When Americans use negative humour, they tend to state that they were “only kidding”.

Although the British really do have a unique sense of humour, quite different from American humour, they can both appreciate the other's sense of humour. Therefore, some shows describe a lifestyle which both Americans and the British alike can relate to. 20

- A. British jokes tend to have a hidden meaning.
- B. Thus humour can't always be conveyed in another country.
- C. Americans and the British often share the same sense of humour.
- D. Humour contrary to what you want to say is regarded as typically British.
- E. The other difference is how frequent to joke about the dark side of life.
- F. People say Americans and the British hardly understand each other's jokes.
- G. Comedies *The Office* (UK) and *The Office* (USA) gain in popularity in both countries.

答案:16~20 BFDEG

III. 完形填空(共15小题;每小题1分,满分15分)

A few years back, I planned to build a networked digital library where theses (论文) from

African universities could be stored. I wanted to find a way to make these great 21 visible to the whole world. It took me months and even years to 22 build it to my taste. But finally, it went nowhere.

The other day, I was at a rest area. I observed that when one ant found food, others immediately 23 to help pull the food to their storage. I tried to 24 the pattern, which unfortunately resulted in 25 one. Quickly, they came together to rescue it. Then they reorganised and 26 in the line they had created. I saw no 27 of supervision (监督), yet they were moving pieces of food that were about 30 times their individual sizes, which is a 28 task.

As I watched them, the library plan 29 in my mind. Wouldn't it be 30 to trust others to help you? Right there, I made the following 31. The ants cooperated with each other: I will form a(n) 32, bringing professionals together. The ants trusted one another: I must 33 the notion (观念) that only by working alone can I ensure quality. The ants were 34: I will share my ideas with like-minded people.

It is about a month later now and the project is progressing well. It's true that by 35 everyone in the organisation and trusting people, we will achieve success.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者在观察蚂蚁寻找食物的活动中获得灵感,从而通过团结合作寻找志同道合的专业人士一起建设网络数字图书馆项目的故事。

21. A. conditions B. contributions
C. positions D. instructions

B 根据上文中的“I planned to build a networked digital library where theses (论文) from African universities could be stored”可知,作者计划建立一个可以存储非洲大学论文的网络数字图书馆,目的在于让优秀的稿件被全世界看到。故选 B。

22. A. personally B. similarly
C. peacefully D. slightly

A 根据“It took me months and even years to 22 build it to my taste.”及下文作者通过用从蚂蚁身上学到的团队合作精神构建网络数字图书馆项目可知,作者是独自打造自己的项目。故选 A。

23. A. survived B. gathered
C. happened D. hesitated

B 根据后文的“to help pull the food to their storage”和“The ants cooperated with each other”可知,蚂蚁能相互合作,所以在一只蚂蚁找到食物时,其他蚂蚁会立刻聚集过来帮忙。故选 B。

24. A. memorise B. share
C. disturb D. match

C 根据下文的“which unfortunately resulted in 25 one. Quickly, they came together to rescue it”可知,作者应该是打乱了蚂蚁的模式,才会导致其他蚂蚁来救这只蚂蚁。故选 C。

25. A. wounding B. motivating
C. conducting D. discovering

A 根据“which unfortunately resulted in 25 one”和后文的“Quickly, they came together to rescue it.”可知,作者打乱了蚂蚁的模式,应该是弄伤了一只蚂蚁,才会导致其他蚂蚁来救这只蚂蚁。故选 A。

26. A. waited B. hid
C. continued D. reflected

C 根据前文的“they came together to rescue it”和“Then they reorganised and 26 in the line they had created.”可知,蚂蚁们救助伤员后便重新组织到一起,并且继续按照之前的队列前进(去搬运食物)。故选 C。

27. A. favour B. form
C. response D. comparison

B 根据上文语境可知,一只蚂蚁找到食物,其他蚂蚁就会来帮忙搬运食物——一只蚂蚁受伤,其他蚂蚁就会来救它——救完伤员,蚂蚁们重新组织、接着搬运食物,作者从蚂蚁这一系列的动作里看不到任何形式的监督。故选 B。

28. A. regular B. permanent
C. simple D. massive

D 根据前文的“they were moving pieces of food that were about 30 times their individual sizes”可知,蚂蚁正在搬运大约是其个体大小三十倍的

食物,所以这是一项艰巨的任务。故选 D。

29. A. weakened B. varied
C. flashed D. collapsed

C 根据下文的“I will form a(n) 32, bringing professionals together.”可知,看着蚂蚁协作搬运食物,作者的脑海里闪现出他的图书馆项目。故选 C。

30. A. ridiculous B. cruel
C. greedy D. wonderful

D 根据上下文语境可知,作者从蚂蚁身上看到团结协作、相互信任的力量,故反问道“相信别人会帮助自己难道不是很好吗?”故选 D。

31. A. decisions B. mistakes
C. assumptions D. recommendations

A 根据下文的“I will form a(n) 32, bringing professionals together.”可知,看到蚂蚁团结协作、相互信任的力量,作者决心一改以往亲力亲为的做法,并做了一些决定——邀请专业人士一起构建网络数字图书馆项目。故选 A。

32. A. order B. opinion
C. requirement D. team

D 根据后文的“bringing professionals together”可知,作者要将专业人士聚集在一起,组建一个团队。故选 D。

33. A. get along with B. keep pace with
C. get rid of D. come up with

C 根据上下文语境可知,作者想要摒弃那种只有自己亲力亲为才能保证质量的信念。故选 C。

34. A. efficient B. open
C. honest D. hard-working

B 根据后文的“I will share my ideas with like-minded people.”可知,作者学习蚂蚁的开放和包容,所以想与志同道合的人分享自己的想法。故选 B。

35. A. engaging B. impressing
C. challenging D. rewarding

A 根据上文的“The ants cooperated with each other”和“I will share my ideas with like-minded people.”可知,作者领悟到:让组织中的每个人都参与进来,并相信每个人的力量,终将会取得成功。engage... in...“让……参与……”符合题意。故选 A。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Painted with tung oil, a kind of plant oil from the tung tree, to make them water-proof, Chinese

oil-paper umbrellas are not just tools to shelter people 36. from rain or sunlight, but also works of art with rich 37. cultural (culture) meaning in China.

Chinese oil-paper umbrellas are among the world's 38. oldest (old) umbrellas. According to historical records, the first oil-paper umbrellas appeared during the Eastern Han Dynasty. They soon became very popular, 39. especially (especial) among the literati (文人). They loved to write and draw on the umbrella surface to demonstrate their literary tastes and painting 40. skills (skill).

During the Tang Dynasty, Chinese oil-paper umbrellas 41. were brought (bring) overseas to Japan and ancient Korea, 42. where they were known as Tang umbrellas. Over centuries, these umbrellas also spread to other Asian countries such as Vietnam and Thailand.

Oil-paper umbrellas are 43. a necessary part of traditional Chinese weddings. A red oil-paper umbrella is needed as the bride is greeted at the groom's home, because the umbrella is supposed 44. to help (help) avoid bad luck. Also, oil-paper sounds similar to “youzi” in Chinese, which means 45. having (have) children. So the umbrella is seen as a symbol of fertility (多子多孙).

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 书面表达(满分 15 分)

假定你是李华,你想邀请你的留学生朋友 Martin 参加“建设美丽乡村”的志愿者活动。请你根据要点给他写一封邮件。

1. 时间:星期日下午;
2. 志愿者活动介绍:捡河里的垃圾,沿路种植一些花;
3. 志愿者活动可能带来的收获。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;

3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Martin,

Looking forward to your participation.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

From the time I started playing basketball at six years old, my father never missed a game. He would stand beside the basketball field from beginning to end and cheer for me and my team. When I was on the team at Trinity College, he would leave work and drive two hours from Massachusetts to the Connecticut campus to see me play. He always stuck around after the game (no matter how long the coach kept us in the locker room) and then turned around and headed home to start his shift at his second job.

Growing up, I played every sport, but basketball really connected me to my father. He was raised in a rough-and-tumble household with four older brothers and one older sister, and playing basketball with them was something he looked forward to. To this day, he still holds basketball records at the high school we both went to. My dad was the person I could ask for feedback on how I played, and the one I could practise with on the little half-court in our backyard.

When I joined a coed AAU (Amateur Athletic Union) team at the age of twelve, it was the first time I had remembered him giving me inspiring talks and telling me that I could hang with the boys and not to be afraid of being small. As I got older, I was always the workhorse of the team and the player who did the dirty work—I had to wear knee pads during my games because I'd scramble (争夺) so hard for the ball—which earned me a role as captain.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

The day came soon when I would compete again. _____

After the game, as usual, I told my father

about the game. _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Dear Martin,

How is everything going with you these days? I would like to invite you to take part in the voluntary activity—Build Beautiful Countryside.

In this activity, not only will we gather rubbish from the river but also we are expected to plant some flowers along the road. In addition, what needs to be emphasised is that it is scheduled to be held on Sunday afternoon in the countryside in the south of our city. I have the idea that you will know more about traditional Chinese countryside and realise the importance of environmental protection, which, without doubt, requires joint efforts.

Looking forward to your participation.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

The day came soon when I would compete again. My father, as usual, came into my room, patted my shoulder, and said in his firm but slow voice, “Be skilled in using skills, keep the cooperation with other team members, pay attention to safety.” The familiar language and the familiar instructions stirred in my heart again. Many a time I would secretly resolve to finish the race well and live up to my father’s expectations.

After the game, as usual, I told my father about the game. My father smiled slightly and asked, “What did you learn from this competition?” I thought my father would be happy to praise me, so I did not know what to do when he asked. My father seemed to see my embarrassment and said, “The game is important, but the most important thing is the reflection it gives us.” I looked at my father as if I understood a lot.

综合检测(二)

(时间:100分钟 分值:120分)

I. 阅读理解(共15小题;每小题2.5分,满分37.5分)

A

La Vida Local in Mexico City

About Your Trip

Climb ancient temples in Teotihuacán, watch free style wrestlers in action and have a drink with your fellow travellers on our five-day trip to Mexico City. We've teamed up with a local insider to show you the real side to this international big city. Drop your bags off at the Zocalo Central Hotel near Roma, before hitting the streets on a walking tour of the Condesa district. You'll also have the chance to taste meat tacos in Roma, visit Frida Kahlo's house, then sing with the mariachis (墨西哥街头乐队) floating by your boat in the Xochimilco canals.

Trip Highlights

- Explore hidden corners of CDMX with our local insiders.
- Cheer on masked wrestlers in the beer-filled free style wrestling.
- Sail the Xochimilco waterways in a one-of-a-kind painted boat.
- Join a private tour through one of the most dynamic food markets in the city.
- Discover the ruins of Teotihuacán, a massive Mesoamerican pyramid complex.

Accommodation

Zocalo Central Hotel, Mexico City

Expect comfortable beds, an onsite gym and excellent service at this neoclassical (新古典主义的) style hotel, right in the historic centre. Take dinner on the rooftop overlooking the Mexico City Metropolitan Cathedral and Plaza del Marqués

below.

Important Info

- You must be aged 25 years or over to join this trip.
- Please be sure to check whether or not you need a visa to enter the country you're travelling to.
- We won't charge you extra if you travel alone—you'll share a twin room with another traveller of the same gender.
- Please be aware that travel insurance is a must for all travellers.
- Please be aware that the travelling schedule, activities and hotels are subject to change. While unlikely, these changes can happen due to circumstances beyond our control. We will always do our best to ensure minimal impact on your experience.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了关于在墨西哥城旅行的住宿、亮点和注意事项等。

1. What are the tourists expected to do after checking in at the hotel?
 - A. Take a walk in the street.
 - B. Climb ancient temples.
 - C. Watch wrestlers in action.
 - D. Sing with the mariachis.

A 细节理解题。根据 **About Your Trip** 部分中的“Drop your bags off at the Zocalo Central Hotel near Roma, before hitting the streets on a walking tour of the Condesa district.”可知,在酒店登记入住后,游客会被安排去街道上走走。故选 A。
2. What can a tourist do during the trip?
 - A. Visit every corner of Mexico City.

- B. Dress up as a free style wrestler.
 C. Climb some ancient pyramids.
 D. Enjoy the city view while dining.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Accommodation** 部分中的“Take dinner on the rooftop overlooking the Mexico City Metropolitan Cathedral and Plaza del Marqués below.”可知,游客可以在旅行时一边吃晚餐一边欣赏墨西哥城。故选 D。

3. What is the special requirement to take this trip?

- A. A visa.
 B. A travel partner.
 C. Travel insurance.
 D. Over 25 years old.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Important Info** 部分中的“Please be aware that travel insurance is a must for all travellers.”可知,参加这次旅行的特别要求是游客必须购买旅行保险。故选 C。

B

Gerhard and Toni Goldschlag welcomed their daughter Stella on July 10, 1922. Gerhard—a former soldier in the German Imperial Army—was a musician devoted to German music. He was employed as a composer (作曲家) by the Kulturbund. Both Toni and Gerhard were particularly devoted to their only child; they loved her dearly, gave her everything they had, and taught her what was to be admired.

The World War II broke out. Gerhard was out of work, finances were non-existent, and they were unable to secure a way out of Germany. When Stella's school offered her the chance to head to Britain on a school trip (and then stay there), her parents said no. They weren't separating the family, so they had no choice but to stay in a country that was getting increasingly dangerous.

At first, *Traces of War* says that Stella Goldschlag enjoyed a certain amount of freedom. She went to college, studied fashion and joined a jazz band as a singer. It was there that she met and married her first husband, Manfred Kubler.

Her luck didn't last long, though. Her husband

wasn't so fortunate. He was arrested and forced to leave for Auschwitz on May 3, 1943. He died there just two days later, just 20 years old.

Stella and her mother continued to work in factories while trying to avoid arrest. However, they weren't the only ones who tried to survive the war by hiding right in the open. Around 7,000 managed to hold on to their freedom, and in the slang (俚语) terms of the time, they were called “U-boats”, as they were hiding just under the surface.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章介绍了《战争的痕迹》的作者 Stella 在战争期间不幸的遭遇,但是她顽强地生存了下来的故事。

4. What prevented Stella from going to England?

- A. The loss of her father's job.
 B. The danger of going abroad.
 C. Her parents' objection to that.
 D. The limitation of her freedom.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“When Stella's school offered her the chance to head to Britain on a school trip (and then stay there), her parents said no.”可知,是 Stella 的父母反对她去英国。故选 C。

5. What did Stella study in college?

- A. Fashion. B. Jazz.
 C. Politics. D. Composition.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段中的第二句“*She went to college, studied fashion...*”可知,Stella 在大学学习的是时装。故选 A。

6. How old was Stella when Manfred passed away?

- A. About 10 years old.
 B. About 17 years old.
 C. About 20 years old.
 D. About 21 years old.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“*He was arrested and forced to leave for Auschwitz on May 3, 1943. He died there just two days later, just 20 years old.*”以及第一段中的“*Gerhard and Toni Goldschlag welcomed their daughter Stella on July 10, 1922.*”可知,Manfred 去世时 Stella 大约二十一岁。故选 D。

dioxide is mixed with water and put deep in the ground into a type of rock called basalt.”可知, Orca 的工作过程是:先吸入空气,对其过滤并加热收集到的二氧化碳,完成二氧化碳的收集,与水混合,最后存入地下。故选 A。

11. Why are some environmentalists not in favour of Orca?

- A. Because reducing emissions is more important.
- B. Because it might result in new pollution.
- C. Because the technology is not mature.
- D. Because it doesn't work efficiently.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Some environmental activists say governments should spend more time and money on reducing the amount of greenhouse gas we produce each year, instead of investing in carbon capture methods.”可推知,一些环保人士不支持 Orca,是因为他们认为减少我们每年产生的温室气体更重要。故选 A。

D

A team of conservationists (环境保护主义者) captured 14 Loa water frogs earlier this month in northern Chile, a wildlife group reported.

The International Union for Conservation of Nature (IUCN) lists the Loa water frog as “critically endangered”. The not-for-profit Global Wildlife Conservation group said the 14 frogs were in poor condition when they were discovered in late June. The animals were small and struggling because of a lack of food and water.

The Loa water frogs are known to live only in a single body of water near Calama, in Chile. The city sits in the middle of the Atacama Desert, where water is in great demand.

There was little water in the area where the frogs were found, the conservation group reported. The frogs' environment had mostly dried up because water is being taken away and used for human activities, the group said. The activities include mining, agriculture and land development. “All of

the frogs had been pushed into a tiny pool of muddy water,” the organisation said. “The team collected the last 14 individuals and brought them to the National Zoo of Chile to start a conservation breeding programme.”

Zoo specialists are closely watching the small creatures and trying to give them everything they need to survive and be healthy. Conservation groups have called on Chile's government to take steps to halt any illegal water usage that threatens the frogs' natural environment. They would also like to see creation of a government-supported shelter to protect the animals.

Jon Paul Rodriguez heads the IUCN's Species Survival Commission. He suggested that an emergency plan be developed to prepare the Calama area for the frogs' return.

“We need to work very hard to restore their environment because it's pointless to breed them if they don't have a home to go back to in the wild,” Rodriguez said.

【语篇解读】野生动物保护人士表示,他们拯救了一种高度濒危的青蛙。这些青蛙可能是世界上最后幸存下来的。本月早些时候,一组环保人士在智利北部捕获了十四只水蛙。它们极度缺水,状态令人担忧。

12. What do we know about the frogs when they were rescued?

- A. They were looking for food.
- B. They were in good condition.
- C. They were approaching death.
- D. They were moving for new water sources.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的最后一句“The animals were small and struggling because of a lack of food and water.”可知,这些获救的青蛙状况很差,几乎接近死亡。故选 C。

13. What has made these frogs endangered?

- A. Lack of water.
- B. Water pollution.
- C. Human hunting.
- D. Extreme climate.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“The frogs'

environment had mostly dried up because water is being taken away and used for human activities”可知,缺水使这种动物濒临灭绝,无法生存。故选 A。

14. What does the underlined word “halt” in Paragraph 5 mean?

- A. Improve. B. Increase.
C. Change. D. Stop.

D 词义猜测题。根据画线词前面的“take steps to”和后面的“any illegal water usage that threatens the frogs' natural environment”可知,环保组织呼吁智利政府采取措施,停止任何这种青蛙生存所需的自然环境中的水资源的非法用水行为。由此可知,halt 的意思是“停止”,与 stop 是同义词。故选 D。

15. What did Jon Paul Rodriguez suggest humans do for these frogs?

- A. Keep them healthy.
B. Recover their home.
C. Raise them in the shelter.
D. Prevent them living in the wild.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“We need to work very hard to restore their environment”可知,Jon Paul Rodriguez 建议我们恢复它们的栖息地。restore 和 recover 都有“恢复”之意。故选 B。

II. 七选五(共 5 小题;每小题 2.5 分,满分 12.5 分)

Children start out as natural scientists, eager to look into the world around them. 16 there's no need for a lot of scientific terms or expensive lab equipment. You only have to share your children's curiosity.

Firstly, listen to their questions. I once visited a classroom of seven-year-olds to talk about science as a job. The children asked me “textbook questions” about schooling, salary and whether I liked my job. When I finished answering, I said, “Now that we've finished with your lists, do you have questions of your own about science?”

After a long pause, a boy raised his hand, “Have you ever seen a grasshopper (蚱蜢) eat?

When I try eating leaves like that, I get a stomachache. Why?” 17

Secondly, give them time to think. Studies have shown that, after asking a question, adults typically wait only one second or less for an answer, 18 When adults increase their “wait time” to three seconds or more, children give more logical, complete and creative answers.

Thirdly, 19 Once you have a child in a science discussion, don't jump in with “That's right” or “Very good”. These words work well when it comes to encouraging good behaviour. But in talking about science, quick praise can signal that discussion is over. Instead, keep things going by saying, “That's interesting” or coming up with more questions or ideas.

Lastly, 20 Real-life impressions of nature are far more impressive than any lesson children can learn from a book or a television programme. Let children look at their fingertips through a magnifying glass (放大镜), and they'll understand why you want them to wash before dinner.

- A. show; don't tell.
B. watch your language.
C. no time for a child to think.
D. Never push a child to wait!
E. Helping them enjoy science can be easy:
F. children are always thinking without your telling them to.
G. This began a set of questions that lasted nearly two hours.

答案:16~20 EGCBA

III. 完形填空(共 15 小题;每小题 1 分,满分 15 分)

When I was growing up in Minnesota, *Joe Versus the Volcano* was one of my favourite movies. I 21 to be swept away to an island. But as I found myself in La Palma 22 on the Cumbre Vieja eruption in the Spanish Canary Islands, I quickly 23 that there's nothing romantic about volcanoes or being trapped on an island.

I had come 24 —an N95 mask, a baseball cap and a swimming mask. But nothing could

prepare me for the invasiveness of the volcanic
 25 . It fell from the sky like a rainstorm, lining
 streets, 26 doorways and windowsills and
 filling my ears.

It wasn't long before the airlines cancelled all
 flights. When 27 began panic, buying all the
 ferry tickets as I was interviewing residents about
 their futures, I realised I had 28 the boat.

For two days, I wandered 29 streets
 awaiting the resumption of travel, carrying a
 backpack and feeling progressively stuck and at
 times 30 . And then I realised I was being given
 the 31 of deeper insight. Here I was 32
 what the local people were feeling: uncertainty,
 frustration and tiredness from living next to an
 erupting volcano with no end in sight.

Like the people of La Palma, I 33 others to
 get me through—from the English woman who
 34 me a bag of oranges from her garden to the
 minister of the church who let me use the bathroom
 after being trapped at the top of a mountain.

As I finally left, I realised how 35 I was to
 have experienced the humanity of the people in La
 Palma in the face of crisis. I know it's what will pull
 them through it.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。在西班牙加那利群
 岛的康伯维哈火山喷发时,身为记者的作者虽然被困
 于火山岛,但是得到了当地人帮助,从而让作者看到了
 危机面前人性的光芒。

21. A. seemed B. pretended
 C. refused D. longed

D 根据前文“*Joe Versus the Volcano* was one of
 my favourite movies”和后文“I quickly 23
 that there's nothing romantic about volcanoes or
 being trapped on an island”可知,受电影情节影
 响,作者之前认为困在火山岛上是一件浪漫的
 事情,所以他渴望被海浪卷到一个小岛上,开始
 自己的冒险之旅。故选 D。

22. A. recording B. checking
 C. reporting D. focusing

C 根据后文“on the Cumbre Vieja eruption in
 the Spanish Canary Islands”和第三段中的“I was
 interviewing residents about their futures”可知,

作者是一名记者,在报道西班牙加那利群岛的康
 伯维哈火山喷发。故选 C。

23. A. guessed B. realised
 C. agreed D. imagined

B 根据后文“there's nothing romantic about
 volcanoes or being trapped on an island”可知,作
 者意识到困在火山岛上并不是一件浪漫的事情。
 故选 B。

24. A. excited B. disappointed
 C. prepared D. confused

C 根据后文“an N95 mask, a baseball cap and a
 swimming mask”可知,作者有备而来。故选 C。

25. A. rock B. ash
 C. lava D. smoke

B 根据后文“It fell from the sky”可知,此处讲
 的是火山灰。故选 B。

26. A. covering B. blocking
 C. breaking D. destroying

A 根据前文中的“It fell from the sky like a
 rainstorm”和后文“doorways and windowsills”可
 知,火山灰从天而降,覆盖了门口和窗台。故
 选 A。

27. A. managers B. actors
 C. tourists D. residents

C 根据下文“buying all the ferry tickets”可知,
 游客们买船票逃离。故选 C。

28. A. driven B. forgot
 C. cleaned D. missed

D 根据下文“For two days, I wandered 29
 streets awaiting the resumption of travel”可知,
 作者错过了渡船,被困在了岛上。故选 D。

29. A. broad B. beautiful
 C. empty D. crowded

C 根据上文中的“When 27 began panic,
 buying all the ferry tickets”可知,火山喷发后,很
 多人都逃离了,所以街上空荡荡的。故选 C。

30. A. panicked B. satisfied
 C. relaxed D. inspired

A 根据本句中的“wandered”和“feeling
 progressively stuck”可推知,火山爆发,作者在空
 荡荡的街道上徘徊,陷入了困境,有时会感到惊
 慌失措。故选 A。

31. A. ability B. chance
C. talent D. right

B 根据句中的“of deeper insight”可知,作者认为这是一个更深入地了解当地人感受的机会。故选 B。

32. A. studying B. noticing
C. writing D. experiencing

D 根据后文“what the local people were feeling”可知,作者体验到了当地人的感受。故选 D。

33. A. relied on B. appealed to
C. dealt with D. believed in

A 根据后文“from the English woman who 34 me a bag of oranges from her garden to the minister of the church who let me use the bathroom after being trapped at the top of a mountain”可知,作者被困在岛上,依靠别人的帮助渡过难关。故选 A。

34. A. lent B. gave
C. sent D. sold

B 根据后文“a bag of oranges from her garden”可知,是一位英国妇女给了作者吃的。故选 B。

35. A. upset B. smart
C. anxious D. grateful

D 根据上文“from the English woman who 34 me a bag of oranges from her garden to the minister of the church who let me use the bathroom after being trapped at the top of a mountain”和后文“the humanity of the people in La Palma in the face of crisis”可知,被困在岛上,作者得到了当地人的帮助,体验到了危机面前人性的光辉,所以心存感激。故选 D。

IV. 语法填空(共 10 小题;每小题 1.5 分,满分 15 分)

Drinking green tea three or more times a week could extend your life by 15 months, **36. a** study has suggested. Researchers have found that regular tea drinkers live longer with lower risk of **37. developing** (develop) cardiovascular (心血管的) disease or a range of other conditions.

The study **38. was carried** (carry) out in China, where most of the residents drink green tea. Researchers found no evidence that drinking black tea, which **39. is** (be) more popular in the UK,

could help you live a longer life. The analysis **40. based** (base) on the study was designed **41. to predict** (predict) the risk of cardiovascular disease. Those adults, none of **42. whom** had any history of heart attacks, strokes (中风) or cancer, were divided into two **43. groups** (group)—those who drank green tea three or more times a week and those who drank less than this. The research found that a 50-year-old regular green tea drinker would suffer **44. from** heart disease or strokes 1.41 years later than a non-tea drinker and would live 1.26 years longer. They had a 20-percent lower risk of heart disease and strokes and a 15-percent lower risk of early death **45. generally** (general), the study suggested.

V. 写作(共两节,满分 40 分)

第一节 书面表达(满分 15 分)

假如你是李华,校运动会期间,你所在的班级要举行以运动为主题的演讲比赛。请你以“Sport Teaches You Great Character”为题,写一篇演讲稿。内容如下:

1. 你对此主题的理解;
2. 举例说明。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

Sport Teaches You Great Character

第二节 读后续写(满分 25 分)

阅读材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Every year, Tia Vargas and her dad go hiking. This summer's trip was up Table Rock in the Grand Tetons in early July. Vargas was just below the 11,000-foot peak with her dad waiting about a mile down the trail (路线) when she ran into a family of hikers who had found an injured English springer spaniel (斯宾格猎犬).

They couldn't find the limping (跛的) pup's owner and, because the family were hiking with kids, Vargas figured it would be easier for her to

carry the pup to safety.

“I had to crawl under him to get him up on my shoulders,” Vargas, a single mother of three from Idaho, tells MNN. “I felt the difficulty of it right away. I never felt 55 pounds like that before.” Vargas soon ran into her dad, Ted Kasper, who snapped some photos when he saw his daughter coming down the trail with a dog on her shoulders. “Dad laughed and said, ‘Isn’t this hike hard enough? You have to carry a dog too?’” Vargas recalls. “My dad makes me laugh. He is such a great man.”

“That sense of humour helped me get through the hard journey of carrying the heavy dog down the steep trail,” Vargas said. The trip was hard and nearly unbearable at times. “Every time I put him down to rest, it was difficult. And every time I got down on my knees to put my head under his belly and try to use neck and body strength to lift him, it was painful and difficult. I thought we would see people on the trail on the way down to help. But that wasn’t the case,” she said.

注意:续写 150 词左右。

The group of three got lost once because of the fallen trees that made the trail disappear. _____

Finally hiking six miles and reaching the bottom of the trail, Vargas found a very small note that said, “Lost dog named Boomer, call this number.” _____

【参考范文】

第一节 书面表达

Sport Teaches You Great Character

Dear fellow students,

Good morning! We all want to win and know what it is like to lose. Six weeks ago, I participated in a city marathon for amateurs which was being organised to help raise money for charity. I ran my

race relaxed and confident, even though my limits were never being tested like that. I didn’t care about the result.

Almost nobody likes to come second, but whether you come first or last, it is important to remember that at any sporting event, you face two opponents: your fellow competitors and yourself. A true sports person will make the right decisions for the right reasons and never worry about failure.

Thank you!

第二节 读后续写

The group of three got lost once because of the fallen trees that made the trail disappear. What was worse, it started to drizzle. However, they couldn’t wait for the rain to stop because it was getting dark and the dog was whining and obviously in pain, so they inched their way down the slippery slope while looking for the trail. Fortunately, it wasn’t long before they got back on track and the sky cleared up. “It didn’t rain cats and dogs, but a dog,” Kasper said jokingly. “At one point, the thought of giving up crossed my mind. My legs hurt and were shaking but my dad’s jokes and the dog’s watery eyes gave me strength,” Vargas recalls.

Finally hiking six miles and reaching the bottom of the trail, Vargas found a very small note that said, “Lost dog named Boomer, call this number.” On their way to the vet, she called the owners, who thought for sure Boomer was dead. They had gone hiking together the day before and Boomer had fallen off a cliff. The family rushed down to look for him until dark but in vain. When they found out that Boomer was still alive, they were so blissful that they drove to the vet without delay. To their relief, Boomer only had a dislocated joint and was in a cast. The owners also told Vargas that they were moving to another city because of work and couldn’t take Boomer with them. With a brilliant smile on her face, Vargas stroked Boomer’s head and asked if it would like to go home with her. Boomer licked her hand gently, wagging its tail. This downhill battle turned out to be a blessing in disguise.

